THE Arte of Gardening,

wherunto is added much neceſſarie matter, with a number of Secrets: and the Phiſicke helps belonging to each heatb, which are eaſily prepared.

Heer-vnto is annexed two proper Treatiſes, the firſt Intituled *The meruailous gouerment, propertie, & benefite of Bees, with the rare ſecrets of the Honie and waxe*: the other, *The yearly Coniectures, verie neceſſary for Husband-men.*

To theſe is likewiſe ioyned a Treatiſe of the Arte of Graffing and planting of trees.

Gathered by Thomas Hill, *Citizen of* London.

LONDON,
Imprinted by Edward Allde.
1608.

The Authours out of which this worke of Gardening is gathered.

Sotion a Greeke writer.
Florentinus a Greeke writer.
C. Plinius.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Aristomachus.
Theophrastus.
Aristotle.
Didimus.
Dioscorides.
Democritus.
Galenus.
Paul Aegineta.
Petrus Andr.
Mathiolus.
Constan. Cæsar.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And sundry others.

To the right worshipfull Sir *Henry Seamer* Knight, *Thomas Hill* wisheth all wealth and felicitie.

WHen I had ended these trauels and labors of mine (right Worshipfull Sir) I called to remembrance the two notable sayings of the well learned and worthy Philosopher *Xenophon*, who did not onely confesse, but rather with other wise men did agree, that that Arte was moste commendable, and of all men moste worthy to be allowed & accepted, which to a common wealth brought any kinde of profit and commoditie. And because this Art of Gardning is of it selfe verry profitable, and bringeth moste necessarie commodities, both to Cities and Townes, therefore in my simple iudgement, it deserueth no small commendation. The beginning of it is very ancient, so that of no new inuention, but long ago found out, first by dame Nature, & after continued and augmented by the dilligent care and vigilant paines of the wise & skilfull Gardeners, by whose industrie & meanes, it is now growen to such perfection, as I thinke it therefore moste worthie to be accounted amongst other such good artes, as euery common wealth hath need of. And although it may appeare somewhat inferiour to other artes, yet notwithstanding the same is as profitable, & altogither as necessary as the others are: forsomuch as this is so linked and chained to the noble artes, both of Phisicke and Surgerie, as by no meanes possible it may be seperated from the other, but rather as a dayly handmaiden, continually serueth them both, the which two (at this day) are had

in no smal reputation & renown, & that not without good cause, for so much as no common-wealth can be without them, & because these two cannot wel be performed without this third, therfore men haue cõtinually sought to bring it to perfection. And first the ancient Husbandmen tooke great paines therein: after them the learned Philosophers & other wise men, which from time to time haue obserued & noted such notable lessons & instructions, as (at this day) are common among them in all countries. This art being once knowne, and the vse so necessarie esteemed, hath caused wise men by a kinde of common consent, to place Gardens nere vnto Cities, Townes & Villages, as a storehouse and place, wherin might be kept, aswel al such hearbs as are fit for the helth & preseruation of mans body, as also al maner of pleasant floures & delectable herbs as are daily sought for and required of the common people: and this Art now, what long experience, & long continuance of painful men, in trying and searching the condition and nature of euery ground, and their aptnes in bearing such seeds as should be sowen therin, is growen to such a perfectiõ, that now euery good Gardener can tell what ground is fit for such and such seeds, how it ought to be digged, dũged, & cast orderly into beds; and after the seeds are sowen, how they ought to be watered & weeded, that therby the plants in cõming vp might the better prosper and come forward. Besides these necessary points, in ordering the ground, in chusing seedes apt for euery soile, and in obseruing the time fit for sowing, they haue left behinde them certaine meanes and wayes to auoid and driue away al such beasts, wormes, flies, with the like, as commonly annoy & hurt the workmanship of Gardeners: yea such cunning, wit and wisdom is conteined in this Art of Gardning, that the wise and mighty Emperour *Diocletian*, through the delight and pleasure he tooke therin (as writeth *Aelius Spartianus*) after he had reigned 18. yeres,

left

left for a season the whole gouernmēt & rule of the empire: & forsaking the court, went vnto a mean house, hauing a garden adioyning thetto, where he with his proper, hands, both sowed, set, & weeded the hearbs of his garde: which kind of life so pleased him, that hardlye hee was intreated to take vpon him again the gouernment of the Empire, so much did this quiet life & beautie of the Garden please him. This example may moue all other meaner men to haue the like felicitie & pleasure in Gardening, seeing so noble an Emperor chose rather to forsake his regal authoritie and power, and still to continue in that state of quiet life, affirming it farre better and happier estate to liue quietly among the faire & pleasant floures of the Garden, then to rule, & be daily called on & troubled with the serious and weightie affaires of the Empire. But heere I will stay my pen, least I seem ouer tedious vnto yonr worship in so smal a Treatise, desiring your goodnes to pardon my bold attempt, and rather to behold the earnest zeale & affection of my willing mind born towards you, then to consider the simplenes of the style, and want of eloquence. I should haue been ashamed (right worshipfull sir) to haue ventured so far, as to dedicate this my third increase vnto your goodnes, were it not that the argument of the matter is both profitable and pleasant to be read: wherin is taught a number of worthie secrets, in the sowing and setting of the moste plants, with the great commodities they serue for in the vse of Phisick: & were it not againe that I fully perswade my selfe, that your worshipwill rather accept the minde of the writer, then the manner of writing. Thus praying almightie God to send your worship long health, and the yeres of the worthy *Nestor*.

Your most humble,

Thomas Hill

The

The preface to the Reader and dilligent trauailer in *the Art of Gardening.*

IT ſeemeth (louing Reader) not without reaſon, which *M. Terentius Varro* writeth, that the ancient Philoſophers named the Earth, the mother of all plants and creſcent things, and the manuring and dreſſing of it, to be an excerciſe both vertuous and profitable, which the antient *Romanes* & diligent Husbandmen did well obſerue, in that they from time to time did ſo painfully labor, & dilligently ſeek out the vnderſtanding & knowledge, not only of euery kind of earth, but to dig dung, orderly dreſſe, & caſt into ſquare and euen beds euery ground: and after the ſame, they dilligently learned the apt times which were moſt conuenient to ſowe or plant in, according to the increaſe & decreaſe of the Moone, with the aſpects of ỹ Moone vnto ſuch planets, as moſt aptly ſerue vnto the ſame. When the ſeedes were thus orderly ſowen, and ſomwhat come vp, then they throughly learned that the often weeding and watring of the yong plantes, did cauſe them the faſter to come vp. And in ſuch places where the plants grow thick together, they by their painfull induſtry learned to ſet them thinner: to the end they might the better increaſe & waxe bigger: and beſides theſe, they carefully laboured, & diligently ſought out all ſuch meanes, that might happely expell and deſtroy the moſt kinde of venemous and harmfull beaſtes, wormes, flyes and ſuch like, that commonly annoy & eate vp the ſeeds & yong plants comming vp: And as their diligẽce, great care, & painfull trauels beſtowed in the Art of Gardning, deſerued of all men worthy cõmendation, ſo I vpon this occaſion, think it not much digreſſing from the purpoſe to ſet forth this treatiſe of mine, now the fift time increaſed, to which I haue added ſuch profitable and pleaſant matter, as I found written either in the *Italian* or *Latine* tung, that intreated of this Art: whoſe names (or the moſt of them) do before appeare, digeſted in ſo the forme of a Table. And beſides theſe, I haue adioyned ſundrie pleaſant ſecrets, and the neceſſarie commodities alſo, which moſt of the herbs ſerue vnto in the vſe of phiſick: which

which now I haue performed in ſuch ſort, as the like hitherto hath not been publiſhed in the Engliſh tung. And for recompence of my induſtrie, I craue no other of thee (gentle Reader) but frendly reporting of this Treatiſe. Which if I finde, it ſhal encourage me to publiſh the other part, aptly to this belonging: which onely teacheth the perfect order of planting & graffing of the moſt trees in vſe with vs, with the proper ſecrets taught in the ordering of them, right profitable to be vnderſtood. But in the meane time look for a proper Treatiſe ioyned to this of Gardening, named The Husbandmans coniectures, vttering the right profitable notes, not onely of the cõdition of the yere, but other husbãdly inſtructions, ſeruing neceſſarily to the vſe and defence of cattel, with the ſpecial gouernemẽt to be followed each month throughout the yere, for the preſeruation of health: and diuers other inſtructions right profitable to bee vnderſtood. Vnto which beſides, is ãnexed a right pleaſant & profitable Treatiſe of the meruailous gouernment, order, and vſage of the Bees, with the great commoditie both of their honnie & waxe, with their vſe and rare ſecrets aſwell in Phiſick as Surgerie. And this haue I rather ioyned to my Booke of Gardening, for that the honny Bees (after the minde of the ancient Gardners) be ſo profitable in a Garden. Alſo looke for a Treatiſe of mine, being in readines with the Printer, & intituled, Certain pleaſant problemes with other apt anſwers, teaching frutefull leſſons for the preſeruatiõ of health, with other philoſophicall demaunds, and their learned anſwers, vttering ſuch vnknowen matter, as hetherto hath not been publiſhed in the Engliſh toung, gathered firſt by a learned Cardinall and philoſopher, named *Fernandus Ponzenius*, out of the *Arabians*, *Gretkes*, and ancient Phiſitions in the *Latine* tung, & now Engliſhed by me for the commodity of many. Alſo ſundry other Treatiſes be in a like readines with other Printers, whoſe names and titles I haue heere omitted, or rather ouerpaſſed for tediouſnes of the Reader. Thus leauing (gentle Reader) to trouble you further, I commit you to God, wiſhing onely your gentle fauor to further theſe my rude attempts. *Et feliciter Vale.*

A friend to the Reader.

BY tract of time things most obscure are manifested plaine:
In time the drie and hardest flint is pearst with drop of raine
By time we ioy, time leades our life, by time we doe possesse,
In time we haue that we desire, each thing both more and lesse.
Sith time of right deserues to haue more praise thā tung can tel
In time let Hyll receiue reward, that hath begun so well.
Experience placde in wit profound, in time hath made to yeeld,
To him that whilome captiue was, a conquest in the feeld.
With painfull pen the Writer hath expreſt in Engliſh plaine
The needfull aid & mightie force, that doth in hearbs remaine.
The time to plant, the time to set, the time to raise againe,
This man by treble diligence, hath brought to light with paine.
Of things that were so high of price, this Author by his skill (fil
Hath brought such plentie, that each wight may haue thereof his
For which this Author askes no good, nor gaine of glee,
He couets no vaine glorious praise, as you may easily see.
His quaking quill hath forced more, a good report to haue,
A light reward, a small returne, this Author seemes to craue.
Wherefore young man or aged syre, else whoso ere thou be,
That by misuenture or by will shalt chance this Booke to see:
Let cankred (enuie meete for hell), abandon euerie sense:
And rather grant to saue than spill, to help than worke offence
Yeeld thou due praise to him that meant not to offend,
So shalt thou see and well perceiue, whereto his worke doth tend.
So shalt thou know the good frō il, the right from wrong discern
So shall thy verdict framed, force the Writer more to learne.

FINIS.

THE
Art of Gardening:
Shewing the skilful ordering & care to be bestowed on Gardens, with necessary *helpes, defences, and secrets.*

What three points are to be learned of everie Gardner, minding to haue a fruitfull Garden: the health that may be recouered by walking in the same, and the comoditie of Gardens placed neere the Cittie. Chap. 1

SEeing a fruitfull and pleasant Garden, cannot be had without the good skill and diligent minde of the Gardner or master of the ground, neither can any profit arise by Gardning without cost and charges therein bestowed: neither perfectly can it be attained vnto without Art, instructing the due seasons of the yeare: It is therefore meete that these thinges be first cared for, prouided and knowne: which being done, the Garden is made perfect, delectable, and profitable, and wee then receiue by it two speciall commodities.

What manner of maister or Gardiner a fruitefull Garden requireth.

The first is profit, which riseth through the encrease of Hearbs and flowers: the other is pleasure, verie delectable through the delight of walking in the same, which both giueth health to mans body, and recouerie of strength after long sickenes, by commoditie of taking the fresh ayre, and sweet smel of the flowers in the same. And of these two, Varro and Palladius, willeth ỹ Gardens be placed neere to a Cittie, both for the commoditie of those Hearbes and Rootes serving to Phisicke, as all other Hearbs and Flowers, which be profitable for the cittie, seeing that gardens placed far from the city, do rather

Vtiliite & pleasure ensueth of well dressed Gardens.

ther hinder the apte bringing of all kinds of Hearbes and flowers vnto the market to be solde. And for this doth Cato commend greatly, that ground or farme place which is scituated neere vnto a citie: In which ground, also be set little trees and plantes to beare vp vines, and that Willowes and Osiers be set in watery and wet places neere to riuers, and that the ground besides hath moyst and watery places or springes in it: whereas be Orchards also in most fruitfull and open places and that are well dunged, in the which all kindes of fruit may be set and planted. Place neare to the Citie (saith Cato) many and sundry kindes of Gardens, set and decked with all kindes of pleasant flowers, all rootes that be round, the sweet Mirtle tree, and many other necessarie thinges of like sort to be set and sowen. And a Garden (especially for pot-hearbes) must be moyst of it selfe, or else easie to be watered for fertilitie sake.

why Gardens ought to be neare hand.

Of the standing of Gardens, the water necessarie to them, and of the properties of the ground, with the qualitie and temperatenes of the Aire, and condicion besides of the windes. Chap. 2

AND now to the scituation and standing of a Garden. The most commodities and profitablest placing of a Garden, is (as Paladius writeth) that the same be neere to a plaine field, somewhat lying aslope, & hauing through it small courses of water running as by certaine distances one from the other through the Garden. But yet beware that these be not ouer great courses, for that the easie and small courses be more commodious. And this diligently wey, that better is a little ground of field, being well dressed and laboured, then a large ground hauing no painfull labour beslowed on it at all.

where the best & lawdablest placing of a Garden is.

And further vnderstand, that to haue a wel in a Garden, is right necessarie, except the same may otherwise be watered with some Conduite, or small streame running by, or else be very neare vnto a running water, for water is a great nourisher to hearbes: But if there be no wel nor sweet water running by, then must you dig a pit (although ỹ same wil be very labourous)

What commoditie it is to haue a well in a Garden.

labourous) to draw water thereout, in that a Garden of necessitie ought to be often watered, through which (as Plinie writes) it causeth the seeds sown, the sooner to spring vp, spred abroad, and to be the more plentifull. And therfore if you be minded to haue a wel or pit that should continue with water, then (as Collumella teacheth) you must cause the same to be digged, when the Sun is in the last part of Virgo, which is in the month of September, before the Equinoctial harueſt or entring of the Sun into Libra: For at that season do men especially trie and finde out, what force and vertue the wels then haue: at what time the ground through the long drought of the sommer, is then depriued both of moysture and rayne. But if you cannot well dig a pit, then make a little Pond or Cesterne (as Paladius teacheth) in the ground, whereby the raine falling all the winter, may run thereinto, and by that meanes you may well water your Garden in the hot sommer. And if now you lacke all these meanes before taught, for the watering of your Garden, then shall you dig and make the beds of the Garden in most dry places, three or foure foote deeper and lower, that the banks about thereof being hard made together, may so keep in the water, which ordred on this wise doeth well defend the drines thereof, for that in time of the great drought, it is by that meanes watred, and the young & final plants be therby the better procured to spring faster vp.

A secret to cause water to continue long either in pit or wel.

But if the Garden be ouercloyed with water, then dig (after thy discretion) deep gutters here and there in the Garden, whereby the water falling into them, may be so led into some deepe pit in the end of the Garden, made only for that purpose, and consider that in the ground and Farme places bordering neare vnto the Citie, the Gardens and Orchards should and ought to be neareſt the house, and both well digged & turned in with dung, through the which fatning, they may aptlyer spring & plentifullier grow. And beware you make not your Garden neare to any barne, stable, or hay loft, so nigh as you can, least the chaffe & dust both of the Corne and hay blowen abrode by the winde, fal vpō the herbs, & so by cleuing on, peirce through the leaues, which so peirced, do by and by after burne

them, as writeth Florentinus in his instruction of husbandry. And besides, the hard clinging and gathering togither of such strawes, and dust of hay blowen abroad by the winde in the garden, doth so cause a great annoyance, both to the hearbs & plants growing therein. And further take heed, that the aire about the garden be not euill, and infected with the vapors of ditches and stincking puddles, standing neere vnto it, for that these doe not onely infect and corrupt the plants, but dull mens spirrits by walking therein. And in consideration heereof, you shall vnderstand, that euery aire, which is some colde after the Sun be set, and soone hot after the Sun be risen, is both subtile and wholsome: But that aire which is contrary to this, worketh the contrary. And besides, the aire most to be restrayned, is that, which wringeth and bindeth hard the hart and doth make straight the attraction of aire.

What annoyance the Vapours of stinking ditches doth cause.

And as concerning the temperatnes of the aire, and wholsomenes of the place, a garden in colde countries and places, ought to haue the free sky or firmament open toward the east or towards the south part, especially if the same be in such a garden or orchard, that hath young plants or trees set in it: taking heed, least that by any great high hill standing betweene it & those parts of Heauen, it be so excluded from the comfort and aide of these two parts, and so either through the North, where (to vs) the Sun is farthest off, or the late Sun shining of the west, where the sun onely shineth at his going downe, the plants, seeds and sets, be so nipped and destroied with the colde, so long vering them.

How a garden in cold countries ought to lie.

But if thou canst (saith Cato) let thy garden be at the foote of an hill, and that it beholdeth or lieth open to the south part in some wholsome place, and that the hill defendeth the sharpe colde of the North-side, that might otherwise nip and harme the plants and sets comming vp.

How in hot countries a garden ought most aptly to stand.

But in hot countries, let the faces of gardens be looking or lying open to the north part, which not only is more profitable, but also pleasanter and commodiourer to health. And a marrishe ground is euermore to be refused, how soeuer the same be, especially if it lye open toward the South or West part,

part, and that cuſtomably in the ſommer, the ſame be throughlie dried vppe, which ſo engendereth the Peſtilence, and diuers noyſome and hurtfull diſeaſes, that greatly harme gardens.

And conſider alſo the nature of the Poole ſtanding about, or the water running by your garden, whether the ſame ſendeth or vapoureth forth (for the moſt part) euery noyſome or ſtinking aire, which might ſo annoy you, or the ſets, hearbs, and plants, for ſuch is the property of many little riuers: and therefore where any ſuch like is, diſelle or plant no garden nere vnto the ſame. The qualitie of Mores about gardens are to be conſidered.

And laſt, the windes are to be conſidered, for that the ſouth windes be hot and moyſt, & the north windes colde and drie, and the eaſt windes be betweene hotneſſe and coldnes temperate, yet drier then the weſt windes: and the Eaſt winds generally be alwayes hotter then the Weſt, and yet the Weſt windes be ſomewhat moiſter then the Eaſt. The quality of the foure windes.

Of the conſideration and choſing out of good & excellent ground, and the knowledge of euery earth. Chap. 3.

AND there is much to be conſidered beſides thoſe thinges which we haue hitherto ſpoken of in the nature and goodnes of a ground: if ſo be you deſire to knowe a fruitful, profitable and battle ground: For euery ground doth not indelie bring vp Garden hearbes. And therefore after the minde of the ancient Huſband-men, you ſhall conſider in this manner, by taking a clod of the ſame earth in your hand, and marking whether the ſame be white and bare, or leane with ſand, without any mixture of earth: either all chalke, or naughtie and filthy ſand or grauell, or drie barren great grauell, or ſtonie barren and glittering duſt, or if it be ſaltie or bitter, or continually wet and moiſt. For all thoſe be right noyous and great defaults and inconmodities, contrary to a fruitfull ground. The nature and goodnes of euery ground ought to be knowne

And you ſhall alſo trie a rotten clod, if the ſame be almoſt blacke, and able enough to couer it ſelfe with his owne graſſe,

The triall of garden ground

and of sundry colours: which if it be thin or mouldrie, must be fattned and brought togither by fat earth mixed therewith. But now you shall knowe a fat ground, if you take a small clod, and sprinkle the same with sweet water, and so knead it: which, if the same be clammy, and sticke to your fingers, then may ye be out of doubt, that it is fat earth. Also dig a furrowe and fill the same againe with earth, which if the earth dooth after gape or open, then it is a slender and leane ground, but if it reacheth out, then it is a fat ground. And that also is a meane ground, which doth gape but little, and this ground also must be swæte, which you shall easily trie out by taste thereof, if that out of a part of the ground, which most you mislike, you take a clod, putting the same into an earthen pan, and moistning it with fresh and sweete water, into which dip your finger, and so taste on your tongue how it relisheth and sauoureth, for by that shall you knowe the sweetnesse of the same.

How you may know a good ground.

The triall of sweet earth fit for gardens.

And that ground also is thought to be the best for Gardens, which in the sommer is nether drie, nor clayie, nor sandie, nor rough, nor through the heat of Sommer full of chaps. For that the ground which is so drie in the sommer, doth perish all such seeds or plants sowen or set therein, or else maketh them shoote vp very small and slender: & the clayie ground bindeth to hard through the heat of the Sunne, and the sandy and rough ground worke contrarie to the other, in that they neither nourishe the young plants, nor keepe the water any time falling on them. And to be short, you must euermore choose a fat and loose ground, which needeth but small labour, and yeldeth also plentifullest and greatest fruite. But that ground is most to be refused, which is drie and thick, and both leane and colde. And among all kinde of grounds, the chalkie and red ground are most to be refused. And of this, Varro doth commend that ground, which of it selfe being gentle and pliable, bringeth forth Walworths, otherwise named Danworts. And that ground also doth Columella commend, which naturally bringeth forth of his owne accord, both elmes and wilde young springes, and those trees whether they be

What earth is meetest for Gardens.

A fat and lose ground is best commended for Gardens.

The triall of a fruitfull ground.

Slowe

Sloe trees or Bullace trees, and wilding or Crab-trees. And on such wise is a fruitfull ground tried out and knowen by such thinges which the same bringeth forth by the onely dwing of Nature. And yet euery ground at times conuenient, may by the dunging, be made more fruitfull and plentifuller, or bigger yelding.

Any ground by dunging may be made fruitfull.

How a Garden may diuers waies be fenced and inclosed: the maner and secret in making a liuely and strong hedge Chap. 4

WHen you haue thus chosen an apt and fit Plotte of ground to dig a Garden in, then must you in handsome maner, (calling the vtter compasse of it as either foure square, round, or otherwise) enclose the same round about, and beset and fence it throughout, before you goe about to dresse it vp, or sowe any thing in the same. For that Gardens being not well fenced and closed about before the sowing and setting of any thing in the same, be many wayes indamaged as well by beastes, as by theeues breaking into them.

And there be many and sundry sorts of fencing and closing in of gardens, as after shall appeare. As first Varro nameth or counteth that a naturall inclosure which is set about with yong trees or thornes, hauing in it the roots of a quick hedge, which we call a quickset hedge, so the same shall not be in danger of the wanton waifaring mans breth and passing by, although he should put fier to it, and that is named a wilde and rude inclosure, which either is made of rudes and shrubbed wood, or of willow, or bushes hauing no life, which we name a dead hedge. And in olde time the Romans vsed to inclose and fence their gardens with stakes and laths, set very thicke in order, and with small rods watled in togither, or else by boaring large holes through great stocks of trees, through which railes or great poles might run two togither, or three together: and so then raise and fasten a boord along, or stockes of trees, or such like thinges: which manner we now name Paling, when the same is done with Boarde.

And

And that fenſing, of the ancient Authors is named a warlike incloſure, which is framed like to that which the Souldiers make as a defence about their Tents, and ſuch a one ought to bee made neere common high waies, or by Riuers, that the Garden might not be indamaged by beaſts, theeues, nor land floods. And for this cauſe the ancient men framed theſe on this wiſe: as firſt a conuenient and apt ditch or trench was caſt vp and made about the garden or field, that it might ſo receiue all the raine water falling thereabout: and it had alſo a ridge or ſlope paſſage in it, that the water might the freelyer paſſe from the bottome. And there was beſides, an high heape of earth on the in-ſide next adioyning to the ditch brinke, ſo drie and hard, that a man could not eaſily climbe or paſſe ouer it.

Alſo there were certain which made ſuch ſteepe ſteps without any ditch, which they named walles, And they of old time alſo named that a builded incloſure, which was made of drie ſtones, or ſlate laide one vpon another, & that in diuers formes: For either the ſame was made with clay & ſtones, workmanly and finely built (in thoſe places eſpecially) by which quarries of ſtone were neere vnto, or of ſuch as were of abilitie to get ſtone otherwiſe. And either they made their incloſures of baked or vnbaked bricke, or with earth & ſtones mortered together, and framed like to the walles of an houſe.

The profit & cõmoditie of a quickſet & ſtrong hedge

But the profitableſt hedge of all (eſpecially in the fieldes) and leaſt of coſt, is that which is made with Byars, & thornes mixed or ſet together: for this hedge and incloſure will indure an infinite time. And therefore this hedge of the ancient husbandmen was moſt commended, For that the ſame was well knowne to them, that the Briar would not lightly periſh and decay, vnleſſe the ſame had beene plucked vp by the rootes: And after the iniurie alſo of the fire, it both renueth and ſpringeth the better.

The making of a quickſet hedge.

The place that you determine to encloſe, muſt after the beginning of September, when the ground hath beene well ſoked with raine, be trenched about with two furrowes, a yard diſtant one from ỹ other: the deapth and breadth of euerie one of them muſt bee two foote, which you muſt ſuffer to lie

lie emptie all winter, prouiding in the meane time the seedes that you meane to sowe in them, which must be the berries of sharp thornes, briers, hollye, wilde Eglantine, which the Greekes call Kunosbaton, dog briar. The berries of these you must gather as ripe as you may, and mingle them with the flower or meale of tares, which when it is sprinckled with water, must be put vppon olde ropes of shippes, or any other ropes: the ropes being thus handled and dryed, must be layed vp in some boorded floore. And in the place round about where the hedge shall run, they will, two furlong to be eared and digged, three foote asunder, and a foot and a halfe deepe: this they will to be done in the end of the Equinoctiall of theharuest, when as the ground is well moystned with showers. Collumella willeth after the Ides of February.

And they will also that those furrowes soe lye all the winter opened and vncouered, in preparing the seedes in a readines to sowe against the time. And after that, in the end of Februarie, they will to lay the saide ropes at length in the furrowes, and couer them (so lying) with thin and light earth, and to water the seedes againe, if neede of the season shall so require: which they will so to be ordered, in that these seedes of the thornes, cannot otherwise shoote vp and grow, if they were ouermuch couered with earth: as this day they will not to be done when the winde bloweth out of the Southwest. So within xxx dayes after dos the thornes shoote vp, which by prettie helpes and short props ought to be directed, that shooting vp further, they may so supply the voyd spaces. Another way is this: First they plant young elder trees, three foote asunder, and they take the brambles & wilde briar, & put them in long lumps of claye or earth, & set them here and there betweene the elder trees, couering them orderly with earth, and in the comming vp of the young plantes, they dig about and water them, if neede so require: & within 3. yeares after, the hedge will kepe out both theefe and beast. But after the three yeares growth, the ancient husbandmen will that this hedge should be burnt euery yeare once, for that by the burning they shoote out & ware stiffer, harder and sharper. And to conclude, this is an vniuersall way, & the surest maner to enclose all gardens. A witty secret in the fencing of a garden. Another way of making a quicke-set hedge.

Of the first Maze. Chap. 5.

HEre by the way (gentle Reader) I dos place two proper Mazes, the one before this chapter, and the other after, as proper adornements vppon pleasure to a Garden, that who so listeth, hauing such roome in their Garden, may place the one of them, which liketh them best, in that void place of the Garden that may best be spared for the onely purpose to sport them in at times: which Mazes being workemanlike handled by the Gardiner, shall much beautifie them, in diuiding foure sundry fruits to be placed in each of the corners of the Maze, and in the middle of it, a proper herber decked with Roses, or else some tree of Rosemarie, or other fruite at the discretion of the Gardiner.

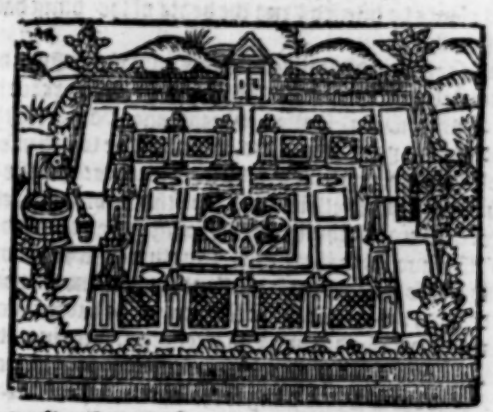
Of the dung and dunging of Gardens, with the digging, dressing, leuelling and disposing of the quarters and beds. Chap. 6.

The apt times of digging and dressing the ground for euerie season.

FOr semuch as in the Harueſt and Spring time, be many things sowen in the Garden, therefore it behoueth to dig vp, dung, & labor that part of the ground in the spring time, which you intend to sowe in Harueſt, that the same may so serue

ſerue all the winter through. And thoſe parts of the Garden which you intend to ſowe in the ſpring time. that they may bring forth their fruite in the Summer, thoſe parts apply and turne vp toward the North. And this ſhall you ſo digge and delle, whenas the earth ſhall not be ouer moyſt nor drie.

And that ground alſo which you will haue in a readines to ſowe in the Harueſt, muſt be turned vp in the moneth of May, whereby the heate of the Sunne and all the Summer through may ſo breake and looſe the clods, or burne or wyther the rootes of the hearbes left in the earth.



And after that the quarters and beds of the Garden, be thus finely ordered and turned in with dung, and ſowen alſo for the winter, then in the cold winter ſeaſon, before the yong plants be come vp, they muſt be defended and nouriſhed with dung (as by ſprinckling it on the beds) that it may the better defend the yong plants from the ſuperfluous colde and corrupting in the deepe of winter. But the grounds which you will ſowe in the ſpring, muſt be digged about the Calends of November, & you ſhall ſo let it lie digged vp after the Harueſt, to be burnt and conſumed by the cold and ſharpe hoarie froſts.

What ought to be done after the quarters of the Garden be thus ordred and ſowen for the winter.

For like as in the Summer the heat of the Sun doth ſcorche & parch the ground, euen ſo doth the bitternes of the cold vnioſe

the ſame into ſmall partes.

Note that good dung maketh a good ground the better, and greatly amendeth an ill earth.

And after the winter is ended, then muſt that part of the garden be dunged, So that when the time of ſowing is nere at hand, then that place of the Garden fiue dayes before ſhall be weeded, ſtoned, and dunged againe, and after that digged again, and with the diligent and often digging, ſo turned vp, that the earth and dung be well mixed togither, and not to lye altogether at the rootes of the plantes, but that firſt the earth be thin caſt, and after the dung, and then the earth againe to couer the ſame. For by that meanes ſhall neither the young plants be burned, nor the heate of the dung haſtily breath forth.

How dung ought to be ordred:

The worthynes of dungs:

Aſſes beſt commended.

And the beſt and worthieſt for this purpoſe, is Aſſes dung, becauſe it bringeth vp leaſt weedes: and the next to this is dung of Kine, Oxen, Horſes, Sheepe, and Goates, ſo that it be not aboue a yeare olde, hard, and drie, the which alſo hath his full ſtrength, and bringeth vp leaſt weedes: for if the dung ſhalbe older, it profiteth nothing, for that is of leſſe ſtrength: and yet in Gardens the new dung being three dayes old, ſhall well ſuffiſe and ſerue the turne. But that which men make, although it be thought moſt excellent, yet it is not ſo needfull to be deſired, vnles that either the ground be barren, granelly or a moſt looſe ſand, hauing no ſtrength or force in it, which ſo being, needeth the greater helpe of nouriſhment in the dunging. And the Swines dung is thought very ill, for that the ſame is hot. Also the Pigeons and Doues dung is moſt hot. And yet aſhes (to dung with) is thought very good: and eſpecially for pot-hearbes, being finely ſifted: the which for his naturall heat doth not onely refreſh the earth, but flayeth and driueth away all flyes, and all kinde of wormes, ſnailes, and ſuch like beaſtes that annoy the hearbes.

Next Kine, Oxen, ſheep, horſe, goates.

New dung is vnprofitable for Gardens.

Swines, Pigeons, & Doues dung beſt for pot-hearbs.

And the like in a maner doth the pigeons dung, ſo that the ſame be ſcattered like ſeeds on the ground, whereby to ſeaſon ground the better: and not on heapes, like the laying of the oxe or horſe dung.

And this alſo conceiue, that a watry Garden ground needeth more dunging, & a dry ground the leſſer dunging: and beſides

ſides theſe, you may dung your grauelly ground with chalke, if ſo be you can get no cattels dung, and the chalkie or ouer thicke ground, you may dung with grauell, for the lacke of other dung. And by that meanes, ſuch garden grounds be not onely made battle and good of yeeld, but become alſo beautifull, as writeth Collumella. What to be done in the lack of dung.

And Plinie writeth, that when you dung your garden, let the winde then blowe out of the Weſt, and the Moone decreaſing of light, and drie that ſeaſon ſo nigh as you can. For by that meanes doth the ground yeeld the plentifuller. What to be obſerued in dunging the Gardens.

And now after the new digging and turning vp againe, about the middle of Januarie, the Garden muſt then be garniſhed with hearbes, before the quarters and beds be caſt out and deuiſed. And you may make the herbers either ſtraight running vp, or elſe vaulted or cloſe ouer the head, like to the vine herbers now adaies made.

And if they be made with Juniper wood, you neede to repaire nothing thereof for ten yeares after: but if they be made with willow poles, then muſt you new repaire them euery 3. yeare after: And he which will ſet Roſes to run along about his herber, or beds round about his herber, muſt ſet them in Februarie. Iuniper poles beſt commended for the building of herbers.

And the beds of Roſes be commonly ſet in a moſte ſhort furrowe, or be placed by alleys round about the garden, whether ye ſet them in ſlips, or ſowe them in ſeedes. And Palladius writeth, that we may not thinke thoſe to be the ſeedes of the Roſe, which growe in the middle of the flower, in colour like to the golde: but that the ſeedes be in that which is like to a ſmall peare in the vpper end of the ſtalke. How Roſes ought to be ſet. Which be the ſeedes in the Roſe.

And the ſeedes be then ripe to be gathered, when the grapes be full ripe, which ripeneſſe of them by their Fuskiſh and browne colour, and by their ſoftnes may be knowen. And in the like manner you may doe, if you will ſowe that ſweet tree or flowre named Jacemine, Roſemary, or the Pomegranate ſeedes, vnles you had rather decke your herbers comelier with vines.

And when the herbers be ſet & made about the walke of the

Walkes & allies be necessarie in a garden.

Garden, then the ground new digged, must be deuided into borders and beds, leauing apart that roome and space, which you will bestowe vpon walkes and bowling allies, the which allies and walkes you shall sift ouer with the finest sand, least by raine and showers, the earth should cleaue and clagge on your feete: and this done, you shall leuell your beds & borders of a height and breadth by a line layd out, whereby to weede the hearbes.

Why beddes ought to be leuelled euen of a bredth.

What length & bredth Palladius willeth the beds to be

And for this cause the same ought to be made, least that in weeding the hearbs, they tread them & the yong seeds downe, And therefore let the weeders goe by the paths and alleys, weeding the one halfe first, and the other after. And the beds saith Palladius, must be made long and narrowe, that is xii. foot in length, and six in breadth, and spaces betweene the larger, whereby the beds may the better be weeded cleane on each side.

And let the borders or edges of beddes be raised two foote high in moist or watry places: but in drie places, it shall be sufficient to raise them one foote high.

How the waters lying in the allies may be led from place to place.

There must be made also certaine little allies or gutters, by which the moisture in watry places may so run forth.

And those allies besides must be deeper then the beds, that the water gently poured foorth, by a watring pot, from the vpper part, may the lightlier soake into the gutters or allies.

And where the beds be well watered, and that water standeth in the allies by, then may you from thence leade the water into some other necessarie place, which needeth watring.

Of

Of the ſecond Maze. Chap. 7

AND heere alſo I place the other Maze, which may be like ordered and vſed, as I ſpake before, and it may either be ſette with Iſope and Time, or with winter Sauery and Time: for theſe doe well endure all the Winter thorowe greene. And there be ſome which ſet their Mazes with Lauender Cotten, Spike, Marioram, and ſuch like. But let them be ordered in this point as liketh beſt the Gardner, and ſo an end. For I do not heere ſet forth this, or the other Maze before expreſſed, for any neceſſarie commoditie in a garden, but rather appoint either of theſe (which liketh you beſt) as a beautifying vnto your garden: for that mazes and knots aptly made, doe much ſet forth a garden, which neuertheleſſe I referre to your diſcretion, for that all perſons be not of like abilitie.

Certaine preceptes & rules of ancient men, both in the choiſe and proper ſowing of ſeedes. Chap. 8.

THE Garden, as Palladius writeth, which lyeth vnder a gentle & wholſome aire, and hath a Fountaine, Spring,

or ſweete water running by it, is in a manner good enough of itſelfe, and needeth leſſe inſtructions for the ſowing thereof.

The temperatenes of time neceſſarie to ſowing.

The ſeedes ſowen in due choſen time, as concerning the weather and the Moone, doe the ſooner come vp: but ſowen in warme and ſunnye places, or well lying in the Sunne, doth ſpeedieſt breake forth and ſhoote vp.

In cold ſeaſons ſowe not.

And beware of ſowing any ſeedes, the winde then blowing out of the north, or in very colde dayes, for that in thoſe dayes the ſeeds be much hindred through the colde: and therefore for the ſowing of your ſeedes choſe warme and temperate dayes, for the better comforting and ſpreading forward of your ſeedes lying on the earth.

A defence for the ſeedes ſowne.

And if after the ſeedes ſowen, you doubt either the coldnes or hotnes of the ſeaſon, in the ſcorching or burning of your ſeedes, then couer your beddes with the chaffe of corne, and with ſticks a croſſe ouer the ſame, and ſmall reedes or twigs alſo laide aptly vppon them, for the better defence, as Columella writeth.

When plants are to be remooued.

And all herbes in a manner may well be remooued, when they ſhalbe ſomewhat growen and come vp, and the earth at the remouing ſhall not be ouer drye. The newer ſeedes that do ſooneſt ſpring vp be theſe: the Leeke, Siue, Cucumber and the Gourde.

The varietie in comming vp of new and old ſeedes.

And the olde ſeedes that do ſpeedilier ſpring vp be theſe: the Parcely, Beetes, Creſſes, Sauery, Marioram, Pennyroyall, and Coliander: And the ſeedes ſowen in hot places do ſpeedilyer ſhoote vp in the ſtalkes, and ſooner yeelde forth ſeede.

And the ſeedes that ſooneſt breake and come vp, be Baſill, Spinage, Nauewe, which is a kinde of Rapes, and Rocket: for all theſe at the third dayes ſowing, appeare abone the ground, & yet the ſloweſt of all ſeedes commeth vp is Parcely.

A ſecret to make Leekes & onions begin the head.

And to put many ſeedes into one hole in the ground, ſhall all gather into one ſubſtance, and bring forth the greater frute: Like as you ſhall put many heads of Leekes or Onions into one hole together, and treading the blades often downe in the growing and ſhooting vp.

And

And that the Lettice, Parcely, Rocket & Basill, may grow altogither out of one stem or stalke, take 2 or 3 small balles of the Goat or sheepes dung, and those breake, and mingle the seedes togither in them, & after role altogither into a round ball, which after set into new Cow-dung, and couering the same with well drested and fine earth, that gently water. Rare secrets in causing sundry plants to grow out of one stalke.

And some do take two or three of the sheepe or goats dung, and breaking them, do so mingle the seedes and dung togither, which they after lap in a linnen cloth, and order the same in the ground as afore is taught. A secret not vnlike to the former.

And that many sauours & tastes may be felt in one heard, take first of the Lettice two or three seedes, of the Endiue so many, of the Dinallage the like: of the Basill, the Leeke and of the parsley (of all these three) so many seeds as of the other: then put all the seedes into a hole together, and in such sorte that the seeds may touch one another: but this before remembred, that you put them together in the dung of a horse or Oxe without any earth mingled with them. And thus sowen, there will after spring vp a plant, hauing so many sauours or tastes, as there were sowen together. A marueilous secret in causing many sauours to be felt in one hearbe.

Of the times in sowing and proper ordering of seeds, with the watring & weeding of the yong plants in the comming vp: the diuers maners of remouing and setting againe of the hearbes being somewhat growne vp.

Chap. 9.

ALthough the ancient husbandmen appoint certaine prescript times, as by months and daies, yet the same ought to be considered according to the nature of the place and condition of the ayre, so that you wey this with your selfe which wee shall after teach, that there bee certaine seedes which doe more speedilier spring vp, and certaine other seedes which are more later comming vp. The nature of the ground & qualitie of the aire are to be considered in the sowing of seedes.

And as touching the Garden hearbes, they (after their sowing) require no other diligence and care, but onely raking, weeding and watring. For that by one raking, both the stones are voided away from the new springing seedes, and all the noyous What is required after the sowing of garden seeds

noyous weedes that hinder the hearbs comming vp, are then better worne away.

What kinde of weeding hearbes is best commended.

And yet the cleaner weeding and plucking vp of all rootes must be done with the hand: which differeth from the killing of weedes by raking. And of these also which make harme the beddes newe sowen, is, to walke much by them, or to moue the Earth, when the same shall be very loose: for thereby it setleth fast the ground, that it maketh weedes the harder to be plucked vp, after the falling of great store of raine.

The seasonable time of watering, and what kinde of water ought to be vsed.

And the watering of your drye beddes which often happeneth for lacke of raine and moysture, about the hot and dry Dogge-dayes, must chiefely be done with luke warme water, and that euery morning and euening as Plinie writeth, if neede so require, with that water which timely in the morning is drawen out of no deepe Well, and reserued in some woodden vessell for three howres before, or as some do write, that it be set vnder the Skye for two or three dayes togither, that the Sunne may the better worke vppon it.

The manner and forme of watering of Hearbes.

And water not your beddes too much, for that the same harmeth and weakeneth the rootes and plantes: And to this water also mingle a little dung, the which shall giue a better nourishment with the water to the hearbes and young Plantes comming vp, if it be leasurely and gentlye watered forth.

And the young tender plantes new sprong vp, neede lesse watring then the stronger growen, which desire a great deale the more watering, yet the same to be leasurely done, that all the rootes may drinke alike of it, and not be hastily drowned with water. But colde, and salte water drawen out of deepe Welles, is most hurtfull vnto all plantes and hearbes, except the same stand for certaine howres in the hot Sunne, and be watered warme on the plantes.

And such seedes as ought onely to be sowen neare the end of Haruest, as in the moneth of September or October, that they may all the winter continue, and be soaked in the ground, be these: Garlike, Onyons, Scalions, young Leeke-

heads,

heads, great Garlike and Puffard-seede.

What is to be doone in a salte ground.

If of necessitie you must plant or sowe any thing in a salte ground, then that whatsoeuer it be, must be planted in the end of Haruest, or sowed the like, that the euilnes, and corruptnesse of the grounde, may be washed away with the winter showers.

And if you set any young Trees in that grounde, let that there-about, be mixed with a quantitie of sweete Earth and Riuer sand.

the knowledge of seeds meete for sowing.

And your seedes (that you minde to sowe) may not be aboue a yeare olde, and that hyssed, be whiter within, and heuier, least being corrupt by oldenes, they cannot encrease and come forward.

The third moneth sowing agreeeth in colde and snowey places, where the qualitie of Sommer is moyst, but seldome in other places the like hap correspondeth.

And seedes three moneths olde, will better agree, if that in hot places they be sowen in the Haruest.

And you may plant and sowe in your ground (if you will) the best kindes of euery fruite, seedes, slipps, or graffes, but set and sowe that (which you knowe by experience) will best prosper and come forward in your ground.

But any newe kinde of seedes, and not tryed before in your ground, you may not put your whole hope that vndoutedly they will prosper, in that it is doubtfull whether they will prosper or no.

And in moyst places, the seedes do sooner spring vp, then in the drie: and this vnderstand, according to the kinde and proper nature of them. And of this, the choice of ground in the sowing of your seedes much availeth.

shadowy place hurtful to plante.

And all such settes and seedes doe seldome prosper, which be sowen or sett in shadowey places. And such thinges also as do flower, in the time of their flower bearing, are not to be handled. And all kinds of pulses, as Peason, Fitches, Tares, &c. (as the Greeke author willeth) must be sowen in drye grounds, except the Beanes, which ought only to be sowen in moyst grounds.

What seedes may be sown at pleasure of the gardener.

And such seedes, which at will and pleasure may be sowen (as both in harueſt and ſpring time) vnto your vſe and commoditie, and that in a warme and comfortable ſeaſon, and fruitfull ground, be theſe: the Lettice, the Colewoortes, the Parſnips, the Carrets, the white Poppy, the Artechokes, and diuers other ſeedes.

A conſideration in the ſowing of ſeeds in hot and colde ground.

And in colde Countries the harueſt ſowing muſt be done earlyer, and the ſpring later. But in hot Countries, the Harueſt ſowing muſt be later, and the ſpring timelyer.

And whatſoeuer you will ſowe, let the ſame be done after the fourth day of the new Moone, and ſo continue vnto the ful of the Moone, but no longer: in that it oftentimes ſo happeneth, that the ſowing of ſeedes in the decreaſe or wane of the Moone, proſpereth not, as witneſſeth Auenzra.

And ſuch things alſo as you will cut down or gather, let the ſame be done in the wane of the Moone But ſuch things as you minde to ſell, let thoſe be gathered in the full Moones, becauſe the greater they do then abide, the vendiblier, or readier they will be to be ſolde.

what ſeaſon beſt commended for the ſowing of ſeedes.

And all ſeedes which be kindly ſowen, be rather ſowen in temperate wether, when as ſome ſhowers of raine moiſtning the ground, fall a day or two before, rather then in a dry ſeaſon and colde aire: For that the ſeedes ſo ſowen, do ſpeedilier ſpring vp through the warmenes and comfort of the ſeaſon, then in a colde aire, which of propertie doth both include them in the earth, and keepeth them long in comming.

And yet it oftentimes ſo happeneth, that although the ſeedes be perfect good, yet they ſpring not after their ſowing, through ſome malice of the celeſtiall bodies. And for that cauſe ſowe ſundry ſeedes togither, for the ſucer triall and proofe of them.

When plants may beſt be remoued, and of the commodity by remouing them.

And after all theſe, the moſt or greateſt number of plants, may well be remoued, when they be somewhat ſprong vp, ſo that the ground be not ouer dry nor ouer moyſt.

For by remouing ſuch plants may the better be weeded (being thin ſet) and grow the better vnto their full bignes, and be alſo ſweeter, ſo that they gently looſe and weede away al-

wayes

wayes all the euil weedes that ſpring vp amongſt them which otherwiſe would hinder and take away their nourishment.

And thoſe hearbes alſo which ought not to be remoued, after their yong comming vp, muſt be thinne ſowen, but thoſe which ought to be remoued, muſt be thicke ſowen together.

A good inſtruction of ſowing ſeedes.

Certaine helpes and ſecrets for the garden ſeeds, as wel before, as after the ſowing of them, that they may not be harmed by any inward or outward meanes. Chap. 10.

AND now in vaine hath the Gardner (or any other) beſtowed his paines, in the diligent laboring of his ground, and committing of ſeeds to the earth: if in like manner he ſeek not thoſe meanes which may beſt auoyde the harme of the birds ſcraping vp the ſeedes, and the other beaſtes and wormes creeping in the earth. And to auoyd theſe harmes and damages, marke diligently theſe inſtructions hereafter taught.

worthy ſecrets in preſeruing the ſeeds ſowen in the earth without harm

And firſt if your ſeedes a little before the ſowing, be ſteeped or ſoaked in the iuice of the hearb named the houſe Leeke, or for lack of ſufficient plentie of the hearbe, to lay the ſeedes all a day and night in, you may in ſtead thereof, ſeeth the hearbe in faire water, and with that water you may ſprinckle your ſeedes ſowen in the beds, that they may ſo draw to them, and drinke in of that iuice, which by that meanes doth only deſcend, that neither the Birds, Ants, or Piſmiers, Field mice, nor any other vermine, will at any time after touche thoſe ſeeds or young plants after ſprung vp, but cauſe them encreaſe the better, as writeth the worthy Collumella, who of experience is often noted true.

A ſecret that the ſeedes be not deſtroyed of Birds.

And Aſyrcanus writeth, that if you ſeeth a little wheat or barly in wine, or ſoake it in the wine, with the rote Hellebor, or otherwiſe Moſe wort, and after ſcatter it in the paths & alleis about the garden, that the ſame not onely defendeth the ſeeds fro the iniury of birds, but maketh them ſeeme as dead, or rather as drunken by eating thereof, which being in this wiſe, he willeth to hang by the legs on a ſticke, vnto the fraying of the other birds.

A maruelous matter of the decoction of Riuer creuiſes

And the ſaide Africanus writeth, that the decoction of the Riuer creuiſes, ſprinckled on the ſeedes, doth both defend the ſeeds, and the young plants ſprung of the ſeedes, that neither the Birds, nor any other creeping thing, will after (a matter greatly to be marueiled at) neuer touch them. And there be ſome, which will, after the young plants be ſomewhat ſprung vp, ſprinckle onely of the water wherein the creuiſes be ſodden, as a ſure defence, which many times hath bene tried and found true by ſundry, if ſo be the ſame be done at a certaine time of the Moone.

A ſecret of the Greeke and latin husbandmen for preſerning of ſeedes very notable.

And the powder of the Harts horne, either filed or ſhauen, and the ſame infuſed in ſweet water, and the ſeeds before the ſowing ſoaked therein, or ſprinckled with that water after the ſowing, doth well defend the young plants from being gnawne of any creeping thing.

And the ſeeds after the ſowing, ſprinckled with the brine water made of Nitre, doth well defend them from beeing eaten of wormes, ants, and ſuch like, as Virgill in his husbandry writeth.

And the Greeke Author Apuleus writeth, the onely ſprinkling of wine on the ſeedes and young plants, to be a meanes of the better ſtrength and encreaſe of them.

And certaine Greeke writers of husbandry allowed of Plinie, Collumella, and Palladius, affirme, that the rootes of the wilde Colwcumber, ſoked in ſweet water for a day and a night, and that water often ſprinckled on the ſeedes, the next day following (thoſe ſeedes couered with a blanket) and after ſowen in the ground, that then they be defended from all noyſome wormes and other creeping thinges.

Secrets of the ſpeckled tode

And the Greeke Author Apuleus writeth, as a ſafegard vnto your ſeedes, that if before the digging and caſting vp of your beds, you draw about the Garden the ſpeckled tode and putting him into an earthen pot, you doe after bury him in the middle of your Garden, or ouer-whelm him with earth in a deepe furrowe, which let there remaine vnto the ſowing time, and after digge him vppe, caſting him a great way of leaſt the plants growing thereabout, might become bitter

and

and vnſauorie. And the Egyptian and Greeke authours of Huſbandry write, that the young plants ſhall not be gnawen or harmed of any creeping thing, if the ſeeds be ſowen about the firſt quarter of the Moone.

And Democritus writeth, that if you put ten Sea or Riuer Creuiſes into a veſſell full of water, and couering it, you ſet the ſame abroad to be ſunned for ten dayes, & ſoke your ſeeds for other eight dayes in that water, which after the minde of Democritus ſowe in your beds: and after the young plants of thoſe ſeedes be ſpring vp, they will not onely driue cattle and other ſmall beaſtes from the eating of them. But further of thoſe helpes ſhall be taughtin that Chapter, where we write of the diuers remedies againſt ſundry beaſtes, worms, flies, and ſuch like, that commonly annoy gardens.

A phiſicke experiment of Democritus that after the plants be come vp, they ſhall not be harmed of beaſtes nor of any creeping things.

Certaine ſpeciall times to be noted and obſerued, either for their aide & ſauour to be choſen: or for their annoyance and incommoditie to be eſchewed for ſowing, planting, or graffing.

Chap. 11.

THe more of valure our ſtuffe and labour thereabout is, the more circumſpect wee ought to bee, and the more aide thereto we may get, or the greater danger therein wee may auoide, the more carefull euery wiſe man will be.

And the dayly experience is our ſchoolemaſter to inſtruct vs how much it preuaileth or hinderth for ſeedes to be ſowen, plants to be ſet, or ſyennes to be graffed in this or that time, hauing reſpect not onely to the time of the yeare, as the Sun altereth it, but alſo to the encreaſe or wane of the Moon, to the ſigne ſhe is in, and to the places of heauen aboue, or vnder the earth, and alſo to the aſpects of other plants, whoſe beames of light and influence, both quicken, comfort, preſerue, & maintaine, or els nip, dry, wither, conſume, and deſtroy by ſun drie waies the tender ſeeds, plants, and grafts, according to their nature, and force naturall or accidentall.

Heerein

Heerein firſt preſuppoſing the due circumſpection of the choice of ground, & other thinges generally required in this. And therfore according both to the authoritie of the wiſe and expert Aſtronomers, as alſo the wary and prudent experimenters. in either ſowing or planting, or other like practiſe about hearbes, plants, or trees, haue left vnto vs for our commoditie theſe rules following, that are to be vnderſtood and kept in cauſes of importance, and where occaſion may be taken.

When Saturne and the Moone are either three ſcore degrées off the Zodiacke aſunder, (which difference is called a ſertile aſpect, thus commonly marked ⚹) or when they are aſunder, 126. degrees, which is called a triangle, Trigon, or Trient aſpect, then is it good to labour the earth, for either ſowing, tilling, gardning, vining, or building.

But when they are a quarter of the Zodiack aſunder, called a quartile aſpect, which is 90. degrees, then meddle not in ſuch matters, For when they are in places oppoſite one to another. as if the one be in Aries, and the other in like number of degrées in Libra, and ſo of Taurus and Scorpio &c.

The full Moons are not good for that purpoſe, ſpeaking generally as we now doe: the Moone being neere the Dragons taile, is not good, but neere the dragons head is good. All other things be preſuppoſed equall: and moſt briefly for this little treatiſe to knit vp other obſeruatiõs depending of the moones places only, conſider theſe following.

The Moone being betweẽ the 28. degrée of Taurus, and the eleuenth of Gemini, ſowe. And the moone being betweene the 28 of Gemini, and the firſt of Cancer, ſowe not. And from the firſt of Cancer, vnto the 19. of the ſame, ſowe and plow. And from the 28. of Leo, vnto ♍ 21. of Virgo, ſowe and plant. And from thence vnto the 24. of Virgo, build, ſowe and plant: and from the 24 of Virgo vnto the 19. of Libra, ſowe & plow, and from thence vnto the 19. ſowe and plant. And from the 6. of Capricornus, vnto the 19 of Capricornus ſowe. And from the 24. of Piſces, vnto the 7. of Aries, ſowe. Beſides all theſe, you may by your naturall reaſon, eaſily finde this rule of the olde

olde writers to be well noted to vs, that either in a verye moyſtie ground, or elſe the ſeedes you ſowe, be ſeedes of great moyſture, that then you ſhall commodiouſlye chooſe the end of the Moones wane, when ſhe is very neare her change, but if either your ground be of the drieſt, or your ſeedes: the Moone wexing and toward the full, is fittеſt, as Plinie witneſſeth.

And the more of theſe you can finde at your time of concurring, the better it is: as in good ground well dreſſed, in due ſeaſon of the yeare, in due time of the Moones age, in due time of her place, in the Zodiacke, in due aſpecte of Saturne, well placed in the ſight of Heauen &c. And vnles your ſtuffe be good, all this preuaileth not. And beſides that, the common Almanackes vppon perticuler aſpects incident for the time, doe now and then exactly warne you of times good to plant in, as commonly when the Moone is in Taurus and Aquarius, or to ſowe in, as when ſhe is in Taurus, Cancer, Virgo, Libra and Capricornus, or when any of theſe ſignes are aſcending in the Eaſt angle. And when Mars neither regardeth the aſcendant, or the Moone, but that he be weekely placed in the ſcituation of the heauens for that time.

A great many of other rules as concerning the perticular fauour or hinderance of the heauens, might (and that neceſſarily) haue bene brought in this place, but neither is it in my purpoſe, for this preſent, either to be long in wrighting or darke in ſence.

And perchance, the moſt part of the common ſort of people will thinke thoſe thinges ſomewhat aboue their capacitie, yet my conſcience bound me ſomewhat to put ſuch matter into their heades occaſioning them thereby (where the daintines and valew of the ſeedes or ſets ſo require) to vſe the councell of ſome ſuch as both may expound them theſe rules, and giue them ouer alike if need be.

Euen heere you muſt preſuppoſe all thinges on your part fully and onely firſt prepared and well appointed, and then to waite for, or take heede to ſuch times as heere are noted, for the working of the Planets therein.

Certaine helps & ſecrets againſt haile, lightning, tempeſts, miſtes, ruſt, froſts and burning heat. Chap. 12.

SEeing the ſeedes, plants and hearbes ſowen and ſet in the garden, be after in daunger of haile and miſtes, and other ſtormie weather, which greatly diſcomfits the Gardner, or (at the leaſt) ſuch which hope to haue profit and commoditie by the hearbes ſowne and ſet in the Garden: Therefore for the better auoyding of theſe dangers, the auncient husbandmen and skillfull Gardners haue found out by practice, ſundry remedies againſt ſuch weather.

And firſt againſt haile, the ancient husbandmen counſaile to compas the allyes in the garden, about with the white vine. And Philoſtratus willeth, that when we ſee the haile neare at hand, then to compas the allies about with the skinne of the Sea-calfe, or els the beaſt Hiena or the Crocadile, and to hang any of theſe skinnes alſo at the entrance or comming in of the garden.

Helpes and ſecrets, againſt haile neere at hand.

And the Greekes write, that the garden ſhall not be harmed by lightnings, if that the ſame about be conered with the hide of the riuer Horſe, named Hippotamon. And Columella writeth, that if you compas the allyes of your garden about with the white Vine, or hang an Owle in the Garden with the winges abroad, that either of theſe do defend the garden from lightnings. And ſundrie doe plant the Bay tree in diuers places of the garden, as a defence to it againſt lightnings.

Helps againſt lightnings.

And Archibius wrote vnto Antiochus King of Siria, and diuers auncient men the like, that if you bury the ſpeckled Mode incloſed in a new earthen pot, in the middle of your Garden, that the ſame defendeth it from hurtfull weather and tempeſtes.

Some alſo hang the Eagles feathers, or the ſkinne of the Sea-Calfe in the middle of the garden, or in the foure corners of the ſame as a proued defence to it againſt tempeſtes And if thicke miſtes do harme thy garden, then burne heapes of Chaffe weedes, or ſhrubbes in ſundrie places, ſo that the ſmoake

Helps againſt thicke myſtes and froſtes.

ſmoake ſhall much help this matter. And Diophanes in his rules of huſbandry, willeth to gather togither dead weedes or ſuch like matter, and burne them on heapes in many places about the garden, but eſpecially in that part which way the winde then bloweth, that it may ſo carrie the ſmoake through the Garden: for by that meanes, it is thought to annoyde and put away the euill and harme of the myſte which is then preſent, or at hand.

And when ruſt is falling on the hearbes, then Berkius in his huſbandry inſtructions, willeth to burne the left horne of an Ore, with Ore dung, and to make a great ſmoake forth-with round about the garden, but eſpecially that way which the winde then bloweth, whereby all the ſmoake through the winde, may be ſo carryed againſt the violence of the ruſt falling, which by that meanes ſhal beare off the noyſome occaſion of the aire. Helps againſt ruſt.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you make a ſmoke with the burning of Creuiſes & Ore or goats dung, or chaffe, the ſame to be a moſt preſent remedie againſt the ruſt. And certaine Greeks write, that a garden ſowne with beanes, both within and without, they do defend it from being harmed by froſts. A ſecreta gainſt froſt,

Beritius and Anotalius write, that if you ſoak the rootes or leaues of either the wilde Colwcumber or Colloquintida bruſed in water, & ſprinkle your hearbes taken with ruſt, before the riſing of the Sun, that the ſame recouereth them. Helps againſt ruſt that falls before the ſun riſing.

And the ſaide Anotalius writeth, that if you ſteep your ſeeds in the water of the rootes of the wilde Colwcumber, before you ſowe them, that the ſame defendeth them from all harmes of the wormes, flies and all other creeping thinges.

And Apuleus writeth, that if you plant the Bay tree in many places of your garden, that the ſame putteth away the harmes of the ruſt, as hath ben experienced.

And that burning heate harme not your Garden, which commonly commeth about the Canicular or Dogge dayes, Plinie willeth to burne and make a ſmoak of three Creuiſes about your ground and vnder your Vine, as a good remedie againſt the ſame. A ſecret againſt burning heate

Certaine helpes and ſecrets againſt the Garden wormes, the greene Flyes, the Canker woormes, the great Moths, the Snailes with ſhelles and without ſhelles that harme and gnawe as well the leaues of Trees & Fruits, as the hearbs and young Plants comming vp. Chap. 13.

Garden grounds harmed by diuers iniuries.

AND forasmuch as it is apparant vnto all mens eyes, that the hearbes and young plantes after they bee come vp, be diuerſlie in daunger to certaine ſmall Beaſtes and creeping thinges, liuing aſwell vnder the earth as aboue, that cauſe the plants oftentimes to become weake, if they bee not ſpeedily looked vnto for remedie. And ſuch alſo is that great encreaſe and aboundance of them, that by all meanes poſſible that can bee deuiſed either with fire, ſmoake or Iron, they may not after be vtterly expelled and driuen out of the Garden, being there once lodged in the ground: Wherefore that theſe annoiances to the Garden, may by diligent induſtrie of the Gardner be the better deſtroyed, and that hee may receiue the more commoditie and profit by his Hearbes, flowers and rootes, therefore ſhall heere bee declared, ſuch ſpeciall remedies as the ancient and late writers haue inuented, and by their diligence practiſed, vnto the great comfort of the Gardner, and to him that hath delight in a Garden.

A hard expelling ſometime of creeping thinges out of Gardens.

Remedies againſt the garden wormes.

And firſt Africanus, in his learned worke of husbandrie, writeth, that if you ſmoake the holes of the woormes with drie Dre or Cowdung, that way which the winde then bloweth, that it doth expell them from the eating and gnawing after of your hearbes. And Plinie writeth, that the pure mother or ſome of the oyle (without the mixture of ſalt) ſprinckled on the woormes, doth alſo driue them away.

And if the woormes hang to the rootes of the plants or hearbes through the naughtineſſe of the dung, then weede the Beds and plants verie diligently.

And Frontius writeth, that the hearbes ſhall not be harmed of the Garden Flye, if that by a naturall meanes you doe plant or ſowe in many places amongſt your hearbes, the hearbe named Rocket.

And

And Anatolius in his husbandrie instructions writeth, that the garden Flies be killed with the sprinckling of sharp Vinegar, mingled with the iuice of Henbane on them. And the like doth the sodden liquor or water of the Hearbe named Fleabone, as writeth Pamphilius the Greeke, in which the hearb named Nigella Romana, hath for a time bene soaked & sprinkled, kill the garden flies. Remedies against the greene flies of the garden.

And if you will not haue your seedes after the sowing, to be gnawen or eaten of any creeping thinges in the Garden, then before the sowing soake your seedes in the iuice of the Hearbe named Sengreene or Houslike, as before was taught.

And Anatolius writeth, that the seedes shal not be gnawen if you sowe or set them in the ground, in the shell of a Tortoise.

And Palladius writeth, that your Pot-hearbes shal not engender noysome wormes, or other creeping thinges, if that you drie the seedes before the sowing in a Tortoise skinne, or else set the hearbe Pints in many places, and especially among the Coleworts: as the like as some write, doth a little quantitie of the bitter fitches or tares (sowne amongst) preuaile, especially if the same be sowne amongst the Radishes, and rapes.

Also, the auncient writers will, that the Fitches, which bee a graine like to Peason, be sowen in many places among the Pot-hearbes, for a surer defence against all creeping thinges.

And Frontius writeth, that if the Pot-hearbes be sprinckled with the drine made of Goose dung, that the same defendeth hearbes from being gnawen of the Garden wormes, or other creeping things.

And now as touching the Caterpillars which the greekes named Palmer wormes, that greatlye annoy and spoyle the hearbes of the Garden: Plinie willeth, that you sprinckle the Plants or trees with bloudy twigs, as a speciall remedy to drine them so away. Diuers helps and secrets against the caterpillers.

And other auncient writers teach, that if you haue Riuer creuises in many places of the Garden, that the same doth likewise drine away the Caterpillers.

And certaine others will, that you sprinkle the plantes with the dewe of that water, in which the vine ashes haue bene soaked, as a present remedie.

And there be other which will, that about the bodies and armes of the trees, ye kindle and make a smoke of brimstone and vnsleaked lime togither, is a speciall remedie to driue them away.

And there are certaine other, which first do soften the seds in that Lie which is drawne and made of the Fig ashes, before they sowe them in the ground, or rather in the blod of the Caterpillers, or in the iuice of the hearbe named the houseleeke: and some will also, to sprinkle of the fig ashes vpon the Caterpillers.

And certaine rather will, that you sowe his hearbe in fashion to a big Onion, and named of the Apothecaries Squilla in the Garden, or hang the same heere and there about the Garden, for a present remedie against the Catterpillers.

And some will, to burne the Toade stooles or Mushrooms, which grow out of the Walnut tree, and be stiffe and hard, that with the strong sauour of them, they may so be destroyed.

And some doe write, that a sauour made of the onely dung of Backes, in many places of the garden, will destroy them: And if the Caterpillers do yet withstand these former helps, then vse this practise heere vnder taught: which is, that you take Ore pille, and the mother of Oyle, and mix them equally togither, after set the same ouer the fier vntill it be hot, and taking the same of, let it coole, which being cold sprinkle on the potheardes and trees, and the same shall destroy them as Anotalius writeth of experience.

And Palladius writeth, that if you burne small bundles of Garlike blades without heads, making a smoke with them, in the allies and paths of the Garden about, that the same will flea them with the onely sauour.

And certaine Greeke writers will, that you take a few of the Caterpillers in the next Garden or Orchard, and seeth them

them in water with the hearbe Dill, which being colde, ſprinkle on the hearbes or trees, and in ſuch places where they be, and the ſame ſhall deſtroy them. But take very dilligent heede, that none of this water fall, either on your face or hands. A practiſe of the greek husbandmen againſt the Caterpillers.

And ſome will, to burne of Galbanum, or the hoones of goats, or the Harts horne, making a ſmoake in the Garden, which way the winde then bloweth, as a ſpeciall remedy to flea them.

And there be ſome which will, that you ſteepe the Wine aſhes in water for three dayes, and after ſprinkle plentifully of the ſame on your hearbes and trees, as a preſent remedie to drive away Caterpillers. A ſinguler ſprincklīng ſtock to drive away the Caterpillers.

And Diophanes the Greeke, writeth, that the Poths which kil the leeks may be diſtroyed on this wiſe, if that you take the maw of a weather ſheepe new killed, not waſhed, but having all the filth hanging thereon, which lightly couer or poulder with earth in that place, where they moſt ſwarme in the garden, and after two dayes, you ſhall finde a marueious companie of Poths and other flies heaped thereupon, which either carey away, or bury very deepe in that place, that they riſe not again. And when you haue thus done but twiſe or thriſe togither, you ſhall vtterly deſtroy them for comming any more.

And againſt ſnailes, both with ſhell and without ſhel, the new mother or ſome of oyle ſprinkled on them, doth greatly preuaile, and the like doth ſot of Chimnies, ſcattered on the beds, drive them away. Helps againſt ſnailes.

And Iulius Fronto writeth, that all pot hearbes be greatly holpen and defended from noyſome Beaſtes, if by them the hearb Rocket be either ſowne or ſet. A ſecree for pothearbs out of Iulius Fronto.

Certaine

Certaine helpes and secrets against the Garden Moles, Pismires, Gnats, Flies with long hinderlegs, Breese, Field-Mice, Backes, Serpents, Frogs, and Todes, which gnawe, harme, and destroy, as well the trees and fruits, as other hearbes and floures. Chap. 14.

Why Moles are a disquiet and griefe to Gardners.

AND for that ye Moles in many places of gardens, through their digging and casting vppe, doe leaue bare both the seedes, and yong plantes comming vp, to the vttermoste destruction of the good encrease of them, which by that meanes doth not a little disquiet or greeue the Gardener, to see his painefull labours so to be subuerted and come vnto ruine, contrarie to his expectation hoped after. And therefore such helpes against their malice, as either the auncient Greekes, or the Latinistes haue written of, shall heere at large be vttered.

a proper secret to driue away Moles in the earth.

And first the Greekes write, that the Moles will at no time dig or cast vp in the garden, where the hearbe named Mickweed, otherwise in Latin Palma Christi, doth either grow of their owne accord in that ground, or brought otherwise by hap, and there set.

And both Paxamus & Sotion the Greeke, write, that if you take a walnut, and bore a hollow hole, filling the same afterward with Chaffe, Rosen, and Brimstone, and caused to smoake, put the same into the bigger and newer hole of his comming forth of the earth, stopping diligently all his other holes, and that none of the smoke passe forth, And in such sort leaue that one and bigger hole wide open, that the aire may the better driue the smoke into the earth, which after the Mole feeleth the sauour thereof, doth either forthwith runne some other way from thence, or is found choaked or dead in the earth.

An easie praeaise of the antient husbandmen in taking of Moles.

And some write, that you may take all the Moles in your garden by an easier manner: If that you get a quick Mole, put the same into a deepe earthen pot, setting the edge to the earth: which Mole, after a while feeling himselfe thus inclosed, will crye

crie out, and after the other Moles in that ground doe thus heare him cry, they will haſtily draw neere vnto him, and minding to help him forth, will ſo fall into the pot. And now by this ſame meanes if you wil, you may take and deſtroy all the Moles in your garden.

Diuers ſpecial remedies either to kill or driue away moles.

And ſome will to take the rote of the white Mole wort, making the ſame into fine pouder, and after mixing it with barly meale, to worke it together with milke and wine, and after make it vp into little balls, which lay within the holes of the Moles. And Albertus writeth, that if you ſtop the holes of Moles with either Garlike, Onions, or Leekes, that any of theſe, doe either force him forthwith to run from that place, or to caſt vp a new in ſome other place.

A proper hunting and driuing away of moles out of the garden.

And ſome will, to bringe vp Cats to runne onely in the Garden, for the better driuing of them away. And ſome alſo do bring vpp Weeſells tame, letting them after runne vppe and downe in the Garden, and to runne into the hoales of the Moles, which through their ſtincke in hunting after the Moles, do euen ſo driue them out of the ground.

And ſome will, to fill the mouth of the hoale with the pouder of the red marking ſtone, or red Oker, mired with the iuice of the wild Cowcumber. And ſome wil to take Galbanum, and Brimſtone, filling a Walnut ſhell therewith, and to make a ſmoake into the hoale, which ſo drieth them away.

And Palladius writeth, that if you beſtrike the lower part of your tree with redde Oker, mired with Tarre, and hang a Jay thereby, that the ſame doth ſo gather Piſmiers al in one place, that you may after eaſily deſtroy them.

And certaine others will, to annoint the ſtalks of Plants and bodies of trees, with the Oile made of Lupines, or rather with the pouder of Lupines, mired with Oile. And ſundry write, that they may be deſtroied with the onely mother and ſome of Oile ſprinckled on them.

And Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the great heape and ſwarmes of the Piſmiers gathered together, if in-

a maruailous practise agēst Pismires:

to their heap you put the hart of an Oule: and if the pismires runne and stray abroad in your garden, then strew or sift Ashes in the allies, and pathes about where they run. And it doeth likewise auaile against their straying abroad, if that you bestrike the pathes about where they runne, either with bright white chalke, or with oyle, as hath beene experienced.

And the saide Palladius writeth, that you may driue away the Pismires, if into their holes you sprinckle of the powder of the Organie and Brimstone mixed together, or if you fill and stuffe the holes of the Pismires with the powder made of drie Oyster-shelles burned, it doth likewise destroy them.

And Paxamus writeth, that if you take of the pismires, and burne of them in the middle of thy Garden, that the rest will forsake the ground. And the saide Author writeth, that if you make a stinke with Rosen before their holes, they will not after come forth, but forsake the place.

Other practises against the Pismires:

And he also writeth, that if you compas them with white wooll, chalke, or red oaker, or else strewe round about them the hearbe named Organy, but especially those waies where they haue common course: For then neither will the Pismires come neere that plant where it is, nor runne vp that tree which is bound about the body with this hearb: so much they hate the sauour thereof.

And Palladius writeth, that if you bestrike and annoint the plants and trees with red oaker, tarre, and butter mixed together, that the same driueth them away.

And certaine Greeke writers will, to annoint the plants and trees with the gall of a Bull, the mother of Oyle, and tar tempered together, which so driueth them away. And they also write, that if you poure of the propper dropping of the Poppye mixed with Vineger into their holes, the same doth kill them.

Also some write, that you may destroy the pismires with the onely sauour of the stinke or smoake, of the wilde Cowcumber brent.

And

That pismires creepe not on your trees.

And certain wil, that if the pismires creep vpon your trées to make broad round rings about the bodies and arms of the trées, with white chalke: for that by twice or thrice, or oftner so doing, you shall cause them to forsake the creeping vp any more on those trees.

A secret of Pliny for the killing of Pismires.

And Plinie writeth, that you may destroy the pismires, if that you stop their holes, either with sea mud, or with ashes, if they be not wet. And yet the hearbe Heliotropion (which some suppose to be the Marigold) by strewing the leaues on the holes, doe chiefly destroy them. And certaine write, that the water, in which the vnbaked tiles hath bene soked, poured vpon the holes, doth destroy them: and now these instructions against the Pismiers shall heere suffice.

Sundry remedies for the driuing away of Gnats.

And Democritus in his rules of husbandry writeth, that the Gnats which haunt and feed in gardens may be driuen away, with the onely burning and making of a smoke of the hearbe Calamynte.

And the saide Democritus writeth, that the decoction of the hearb Organye in vinegar, and sprinckled on them, doth likewise driue them away, as hath bene experienced.

And the Gnats also be chased away, if that you steepe the hearbe Rue, or hearbs grace in water, and sprinckle the same on the beds where they haunt: and they be also destroied and chased away with the smoke made of Galbanum, brimstone and Comin mixed together, and likewise chased away with the decoction of the hearbe named Flebane, sprinckled on the beds.

A sprinckle made of the hemp flouring to driue away Gnats.

And certaine Greekes write, that the stalkes of Hempe flouring, doe driue away the swarme, or huge company of Gnattes: and the like doth the smoake made of the Oxe dung.

And Palladius writeth, that the pouder of the rote of Elecampane, mixt with the ashes of horns burned, and the same sprinckled on the beds, doth driue the gnats away: and Pliny writeth that a smoke made onely of the gum named Galbanum, doth driue away the Gnats.

And Byritius the Greeke writeth, that if you sprinckle the

Certaine practises of the Greekes against the flies with the long hinder legs.

place moste swarming of those flies (with the long hinder legges,) the pouder of Rose-woort, Dyapiment, and milke mired together, that the same will either kill them, or driue them quite away, and the same Byritius writeth, that Alom with the hearbe Organie steeped in milke, and the same sprinckled on the beds and hearbes, letteth them from touching those hearbes after. And the Bayleaues or hearbes beaten to pouder, with the roote of the blacke Rose-woort, and tempered either in milke or in water or hony mired together, the same sprinckled on the hearbes, doth either flea them or driue them quite away.

A secret for the driuing away of those flies,

And certaine Greekes write, that if you burne of those flies in the middle of your Garden, that the sauour of them will driue away the rest: and the like doth the wetting of some of them, and after couering them there with wet mud.

And Byritius writeth, that the Flies with the long hinder legs will not after touch any of those hearbs which be sprinkled with the water, wherein the Leeks or Centorie hath bene steeped.

Didimus practise against the Breese.

And against the Breeses (which bee Flies that eate the Corne as it growth) and doe besides much harme to hearbs, Didimus willeth to sow three graines or cornes of mustard-seede, neere to the roote of such a tree, and among the hearbes eaten with them, which so driueth them away. And against the field and Garden-mice, Apulens willeth to steepe your seedes before the sowing in an Ore or Cowes gall. And certaine will, to stop their hoales with the leaues of Rhododaphnes, for that when they seeke to come forth and gnawe those leaues, they after die.

Remedies against the garden and field-mice,

And certaine Greekes will, to take the Powder made of the wilde Cow-cumber, Henbane Seedes, bitter Almonds, and blacke Rose-woort (of each a like quantitie) and the same so worke together with oyle, which laide or put into the hoales of the Garden of Field-mice, driueth them speedilie away. And Plinie writeth that the Garden Mice may bee driuen away, if you sprinckle the beds with the Ashes of the Weesel,

Weesel, or with that water sprinckled on the beds, in which a Catte hath bin washed. And the seeds also (before the sowing) steeped in the gall of an Ore, doth driue them from the eating of the seeds at any time after.

And Florentine writeth, that the Snake or Adder will not lodge or abide in that garden, where either Wormwood, Mugwort, or Southernwood, be aptly planted in the corners, or round about the garden. And if they haunt any Garden, then with the smoake made of the drie Lilly roote, or Harts horne, or of the hooues of the Goate, they may speedily be driuen away. And Democritus writeth, that if you cast the greene Oken leauee vpon either the Snake or Adder, that he dieth forthwith: or if any spiteth falling into their mouth open. How snakes & adders may be kild.

An Florentine writeth, that neither the Snake no, Adder will come neere that place, where either the fat of a Hart lieth buried, or the rote of a Centorie, or the stone of Gagates or the dung of a Kyte lyeth.

And you may driue away any venemous creeping thing, if that you take the pouder made of Nigella, Pelitory, Galbanum, Harts-horne, Brimstone, Pecendanum, and the hoofs of the goat, mixing all these together by equall portions, and wrought together with vinegar: make litle bals of the same, and with the same make a smoke, and it driueth al forthwith to forsake the ground vpon the sauour thereof. how any place may be free from the snake or adder.

And they hate all strong sauours, which be either made with Garlicke or Onion blades, and such like: and the flame of fier also, which greatly dimmeth their sight. And the Adders do likewise loue the Sauine tree, the Iuie tree, and the Fenell, as the Toades doe the Sage, and the Snake the hearbe Rocket. Vnder what the adders and snakes ioy to be:

And the Snakes and Adders (of all other thinges) do most hate the ash tree, for that they cannot abide the touching of the long shadow in the morning, nor that in the euening. but run farre from it. And Pliny writeth a maruelous matter of ỳ ash tree, for if a snake (saith he) be compassed about with the greene ash tree leaues, and a fier made in the middest, that he The naturall contrarietie of the ash and the snake or adder worthy to be noted.

wil rather run into the burning fire, then towards the leaues so much he hateth the ash tree.

Of the Ferne against snakes of adders,

And certaine write, that a smoke made of the drie Ferne burned, doeth driue away Snakes and Adders out of that ground.

And Palladius writeth, that the Snake and adders, and all other venemous vermine be driuen away with euery sharp and stincking sauour fumed abroad.

How toades may be driuen away and killed

And the Toads may be driuen away and killed (as write the Greekes and Latines) with those helpes and remedies, which we haue before taught, in the remedies against the snakes and adders, and therefore to recite those againe, were heere superfluous.

Africanus practise for the driuing away, and killing of the Backes.

And Africanus writeth, that the Backs wil not flye vp and downe in that garden, where through the walles and paths you hang of the boughes or branches of the Plane tree. And they be also killed with the onely smoake made of Iuy branches in the allies about.

And against the chirping of the frogs, which perhaps seeme to disquiet the Gardner in the summer nights, vse this helpe and secret written of the Greek Africanus, which willeth to set a bright light before them, or to hang a bright Lanterne light on some tree, that the same light may shine vpon them like the light of the Sunne, which causeth them by the light thereof, to cease their chirping, as hath beene tryed by sundry oftentimes.

Now (gentle reader) I haue heere vttered those special incommodities which happen in Gardens, vnto which I haue adioyned the most proued and true experiences, against those euils, out of the best Authours, both of the old and new writers in this Art: least that any (hauing delight in Gardning) should be frustate of these helpes. And thus an end of this first Booke.

(·.·)

The

The ſecond Booke inſtructeth diuers manner of ſowing, ſetting, and ordering of the moſt Pot-hearbes, Flowers, &c. with the care and ſecrets taught, aſwell for the health of the bodie, as to the pleaſure and delight of the eye.

NOw that I haue ended my firſt booke, ſuch as it is: I mind here to enter into the ſecond, In which ſhall be entreated of the diuers manner, care, ordering, and dilligence to be beſtowed, both in the ſowing, ſetting, and remouing of the moſt Pothearbs, ſweet ſmelling hearbes, and pleaſant flowers, as well for the vſe of Phiſicke, as for pleaſure to carrie in the hand, and otherwiſe to ſerue the pot, And theſe, by dilligence of the author, gathered out of the treaſures of the beſt writers of the Greekes and Latines in this art: and experienced by the often practiſes of ſundrie skilfull Gardners in diuers realms and countries, vnto our great vſe and commoditie. And ſuch worthy ſecrets alſo taught in theſe matters, as the like hath not beene vttered in the Engliſh tongue. And for that I meane not to ſeeme long in rehearſal of the benefit of theſe vnto mans health and delight: I minde therefore (as a number of writers do) to entreat firſt of that well knowne hearbe, both vnto the Cittie and Countrie, named the Lettuce: whoſe nature, care, properties, and benefite alſo to the health, ſhall after appeare.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Lettuce. Chap. 1

AND firſt the Garden Lettuce (of which we mind here to entreat) doeth delight to be ſowne in a fatte and well wrought ground, beeing dunged before, and moyſt at the ſowing: for ſo it appeareth by the fourth day after the ſowing,

ſo

ſo that the ſeeds be not otherwiſe burnt, and the ground vnfruitfull.

And it may alſo be ſowne all the yeare through, if ſo be the ground be well dunged and dreſſed, and the ſeeds often watered, for ſo they come the fatter and plentifuller vp. And ſeedes which you ſow in the harueſt may well be remooued and ſet againe in the moneth of December, and in beddes (if you will) with other hearbes: for ſo it well abideth the colde winter time, and is alſo much comforted thereby, ſo that it may well agree and come vppe with other hearbes, vnto the Seed-time. And to make it ſpread of breadth in the growing, you muſt then remoone each from other, when as fiue leaues be ſprung vppe, and ſet them a good ſpace aſunder, whereby they may ſpread the larger: and the preſſing downe of them, muſt eſpecially be done in warme daies, in lightly cutting the leaues about, and after laying the ſhardes of Tiles, or tufts of earth to preſſe them downe.

And leaſt the Lettuce ſhould grow hard, it ought to be often ſet, and plentifully watred, for by that means the leaues will grow both tenderer and ſofter, ſo that the rootes before bee ſteeped and couered with ſoft dung in the new ſetting againe.

And both Palladius and Columella write, that if through the beds, and round about them, be often ſtrewed the riuer or ſea Sand, that leaues wil ſo become white, if the leaues before be gathered and tyed vppe togeather. And to make the Lettice growe lowe by the ground, and to be thicke and broad in the head, you muſt then remoue and ſet them when as they be growne vp an handfull high, and often clippe the tops of the leaues round about, and in the new ſetting again ſcrape faire the rootes of the Lettice, and after dip them in ſoft and new Cow dung, and ſet them ſo in the ground, which after the ſetting, often and plentifully water, and in the growing vppe alwaies keepe vnder, by clipping the toppes of the leaues, and laying tile ſhardes on the heades of them, for by that meanes they increaſe into a breadth and not to a height.

An

And they be alſo made the ſweeter in eating, if in the growing they be often remoued and ſet againe, and that in the ſetting, as they begin to growe vp in ſome height, that then the leaues to be tyed vp cloſe together, and being growne a little more in height, then to preſſe them downe, by laying tilſhardes or ſome other things ſomwhat waightie on them. And to make them pleaſant of ſmell, take and put the ſeedes within the ſweete Citrons ſeed, and ſet them ſo in the grounde or elſe ſteepe the ſeed (for certaine daies) in ſweete Roſe water: and heere note, that of this, the leaues become the tenderer, if the rootes (before the ſetting againe bee dipped in new Cow dung (as is aboue ſaide) and watred often with running water, or for two dayes before the plucking, the leaues cloſe bound together.

The Phiſicke helpes.

And now as touching the Phiſicke helpes of this herb, you ſhal firſt vnderſtand that the ſame is cold and temperately moiſt in the ſecond degree. And *Aegineta* writeth, that the Lettuce dooth manifeſtly coole and moiſten and prouoke ſleepe: and as it doth nouriſh like other potherbs, ſo it doth cauſe good blood in man.

And yet the often eating rawe of this herb, doth harme colde ſtomakes, and cauſeth dimnes of ſight: therefore they ought oftner to be eaten ſod then rawe.

But the cholerick, may as ſafely eat them raw as ſodden, and finde commoditie to the body by eating of them raw. And the eating of them while they be yong is more profitable to the ſtomacke, and encreaſeth milke in womens breſts: but when the ſame is growen to be hard in eating, then it is both drie and bitter, & through his heat then the more opening, and yet doth the eating then engender euill blood, and ſo cauſeth harme often to ſuch as eat thereof, as by hindring the ſight and corrupting the matter of Sperme. And the eating of them whiles they be yong and tēder, doth help an ague, as wel ſodden, as being eaten raw.

And ſod with vinegar and a litle ſafron put in the ſame,

doth help both the ſtopping of the Liuer and milt, Alſo eaten raw, or ſod, and being mixed with vinegar and ſugar, doth open the Liuer and milt, and cauſeth good blood, and helpeth the tertian ague.

And the Lettuce ſodden and mixed with oyle Oliue doth heale the dropſie being eaten with meat. And a plaiſter made of Lettuce, with oyle Oliue, doth mightily aſſwage hot impoſtumes. And the ſeedes eaten of milch women in meat, doth increaſe milke, and amendeth the ſight.

Alſo the ſeeds drunk in wine, do procure ſleep. And the ſeeds bruſed and drunk, do ſtay the often imaginations of the luſt in the ſleep and abateth the courage thereof. And it prouoketh ſleep, if the ſeeds be bruſd and tempered with the milke of a woman childe and the white of an egge, be laide plaiſter wiſe on all the forhead and temples. And the powder of the ſeeds mixt with the milke of a woman child do prouoke and cauſe ſleep. And the like the ſeeds worke to him which hath an ague, giuen him to drink with warm water. And the ſeeds giuen in drinke, do for the moſt part ſpeedily help the ſhedding of nature. & he which drinketh the iuce of Lettuce faſting, ſhal not be drunk that day.

And the Lettuce plucked vp by the rootes, with the left hand, before the ſunne riſing. & the ſame laid vnder the couerings of the bed, the ſick body not knowing therof, doth after cauſe the perſon to ſleepe. And if fiue leaues, three or one leafe, be laid priuily vnder the bolſter of the ſick body but in ſuch ſort that the leafe or leaues plucked off the next ſtalk, be laid beneath and vnder his feet, and the leaus plucked off from the top of it be laid vnder his head: they cauſe ſleep as before ſaid: and the often eating of Lettuce, is both dãgerous to ſuch womẽ as be apt to conceiue with child & ſuch as be with child (as ancient men write) for they do not onely cauſe barrenes, but thoſe which then be with child, ſhall after be deliuered of children far vnlike their Fathers in that they ſhalbe both raging in minde, & fooliſh in witt And therfore the much vſe of them, is to be eſchewed of ſuch women, euen as they would from a furious dogge or adder,

adder, whoſe biting they greatly feared. Alſo the very often eating of Lettuce doth greatly harme ſuch as be ſhort winded, flegmatick perſons, & ſuch as ſpit blood. And although the verie often eating of the raw or ſodden Lettuce be no les dangerous then the hearb Hemlock: yet we may often eat of them in the ſommer, rather as a medicine then for any nouriſhment, as both to coole and moiſten the ſtomack. And thee ating of them doth make men ſoluble, in that through the coldnes and moiſtnes of them, they ſo coole & temper the exceſſiue heat of the liuer. And ſome write, that the eating of Lettuce at night after other meals, doth the better procure ſleep that night following.

And as the manner of the preparation of the Lettuce (now in our time) is with vinegar, ſalt and oyle, wherby to cauſe a better appetite to the meat, then to be eaten, & both to temper the heat of the blood, and mitigate the heate of the liuer and hart: and yet the often vſe of this doth greatly hinder the increaſe of ſperme, as is aboue ſaide.

Theſe hitherto of the Phiſicke helps and properties of the Garden Lettuce.

Of the ordering, care and ſecrets, both of Endiue and Succory.

Chap. 2.

THe Endiue and Succory haue a like ordering and dreſſing, ſauing that the Endiue better abideth the colones of winter.

And of this in colde Countries it may be ſowne neereſt the end of harueſt, and it will become white in the growing, if the ſame be ſprinckled with ſand, and often watred, and that with great ſhewers of rayne, if it be after couered and waſhed, lying on the ſand, for that it delighteth in moyſture and looſe ground.

And after that foure of the leaues be ſufficiently ſprung vp, then may the ſame be remooued, and ſet againe in a well dunged place.

For there be ſome writers, which will the rootes to be dipt in freſh Cowdung before the ſetting againe in the earth.

Endiue cooleth and drieth in the ſecond degree: and the leaues and ſeeds bee vſed in medicines, but the roote hath no propertie at al in phiſicke. And the greene leaues be profitable, but the drie leaues haue no vſe in medicines, for that they then worke nothing at all.

And Endiue comforteth the heart, in that it cooleth and delaieth the burning therof, againſt the deſeaſes of the liuer, without harme, in that by nature, it hath ſuch a qualitie and propertie of it ſelf. And againſt that diſeaſe called the kings euill, take the ſirrop of the Endiue ſimply, with the which mix the water of the decoction of Harts tongue, which giue to the patient to drinke, for it is a ſinguler remedie.

And the iuice of the leaues annointed on burning puſhes doth qualifie the heat of them.

And the hearbe bruiſed and laide plaiſterwiſe on hot impoſtumes doth mightily helpe.

And the hearbe laid without on the ſide, doth delay and ceaſe the heat of the liuer.

And if the green herbe cannot be had, then aply the ſeeds laying them bruſed on ſuch hot griefes, which greatly help. And the Endiue may in like maner be eaten as the Lettuce, as either any way beeaten rawe, or ſodden with meat. And the Endiue ſodden with vinegar, doth bind the belly. And bruſed with vinegar, and that laid on the left pap, doth help the Cardiak paſſion without doubt. And it helpeth the holy fire, hot impoſtumes, and hot ſwellings, if the ſame be bruiſed and mixed with Ceruſe and vinegar, and ſo laide plaiſter-wiſe on ſuch places. And the iuice of it mixt with vinegar and roſe water, doth eaſe the paines of the head comming of heat: and the hearb drunk with wine, doth amend both the default and griefe of the liuer and bladder.

And in the ſpitting of bloud, and the exceſſe of Sperme, it helpeth by drinking of it two or three daies together. And all ſuch partes which may be holpen by cooling, may with the iuice of it, the Ceruſe and vinegar mixed together, and ſo annointed on thoſe places, doe greatly auaile.

And the diſtilled water of Endiue, drunk vnto the quanti-

ty

ty of two ounces at a certaine time, and that morning and euening, doth help the ſtraightnes & ſtopping of the breſt.

And in the ſame maner and quantity drunke, is profitable to women with childe, for that it ſtrengthneth them, and amendeth their ſenſes, and the ſame water drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of foure or fiue ounces at a time, doth help the plague, putteth away the kings euill, ceaſeth thirſt, being more largely drunck of, and qualifieth the burning of the liuer. And it helpeth againſt the paine of the ſide, and the pricking which is felt about the hart, if there be drunke three or foure ounces at a time, both morning and euening. These hitherto of the poperties of Endiue.

The Phiſicke helpes of Succory.

Succory is of a cold and dry quality, and ſomwhat more then the Endiue, But *Aegineta* writeth, that it cooleth and drieth in the firſt degree, & hath the qualitie of binding.

And now this hearb ſodden with wine, & eaten with meat profiteth the ſtomack and helpeth degiſtion, and the flowers bruiſed with the Roſes, and laide plaiſter-wiſe vpon the gout, doth forthwith eaſe the paine thereof. And this plaiſter laide on the holy fire, doth delay the great heat thereof. And a potion made of the iuice of Succory, Endiue, and the harts tougue, mixed togither with ſugar, and after boyled with a little water and vinegar together, and if any vſe the ſame oftentimes, it doth help the ſtopping of the liuer, and milt: ſo that after the ſame be taken: the purging pills of Rubarb, & (after that) the ſame cõforter, which they name the three Sanders, prepared of the Apothecaries, And the iuice of the Succory boyled, doth looſe the belly, and helpeth the ſtomack, the liuer and the kidneis. And it putteth away the peſtilent puſhes, if linnen cloathes dipped in the water of it, be laide on thoſe puſhes. And the hearb bruſed with the roote, & of the ſame made flat round cakes, which after being mixed and diſſolued in Roſe water, annoint any ſcabbed place there-with, and it will both heale, and make the ſkinne faire after. And the flowers of Succory, caſt a-

mong

mong a heape of Piſmires or Ants, will ſoone after become ſo red as bloud: And the flower of Succory gathered in the morning and after diſtilled in *Balneo Mariæ*, doth help diuers diſeaſes of the eies: as the pinne and web, the miſt of the eies hindering the ſight, the vlcers of the eies, and many other diſeaſes of the eies. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Succorie.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecret of the hearbe Blete. Chap 3.

AND firſt of the Blete, there be two kinds, the one red or blacke, and the other white: for the red in the growing becommeth ſo red both in leaues and ſtalks, as the ſcarlet in a maner, which after the longer growing, becommeth purple of colour, and in the end into a blacke colour through which the ſame of ſome is called the blacke Blete. And the white groweth like to the white beets, both in the ſtalks and leaues being vnſauourie & biteth very little, or of a ſmal ſharpnes: And both kinds do well ſpring vpin a garden, & that ſpeedily.

And it may be ſowen in any ground: but rather in a well dreſſed ground, and after the ſame be well ſprung vp, it needeth not after to be weeded or ſtoned.

And yet ſome write, that the Blete ioyeth in a fat ground, being well turned with dung, for ſo they ſay it will beſt proſper. And when they be ſprung vppe vnto their ſeeding, then they decay not after in that ground, for that they renne yearly through the falling of the ſeeds: ſo that if a man would, he ſhall ſcarcely weed them out of the ground, but that they wil continue many yeares after, without any further trauell. And Palladius thinketh it beſt to be ſowne in march, and after it once proſpereth (after the ſowing or ſeting) it neuer decaieth, as he writeth.

The Phiſick helps.

Blete which commonly men eat, is cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree. And now the ſame is ſometimes eaten with meat, ſo that it firſt be ſodden in water, & fryed with Oyle and butter, and after that ſeaſoned with ſalt or vinegar, or veriuce, & then the eating of it in ſuch ſort doth litle harm,

if the ſame be not often vſed. For by this experience hath bin noted ſundry times, that the often eating of it (although in ſuch ſort prepared) do cauſe vomiting, paine of the bowels and ſtomack, and the ſuccoring of choller by fluxe, And a plaiſter made of it with Oile, and that laid on the place of the milt, doth helpe the greeſe thereof, and by eating of this hearbe, as we haue aboue ſaid, it doth looſe the belly of propertie, when as the ſame is become coſtiue or bound, by any clammy matter. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Blete.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the hearbe Spinage. Chap. 4.

Spinage is ſowen very well in the moneth of September and October, to ſerue both in the winter time, and Lent following, in well dunged ground. And the Spinage alſo may be ſowne alone in beds: the ground beeing fat and well turned in with dung. And when the ſame is well come vppe, then may you cut away the one halfe of the turfe at one time and the other halfe at another time. For ſo the vertue and commoditie of it will indure a long time.

The Phiſicke helps.

Spinage is colde and moiſt in the end of the firſt degree, and the ſame ſodden and eaten with meat, doth ſoften the hardneſſe of the belly, and taketh away the paines and griefes both of the breſt and lungs.

Alſo it nouriſheth better then doth the Orach as writeth *Serapian*, for that it doth qualifie choller, cleanſe the body, and ſtrengthen the ſtomake: and the decoction of this hearb drunk, expelleth the euill humors, and cauſeth eaſie drawing of breath. Both the often and daily eating of it with meat, doth engender Melancholie, like as the Lettuce doth. And whoſoeuer ſhall haue greuous paines in the backe, and a coſtiue belly, let them eat of this herb ſodden, and drinke, or ſuppe of the broth, and they ſhal haue eaſe and remedy in ſhort time by Gods help.

And

And the hearb helpeth the paine of the throte, comming of bloud and red choller. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Spinage!

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Orach or Arage. Chap. 5.

THe hearbe named Orach or Arage may be ſowne from the beginning of the ſpring, vnto Harueſt: that is from February, March, Aprill, and all other moneths following vnto harueſt. But ſome of it is ſowne in the moneth of December, in earth well trimmed and dunged, and the better it commeth vp, being thin ſowne. Alſo it much delighteth to be often fed with plentie of moiſture, and if the ſeaſon be drie, then in continuall moiſture. And the ſæds of the Orach may well be kept for foure yeares. But the ſæds ſo ſoone as they be ſtrewde or ſown abroad, muſt be couered with earth. And the weedes growne among the young plants, muſt be ſtill an end plucked vp by the rootes: And it requireth not to be remooued, yet the ſame groweth the better, if it be ſet thin: and Palladius willeth it to be ſowne in Aprill, and to be watered all hot moneths thorowe vnto harueſt, for that it ioyeth in continuall moiſture.

The phiſicke helpes.

The hearbe named Orach or Arage, as writeth *Aegineta* doth moiſten in the ſecond degree, and cooleth in the firſt, of the which cauſe it ſofteneth the belly, and the ſeedes do cleanſe, through which they profit the ſtopping of the liuer, and help the Iaundies.

And the Arage bruiſed and mixed with hony, doth take away the paine of the gout, if the ſame be laide plaiſter-wiſe on the greiſe.

And *Macer* affirmeth the like, that the hearbe bruiſed and mixed with ſalt Niter, honie, and vinegar, and the ſame layd plaiſter wiſe on a hot gout, doth eaſe the raging paine thereof: and the ſeedes of the Arage bruiſed and drunke with water and honie mixed together, doth help the ſheading of the gall. Likewiſe the iuice laide on the holy fire, & on any other inflamation, doth ceaſe & qualifie it. And

this

this hearb applied vnto the womans priuy place, doth amend the euils within, and ceaſeth forth-with the paine of the matrice: and ſodden like vnto another pot hearb and ſo eaten, doth looſe the coſtiuenes of the belly, proceeding of heate, and aſwageth diuers ſwellings. And the hearb laid plaiſter wiſe on any member harmed either with thorne, ſplenter of wood, or naile, doth after drawe out the ſame without paine, and healeth the wound. And this hearb boyled with houy, and layd on rough nailes of the fingers, doth after looſe them without paine: and the ſeeds often drunke doth expel wormes, & prouoketh vomiting. And the hearb eaten do help ſuch as haue a hot lyuer. And if any eateth the hearb Mercury and Arage, ſodden together like portage: the often eating of this portage, doth looſe the belly, & take away the pinching paine of the bladder. And if any often vſe to eat of Arage, herb Mercury, & the Beetes ſodden together, he ſhall be deliuered of the ague in ſhort time after. Theſe hitherto of the hearb Arage.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of Beetes. Chap. 6.

BEets deſire a fat earth, for ſo they beſt ioy: and the ſame which is eaten with meat, may be ſowne in the months of December, Ianuary, Februarie and March, yea and all the yeare through (in a manner) it may be ſowne, if the ground before be well dreſſed, and turned in with dung. And when they be come vp thicke together, then may they be remoued and ſet thinner a ſunder, but rather they ought then to be remoued, when as four or fiue leaues be ſprung vp, and at the ſetting againe be dipped in new cowdung, for by that meanes they growe white. And they delight alſo to be often remoued and digged about, for ſo they proſper the better: and a man may ſow them in that ground where mellons, citrons or gourds be. and when they be a little come vp, then to weed them often, that they may appeare to growe alone. And thoſe Beetes which be ſowne for ſeedes, be apteſt ſowne in the moneth of Auguſt, and remoued after the moneth of Ianuarie, in the furrowes or lowe places of the garden: for ſo

they bring forth the better ſeedes. And note that the Beets bring forth no ſeeds of any value in the firſt yeare, but better in the ſecond yeare, and beſt in the third yeare, which then ought to be reſerued either to eate or otherwiſe. And theſe ſeeds endure for foure yeares in good effect.

The Phiſick helpe.

Beetes are colde & moiſt in the third degree, and engendreth good bloud, and the white hath the propertie to purifie and cleanſe all the euill humours of the body. And the head waſhed with the water in which the white Beetes are ſodden, doth cleanſe the head of the Dandrie, or that like to branne on the head: and the often eating of this hearb is not good, for that it encreaſeth euill humors aſwel in healthful as ſicke perſons: and the hearb is better commẽded ſodden then rawe for the ſtomacke. And ſodden with muſtardſeed doth helpe the diſeaſe of the ſplene: and the iuce of it doth qualifie the holy fire. And the root of the Beet ſodden, if of the ſame be dropped 3. or 4. drops hot into the eares, doth help the paine of them. And the iuce of the Beete taken with the ſeeds of Commin or Dill, doth after put away the gripings of the belly, & the iuice drawn vp by the noſe with the oyle of bitter Almonds, doth purge the head: and the iuice rubbed on the gummes, doth ceaſe the raging paine of the teeth. And this herb profiteth by medicine, for it nouriſheth little, and by much eating of it, it doth gnaw and torment the ſtomack. The Beete groweth broad, if before it be growne vp with a ſtalke there be laide ſome broad ſlate-ſtone or tyle to make it grow into a breadth, through the waight layd on it. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Beets.

Of the ordering, care and ſecrets of Coleworts. Chap. 7

THe Coleworts come vp in euery ayre, and may be ſowne or remooued all the yeare through, in which time the ground ſhall not be frozen or ſo much dryed, that it cannot be digged or dreſſed. And theſe ſeedes alſo continue and may be kept for feure yeres, and they alſo ioy in a mean fat ground,

dunged

dunged and digged: But it abhorreth the ſtiffe clay and gra-uelly ground, and refuſeth alſo the chalkie and ſandy ground: And it ioyeth in dung laid about the roote, and commeth well forward by weeding, and the ſtronger it wexeth, if it be well couered about with earth. And it delighteth both colde and rayniſ Countries, And when ſix leaues be come vp, then may it be remoued, but you muſt beſtrike the roote before with ſoft Cow-dung: and you may remoue it twice, when as it is in the greateſt leaues, which ſo cauſeth it to growe the bigger and to yeeld the more ſeedes. And if you can, let the ſame be done in a warme day if it be in the Winter time, and toward the euening if you do the ſame in the Sommer.

And thoſe alſo which be ſowne in December, Februarie, March, Aprill and May, may ſerue all the ſommer and winter, vntill they are killed by long froſts and ouermuch colde, And not only the yong Colewoꝛts ſet in March or Aprill, but alſo thoſe which are ſet in June, July and Auguſt, ſhall be in winter great, ſo that they be ſet alone where nothing els is, and that in the growing the heades or tops of the leaues be often clipped and cut off, which ſo letteth their growing into height, and maketh them growe into a broadnes and thicknes in the head. And the thinner they be ſet, the bigger they will be: and therefoꝛe they muſt be ſet three foote aſunder.

Alſo take heed that you couer the Colewoꝛts well about with earth in the ſetting, foꝛ by lying bare of the earth, the plant ſoone after dyeth.

And now all theſe before written, both in the ordering, dreſſing, and nature of it, may likewiſe be vnderſtood of the Cabadge to be ordred and vſed.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Coleworts be colde and moiſt in the ſecond degree, although of *Auſten* thought to be cold and drie. And now againſt the hardnes of making water, take of Colewortes, which put into ſcalding water, and boyling them a little, ſo that they be halfe rawe, and after powring the water almoſt cleane from them, vnto which put a little oyle, ſalte,

and commin, and after heat the ſame together a little more, and when this broth is ſomwhat cold, then ſup of the ſame and eate likewiſe of the Cole-worts ſo ſoone as it hath firſt ſodden, and this dayly do vntill you be throughly holpen.

And againſt al ſwellings and all vlcers, bruſe Coleworts which haue but yong & tender ſtalks and leaues, thoſe lay plaiſter-wiſe on cankers, and it wil both purge and heale them, which no other medicine of propertie doth, and yet before the ſame be laid on, the cāker muſt be waſhed with warme water twice a day, & the ſame yong Coleworts bruſed and laid on twice a day. And with the ſame remedie alſo may be holpen looſe and bruſed places, and both vlcers and cankers on the pappes, and if the ſame be often applied and vſed as is aboue ſaide: and if the vlcer be ſuch that it cannot abide the ſharpnes therof, then may it be mingled with barly meale and ſo laid plaiſter wiſe on. And the raw Colewort eaten with the hearb grace or Rue, and the hearb Coliander ſhred together, or a little ſalt and barly meale with Oximell mixed togither, and with all to annoint the greeued place, doth heale the gowt, and helpe the ache of the ioynts in ſhort time.

And for deafenes of the eares, bruſe the ſame hearbs with wine, and the iuice preſſed out, drop warme into the eare, & the patient ſhal finde eaſe ſhortly after. And the Colewort ſodden in pleaſant wine, and that drunk, bringeth downe the tearmes in women.

And the iuce of the ſame herb mixed with the pureſt hony, doth help certaine paines of the eies, if the ſame be dropped in the corners of them. And the iuce drunk for 40 daies with white wine, doth cure both the iaundice & the diſeaſe of the milt, as hath bene experienced. And three partes of the iuce of this hearb, and two partes of alom infuſed in vineger and mixed together, doth heale both the foule ſcituines and leapry by annointing thereupon.

And the iuce of the Colewortes mixed with the meale of Fenigreeke and Vineger, and that laid plaiſter-wiſe or annoynted on the gowte, aches of the ioyntes and filthy vlcers

vlcers, doth eaſe, cleanſe, and heale them.

And the iuice alſo drawne vp by the noſe, doth purge the head. And the iuce of the Colewort drunk with wine, doth helpe the bite of an Adder or Snake: and the iuice drunke with red wine, doth help the cough: & the iuice taken with oyle, and holden a good while in the mouth, doth heale the bliſtering thereof. and the leaues of the Colewort eaten raw, do make a perſon ſleep well without dreaming: and the green ſtalks and root of the Colwort roſted vnder the hot imbers, and tempered with olde barrowes greace (the ſame applied in plaiſter forme) doth heale the continuall paines and ſtitches in the ſides.

And eaten raw with vinegar, it doth helpe the diſeaſed with the Splene, if the ſame be often vſed.

And *Auicen* writeth, that eaten alone it doth engender troubled bloud, and melancholie, and his nouriſhment is ſmall, but the more and tenderer it is ſodden with fat fleſh, or Hens fleſh, the better and wholſomer it is to be eaten.

And the firſt broth of this herb eaten, doth ſoften the belly, and prouoketh vrine, but the eating of the ſubſtance, doth binde the belly. And if you will make drie a moyſt bellie, then after the herbe hath boyled a while, and that the firſt water be poured forth, pour in quickly the other ſeething water, and ſo boyle it new againe, vntill it become very ſoft and tender, and then eate of the ſubſtance thereof, ſeaſoned with pepper and ſalt, and ſo it bindeth the belly. But in eating the broth and ſubſtance together, it then worketh temperately, for the broth of the firſt ſeething Coleworts eaten alone, doth looſe the belly, and the ſubſtance tenderly ſodden and eaten, doth binde the belly. And by this appeareth, that the broth of the firſt ſeething of this herb, doth looſe the belly, and the broth of the latter ſeething doth binde the belly.

And *Plinie* writeth, that the leaues of the Colewortes bruiſed, and laid plaiſter-wiſe, do marueilouſly heale the woundes of Dogges: and the Colewort tenderly ſodden, and giuen to young children to eate, doth cauſe them the

ſooner to goe on foote: and if you will drinke much at a feaſt or banquet, and not to be drenke (and to ſuppe well and freſhly at the ſupper after) then eate before your going to ſupper, raw Colewort leaues with vineger, ſo much as you wil, and after you haue ſupped, then eate again four or fiue raw leaues, and they wil after make you ſo freſh & hungrie, as though you had neither drunk nor eaten any thing at your ſupper before.

By this meanes you may drinke ſo much wine as you liſt, and no tbe ouercome or drunke with Wine: yea, & make great wagers vpon the ſame. And if any droppeth certaine droppes of wine into Coleworts, boyling faſt on the fire, it forth-with ceaſeth (from boyling any more) and changeth the colour, euen as a dead thing in it ſelfe. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Coleworts.

Of the ordering, cure, and ſecrets of the Land Creſſes. Chap. 8

THe Land Creſſes, is an hearbe which the Germains do vſe in their Sallets, but it may not be eaten without cooling hearbes, like as the Lettuce, Sorrell, and Purcelain, which do ſo temper the fiery vertues, as Galen writeth. And now the Land Creſſes may be ſowen with Lettuce, for it ſo loueth and commeth vp the better, and doth alſo delight in the often watring, and in a ſhadowie place, where the Sun doth ſhine little vpon, and hateth the dung. And Palladius willeth it to be ſowen in the moneth of Ianuarie.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Land Creſſes, as writeth *Platearius*, is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and the ſeeds do eſpecially ſerue vnto the vſe of medicine, and may well be kept for fiue yeares. And the greene hearb alſo is of great effect, beeing dried ſomewhat before the miniſtring of it: and now the ſeedes haue the properties of heating and drying vp ſuperfluous humours, and worketh in a manner ſo much as doth the Muſtard ſeed: and alſo the ſeedes bruiſed and drunken in wine doth expell the dead yongling: and drunke with Vineger, it deliuereth the ſwelling of the Splene, and eaten with the

beſt

beſt Honie, they do help the cough, and open the breſt: and the ſeedes chawed, and holden in the mouth, do helpe the Palſie of the tongue.

And the Creſſes may not be eaten alone, as we haue aboue-ſaid, for that it diminiſheth mans ſtrength, and engendreth euill humours. Further, the ſeedes do ſtay the diſtilling or running of the head without harme, if they be taken whole, and the pouder of the ſeedes drawne vp by the noſe, do purge the braine, and help the paines of the head: and the ſeeds help the palſie, if they be ſodden in wine in a litle linnen bag, laid ſo hot to the palſie place as may be ſuffered: & in the lithargie or ſleeping out of meaſure, let a ſneeze be made of the pouder of the ſeedes, and blowne vp: and againſt the paine of the hippe, & paines of the chollicke proceeding of colde, boyle the ſeeds in a bag of wine, and lay that hot vnto the greeued place; and the like diſeaſe and the ſtrangurie, the green hearbe ſodden in wine and oyle together, and the ſame laid hot on the belly. And the hearb drunk with mints in wine, doth driue forth both the long and flat wormes in beaſtes.

And againſt the hardneſſe of fetching of breath, and the cough, ſeeth the ſeeds of Organy in pleaſant wine: And the iuice of the hearb annointed, doth ſtay the ſheading of the haires of the head: and the iuice of the hearb dropped in the eare, doth helpe the ache and paine in the teeth. And the often eating of this hearbe in Sallets, doth giue a ſharpnes and readineſſe of wit. Theſe hetherto of the propertie of the Land Creſſes.

Of the ordering, care and ſecrets of the Parcely. *Chap. 9*

THe parcely ſeed being new, is long before the appearance aboue the earth, for that it appeareth not in forty or fifty daies after the ſowing, as writeth Plinie: But yet the olde ſeedes doe ſooner come vp. And now where the ſeedes bee ſowen, they doe plentifullye come vp, and thicke together, and after they once proſper in that ground, they ſildome decay, but continually renue and increaſe in more plenty. And

the ſeeds alſo proſper, being ſowne ſo well in cold, as hot places, and in what earth you liſt, as writeth Palladius. And yet it loueth to be continually watred, ſo that by the watering, it waxeth the ſtrenger, and ſommeth vp the ſaſter, and regardeth no aire nor ground: and the ſeeds as writeth Columella, may be ſowne neere to ditches, or running waters, or wels: and if you wil haue it grow big, and haue large leaues, then as Florentius writeth take ſo many ſæds of the parcely as you can well hold between three of your fingers, and tie them together in a thin linnen cloth, which after ſet in dung and earth mingled together, and that put into a ſhallow hole, and it will after grow vp big and brode of leaſe. And it will alſo grow of a maruelous bignes, if after it be come vp, you dig vp the earth round about it, and ſtrew the chaffe of corne about the roote, and water the ſame often.

And if you will haue the leaues of the parcely to grow criſped, then before the ſowing of them, ſtuffe a Venice ball with the ſeedes, and beat the ſame well againſt the ground, whereby the ſeedes may ſo be a little braied, and then ſowe them in the ground; or when the Parcely is well come vp, goe ouer the bed with a waighty Roller, whereby it may ſo preſſe the leaues down, or elſe treade the ſame downe with thy feet.

And Palladius writeth, that the male of this hearbe hath the blacker leaues, and ſhorter roote, but the female hearbe hath more criſped and harder leaues, a bigger ſtalke, and is ſharpe and hot in taſte. And Palladius alſo willeth, the ſeede of this hearbe to bee ſowne in the Monethes of Februarie, March, Aprill, May, and that thicke together, and to be often watered.

The Phiſicke helpe.

Parcely of the Garden, is hot in the ſecond degree, and dry in the third, & this parcely hath the propertie of pierſing, and prouoketh vrine: and both the ſeedes and roote preuaile againſt the ſtone. Alſo take the roote of the parcely, which being drie, bruiſe wel, & after drinke the ſame with pure wine, and it wil cauſe a good braine, and good memo-

rie,

rie, and purge the blood. And the ſame drinke bringeth downe the tearmes of women: and the ſeeds eaten do take away the ſwelling of the ſtomacke, helps the dropſie, dry and pierce the euil humours, and conſume them. Alſo they cleanſe the Liuer, and put away the paines of the loynes and bladder.

And a ſallet made of Parcely, Sorrell, and vineger mixed togither, doth help the burning of the agne. And the herb giuen either raw or ſodden to eate, doth help the ſtopping of the bladder, prouoketh vrine, cleanſeth the kidnies, and draweth downe the tearmes, loſeth the winde of the body, taketh away the gripings of the belly, & helpeth the ſwelling of the ſtomacke: note, the ſeedes be principall, the root next, and the leaues be the third in working.

And the Parcely laide in plaiſter-forme with bread, on that ſore called the holy fire, doth heale the ſame. And aſwel the leaues as rootes ſodden, do help the ſtraightnes of making water, and the diſeaſe of the kidneis. And *Plinie* writeth, that the ſeeds bruſed, & annointed with the white of an egge on the reines, or ſoddden in water and ſo drunk, doth help the diſeaſe of the kidneis. And the ſeedes giuen in white wine doth help the iaundiſe.

And neither women in childe-bed nor milch nurſes, nor women with childe, may eat Parcely with their meats, for feare of hindring of conception, drying vp the milke in the breſtes, and cauſing the yongling to haue the falling ſickneſſe.

And Parcely throwen into Fiſh-ponds, doth reuiue and ſtrengthen the ſicke fiſh.

And the chawing of the freſh and greene Parcely, doth cauſe one to haue a ſweet ſmelling breth, or doth greatly amend a foule ſtinking breath, & therfore eſpecially is this hearb very commendable for women as haue ſtrong and ſtinking breaths, both to chawe and cary about them, that the ſtrong ſauour and ſmell of their breath may ſo be abated, and alſo to yeeld forth a ſweet breath. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Parcely.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets, of Sperage. Chap. 10.

THe Sperage (after the minde of the learned Greekes) ought to be ſowen in fat and well dunged ground, in the ſpring time, and ſo many ſeedes ſowen togither, as you may take vp with three of your fingers, and that each be ſet in little furrowes ſtraight out and lightly couered with earth.

And Didimus writeth, that the Sperages loy in fat and moyſte ground, and well turned in with dung, and to be ſowen in the ſpring time in furrowes three fingers long, and that there be ſowen two or three graines togither, and that halfe a foote a ſunder: and that there need no other dilligence and care in the firſt yeare, but onely to rake and digge vp the weedes cleane from them. And after forty dayes, the ſmall rootes will be ſo folded and tyed one to another, that they will ſeeme to be faſtned and ioyned togither in one, and this is named of the ancient Gardner, a Spunge.

And if the places ſhall be dry, in which you purpoſe to ſowe the ſeedes, then keepe the ſeeds in ſoft Cowdung laid in the bottome of furrowes, euen as though they lay in ditches, And in very moyſt places the ſeed ought to be ſowen, from the top of the ſide or ridge of the bed, that the raine may ſo lightly ſlide off, and not water ſo much in the falling off. And when the ſeeds be thus ſowen, then the Sperages which growe vp in the firſt yeare, ought to be broken off or cut away ſomwhat high, leaſt by breaking off to neere the earth, (the young rootes being yet tender) you plucke vp the whole Spunge withall. And it muſt continue growing in one place for two yeares, and be nouriſhed with continuall dunging and often weeding.

And in the third, and other yeares after, the Sperage may ſo open the eies of his branching: for vnles it be thus wrought, the ſtems broken off will increaſe the eyes of the Spunge, in ſuch ſorte, that the ſame will become as blinded, not ſuffering any Sperage after to ſhoote and ſpring forth. And that ſhall you keepe, out of which you haue gathered your ſeeds,

and

and set the Spunges in the winter, in ashes and dung tempered togither.

And there is another manner of setting the Sperages by Spunges, which after two yeares growth ought to be remoued and set againe into some open and well dunged place: and that the furrowes be made a foote distant a sunder, and not aboue nine fingers deepe, in which set the Spunges, that the earth lightly couered on them, they may easily spring vp.

And in the spring time when they begin to shoote vp and showe aboue the ground, then with an yron-sorked dibbill, the earth round about must be raysed, that the shootes appearing, may the easilier come vp, and the root loosed in the earth may growe the bigger, and after the growing vp, to be in such sort weeded that the rootes be not weakened or to much loosed in the earth.

And all the winter through, the yong plantes of the Sperage must be couered ouer with a thicke and warme couer of straw, whereby to defend them from the sharpe frostes that might otherwise destroy them. And when the spring is come, and that they be further appeered, then to batten them with dung.

The phisicke helpes.

Sperage doth heat and moysten, and therefore helpeth the palsie, the Kings euill & the stranguric. And the fruite and seeds be vsed in medicine, and indureth four yeares in full strength.

And the Sperage eaten with meate, doth help the stoppinge of the liuer and hardnes of the mile. And the roote sodden in wine, and drinking often thereof, doth help the shedding of the gall without doubt. And if the mouth be washed with the decoction of the Sperage, it ceaseth all the paines both of the mouth and teeth. And profitable is the Sperage to be eaten for the stomacke and ioyned with commine seedes, they put away the swellings of the stomacke and passion of the Collick.

And the eating of them do amend the sight, soften gently the belly, & purge the brest, the bowells and the raynes,

and maketh a very good ſauour in all the body, but the vrine then ſtinketh: and being ſod in wine & the ſame drunk, doth help the paines, both of the kidneis and loynes. And the roote drunke in white wine, doth eaſe the paine of the ſtone.

And certain others doe affirme, the ſame profitable for women to drinke with white wine, for the greeſe of their priuy place. And the root ſodden in vineger, doth help the ſwelling and foule ſpots of the skin, like vnto the leaprie.

Theſe hither to of the properties of the Sperrage.

Of the ordring, care, and ſecrets of Sauery. Chap. 11.

Sauery may be ſowne in rough and leane ground, in February and December, either alone or mixt among other hearbes. And this hearbe may be ſet in borders, either in ſlippes or in roots, and is much vſed alſo in meates and broths and therfore it may ill be ſpared out of the garden.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Sauery in qualitie is hot and drye in the ſecond degree, and this hearbe eaten with creame, doth amend a colde ſtomack by purging it: and if any drinketh of this herb, it helpeth and defendeth him from falling into a ſound, & taken in wine, it helpeth the ſtopping and other defaultes of the liuer, the milt, and the lungs, and cleanſeth all womens priuie places: but women with childe muſt refrain both drinking and ſmelling vnto this hearb. And being ſod in wine and laid on the palſie members, doth remoue the griefe and pain of them: and the herb bruſed and laid plaſter-wiſe on the belly (as the ſecond *Plinie* writeth) doth expell or ſend forth the dead yongling, and prouoketh vrine: and being drunk in wine, it doth mightily quicken ſuch as be moleſted with the ſleeping downe right, ſo that their heads be often bathed with vineger. And the ſtomacke mooued often to vomitte, either the powder taken in an egge, or the hearbe drunke in wine doth ſtay the ſame. And the hearbe drunk, doth preuaile againſt the ſtinges of all venomous beaſtes.

And *Dioſcorides* telleth, that the vſe of the Sauery in meates

meates, doth long preſerue the bodie in health. And *Albumacer* alſo writeth, that the propertie of this hearb is, to expel and put away windines, and both the ſwellings and gripings of the body, & helpeth digeſtion. Likewiſe it expelleth the ſuperfluities of the ſtomacke, prouoketh vrine, and the monthly tearmes, and ſharpnes, beſides the weakenes of the ſight proceeded of euill moiſture. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Sauery.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of running Time. Chap. 12

THe running Time of the Garden, delighteth to be ſet either in the ſlippes, or ſowen in the ſeeds, vnder the ſhadowe of ſome hedge, or els to be ſet in beddes, on the edge of ſome pond or ditch, or pit of water, for ſo it proſpereth and ſpringeth the faſter, and runneth out at length.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The running Time is both hot and drie in the ſecond degree, & doth ſo much heate, that it both prouoketh the monethly termes, and the vrine, and is alſo very ſharp to taſte. Which running Time doth ſtay the diſtillings of the head proceeding of a cold ſtomacke by drinking therof in wine and alſo doth draw down the termes of women, & prouoketh vrine, & helpeth alſo the biting of venemous beaſts: and it ceaſeth the head-ache, by boyling the hearb in Roſewater, & ſo applying it to the head, and eſpecially the frenzie perſons, and ſuch which be mooned to ſleepe much, by the mixing of vineger to it, and applying the ſame alſo vnto the head: and the drinking of two drams waight of the iuce in vineger, doe ſtay the bloody vomittings. And the drinking of the ſeeds in wine, doth mightilie prouoke the vrine and expell the ſtone: and who that daily drinketh of the hearbe in wine, doth breake the ſtone of the bladder and kidneis. And the hearb healeth the ſting of a Bee, if the ſame be laid vpon it: and being ſodden in wine, with the iuce of ſweet Licoras, doth help both the cough, and purgeth the breaſt: and ſodden in wine with Annis ſeedes, doth heate the ſtomacke, putteth away the wind of the guts, and hel-

peth the strangurie. And this hearbe sodden with vineger and honie, and drinking thereof vnto the quantity of a cup full at a time, dooth helpe the spitting of bloud. And the iuce also mixed with vineger, and drinking thereof vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, doth the like aboue-said: and the same sodden with wine and honie, if the same be applied to hot, in plaster-forme, doth helpe the disease called the Squince: and sodden in wine and drunke, doth open the stoppings of the Liuer and milt, and prouoketh vrine: And the distilling water of the running Time, drunk vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, both morning and euening, doth strengthen and amend the head, the braine, and the stomack, and prouoketh the appetite vnto meat, putteth away the noise & rumbling of the belly, loosneth the hardnes of the stomacke, and prouoketh vrine: and the water in the same maner drunk, doth comfort the sight consumeth the humors & distillations of the head, and healeth also the one daie ague (or otherwise the Quotidian) mixed with wormwood water, and so drunk.

And the drinking of the same water, vnto the quantitie of three ounces at a time, doth amend and helpe a colde liuer, milt, and the guts vlcerated. And the water doth open the stopping, both of the Nosethrills and ears, restoreth the hearing, helpeth the giddines of the head, stayeth from vomiting, putteth away the gripings of the belly, and bowels: also it breaketh the stone, and prouoketh vrine by the drinking thereof: and to conclude, it healeth brused members, by applying often linnen clothes dipped in water. These hitherto of the properties of running Time.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of the Lumbardy Lonage. Chap. 13.

THis Hearbe named the Lumbardie Lonage, loueth to be sowen in a well digged and dressed ground, but especially neere vnto a thicke hedge or wall, for that it so greatly delighteth, and best prospereth by growing in the shadowe, and neere vnto some running water: and in such sorte sowen, it will come vp in any ground.

The phisicke helpes.

Louage is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seeds may well be kept for three yeares, And now if any drinke the seeds fasting in the morning, they after purge that person, both vpward and down-ward: and the seeds giuen in glister, do ease that person pained with the gout in his feet. And the seeds steeped for a night in wine, and after drunk, doe send downe womens tearmes: and yet note, that these seeds be ouer strong in working (taken inwardly) in that they breake vlcers, & open impostumes, being laid plaister wise vppon, and doth in a forcible maner expell the dead yongling. And therefore the force of these seeds in the ministring ought to be tempered and mixed with the seeds of fenell & Annis, in a like waight of ech to the Louage, for in such sort taken inward, it neuer harmeth any person, & in aplying of the seeds, without the body there needeth no other thing to be added to them: and the hearb much profiteth in a bath, if a body be rubbed with them, for so it doth open the powers, & draweth forth euil humors in bathings & the seeds sodde either in wine or water, & druk, do open the stopping of the liuer and milt: and the seeds mixed with comin seeds, & brused togither, & drunk in wine, doth profit much, for that they amēd the stomack, and put away the windines of the belly. And the seeds brused and sodden in wine, with Galingale and Sinamon, doth amēd and helpe the paines and griefes both of the stomack, milt, & bowels. And the Tyzan made of the seeds, sinamon, Rapohtike, & Galingale with sugar, and the same taken in wine, do cease the paine of the belly, put away the swelling both of the stomacke and bowells, helpeth the biting of snakes, & addes and prouoketh vrine, & sending down of the termes. And a bath made of this hearb and Sage, Rosemary, Mugwoort, Calamint, Camomil, Mellilote, Sticados, & Fenegreeke, and these sodden in wine togither, do help the crampe, proceeding of the fulnes of the body, the palsie, the paine of the gout, & the kings euill: & the distilled water drunk, to the quantity of 2. or 3. ounces at a time, helpeth the gripings

of

of the sides and stomacke, the griefe of the stone, kidneis & bladder: amendeth the hoarsenes of speech, & aswageth the dangerous swelling of the throte, called the Squince. And to conclude, this water maketh the face both faire & cleare if it be daily washed (both morning & euening) ther-with. These hitherto of the properties of Lumbardy Louage.

Of the ordering, and care of the greater or Garden Mallowes, Chap. 14

THe greater, or Garden Mallowes, which beareth flowers from Sommer vnto Winter, as well of the white as red, is like in beautie vnto the rose, although not so strong of sauour, and swéete of smell, which the women in our time vse to decke their houses and windowes with. And now these Mallowes, as Collumella writeth, loueth to be in a fat ground, and hauing moyst dung lying about it, and that it be remoued, when as foure leaues be well sprung vp. And this hearb the Romans in ancient time vsed to eate in their Sallets and Pottage, in stead of other hearbes. And the floure also of this hearbe (as writeth Columella) doth both open at the full appearance of the Sunne, and shutteth again at the setting of the Sunne. And to conclude, Palladius willeth the seedes of this hearbe to be sowne in the month of *Februarie*.

The Phisicke helpes.

Garden Mallowes are moist, like to the other kindes of Mallowes, and may very wel be applied, as well to the outward as inward griefes. And the hearb, roote, or seedes either sodden in milke or wine, and drunk, doe cease a hot & dry cough, heale the lungs blistered, and is a singular remedie against the Tisicke. And the Garden mallowes sodden either in wine or water, and mixed with honie and Allome, and the same holden and garguled for a little season in the mouth, doth both heale the blisterings of the mouth and throte, and other stinking sores. And the mallowes sodden and eaten, doth loose the belly: and the same also preuaileth in Agues, vnto such as be then bound in body. And of the same decoction, may be made a glister to loose the bellie.

And

And the diſtilled water of the Roſes or flowers of the great mallows, doth (of experiēce) heale the breakings out of the mouth, and preuaileth againſt al outward & inward heats, and healeth alſo the holy fire & bliſters of the throte, and all other ſwellings, if it be gargalled in the mouth and throte, and otherwiſe applyed without by fine linnen clothes dipped in the ſame. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the greater Garden mallowes.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of Fennell. Chap. 15.

FEnnell (after the minde of later writers) ought to be ſowen in the beginning of the Spring, which with vs is counted in the end of Februarie, and that in ſunny places and ſomwhat ſtony. But after the minde of ancient writers, it may be ſowen in the month of December, Januarie, and Februarie: and at any time the ſame may be remooued. And now in our time, the great leaues of Fennell be ſtrewed vnder cakes and bread ſet in the ouen, to giue a ſweeter taſt and ſauour vnto the cruſt. Alſo the green leaues be ſtuft in Seafiſh, to take away their ſea ſauour and ſmell in eating, which the daintie can ſcarcely abide.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Fennel is hot and drie in the ſecond degree: but *Ægineta* writeth, that Fennell doth heat in the third degree, and dryeth in the firſt, Alſo the ſeeds, hearb, rinde and roote, be applyed in medicines: The ſeeds ought to be gathered in the beginning of September, & may be kept three yeares. Alſo ſeeth the Fennel, and when you cannot get the herb vſe the ſeeds, which boyle in faire running or conduit water, after drink a good glaſſe full of the ſame euery day, and it taketh away the vnnatural heat, & cauſeth a cleere ſight. And the whole root of the Fennel may be plucked vp in the beginning of May & kept for three yeares. Further, if any would put away the red ſpots of the face, which do preſent a kinde of leaprie, let him take the Fenel finely bruſed, & mix the ſame with old barrowes greace, and beate them a little together, which ſo done, annoint lighdy the face with that

oyntment, which after doth make the face to be ſeemely againe, and taketh the ſpots quite away. And the female eaten of women (doth of propertie) increaſe the milk in their breſts. And the ſeeds eaten, do prouoke vrine, ſend downe the tearmes, and helpeth the ſtopping and hardnes of the liuer and milt, and the ſhedding of vrine. And the iuce of the Fennel mixed with warme milke & the ſame giuen to drink vnto yong babes or ſucking children, helpeth the hardnes of fetching the breath. And both the rinde and the roote of the Fennel ſodden in wine and drunk at the going to bed, & in the morning faſting, doth help ſuch as be pained with the diſeaſe of the ſtone, if the ſame ſickneſs proceedeth of a hot cauſe: and the Fennel eaten, doth comfort the ſtomack, and helpeth digeſtion: and the like doth the pouder of the ſeed either eaten or drunk. And the root ſodden vntill the ſame be ſoft, & laid hot on womens paps beginning to impoſtumate, dooth heale them. And the iuce preſſed into a porrenger, and the ſame ſet for fifteene daies in the ſunne, which dropped into the eies, doth in ſhort time after cleare and amend the dimnes of the ſight. And a litle of the Aloes Hepatick put to this iuce, and the ſame ſet in the ſunne for fifteene daies, which after drop into the eyes, & it wil greatly amend the ſight. And aboue al other waies with the iuce for the ſight, this eſpecially is beſt cõmended, that the iuice be boiled betweene two diſhes on a chafing diſh with coles, and that the water which ſtandeth like a dew on the vpper diſh, be poured ſtill as it riſeth into a glaſſe: and this do ſo long vntill no more drops appeare in the vpper diſh, & after drop of that water into your eies, & it wil greatly amend & cleare the ſight. And the iuce of the Fennell tempered with honie and dropped warme into the eares, doth kill the wormes increaſed and felt in them. And the root with the licour ſodden again with wine, and that drunk doth help the paine of the crampe. and healeth the dropſie. And the iuce of the leaues mixed with vineger, and annointed on burning ſwellings doth aſſwage them. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Fennell.

Of

Of the ordering, and eare, of the Annis.
Chap. 16.

The Annis doth deſire a well digged and fat ground, and commeth verie well vp in other places, by dunging and moiſture, and it is ſowen in Februarie and March, either alone or with other hearbes.

The phiſicke helpes.

The Annis is hot and drie in the third degree, and hath the vertue of conſuming and diſſoluing: and the ſeeds alſo may be kept for four yeares in much efficacie & ſtrength, if they be hanged vp. And waſhing your face in the diſtilled water of this herb, it doth much cleere the ſame, ſo that this water be meaſurably vſed and with diſcretion, for too often vſing of it doth make the face yellowe. And againſt the black & blew of a ſtripe (eſpecially if the ſame be about the eies) let the ſeedes with the Cummine be bruſed together, wrought with wax, & apply hot to the grieued place. And to the increaſing of milk in the breſts and of ſpearme, this pouder of Annis either eaten or drunke, doth greately helpe: & this onely is cauſed by opening the paſſages of the milk & ſpearme. And in what manner ſoeuer the ſeedes be vſed, they aſſwage the ſwellings which both harden the bowells and greeue the ſtomack. And the eating of the ſeeds any ſeaſon togither, doth both heat the liuer and helpeth digeſtion. And the Annis ſeeds ſodden in wine & mixed with Sinamon and Maſticke and that drunk, do mightilie helpe the greeuous belchings proceeded of a colde ſtomack. And the Annis ſeedes ſod in water and drunke with hartes-tung, doth help the ſtopping both of the liuer and milt, and helpeth all kinde of the dropſie, and ſtayeth the diſeaſe (called the whites) in women.

And the powder of Annis ſeeds ſowed in a linnen bag, and boyled in wine, and after applied hot vnto the womans priuie place doth both cleanſe her body, & bringeth downe the tearmes. And the ſeeds taken with Caſtorie, do help the ſwelling of the ſtomack & bowells. And the ſeedes bruſed into powder and tempered with honie, Iſope and vineger,

and boyled togither, and then the gargling of the ſame in the throte, doth help the diſeaſe called the ſquince: and the ſame prepared with wine, & drūk, do help the impoſtumes of the ſtomacke and the cough. And the Annis ſeeds either eaten or drunk with vineger and honie, do help the ſtrangling or ſtopping of the matrice. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Annis ſeedes.

Of the ordring, care, and ſecrets of Commine. Chap. 17.

THe Commine delighteth to be ſowen in a fat and well dreſſed ground, and vnder a warme aire, either in March or in the middle of the ſpring the ſeedes ought to be ſowen. And they do beſt proſper being ſowen among other hearbs.

Some ancient Authors write, that ſeedes proſper the better and grow the plentifullier, if they be ſowen with curſed wordes, but I commend not this manner in ſowing.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Commine is hot and dry in the third degree, as *Ægineta* writeth, and the ſeeds alſo may be kept for fiue yeares, and vſed in meates, drinks, and ſauces, for that they comfort & help digeſtion. And the wine of the decoction of Commin ſeeds, drie Figs, and of Fennel ſeeds vſed togither, do mittigate the paine and gripings of the greate guts, comming of windines. And the ſame wine alſo like ordred, doth preuail againſt the cough comming of cold. And againſt the ſwelling of the cheekes, take Commine ſeeds and Figs well bruſed togither, & after ſeeth them in wine, which lay plaiſter wiſe on the greeued place, and it doth help the ſame. And againſt the colde rewme of the head, take powder of Commine ſeeds and Bay berries, which heate togither in an earthen potte, and putting the ſame after into a little linnen bagge, apply warme on the head, and this without doubt helpeth that griefe. And againſt the black and blewe of a ſtripe, or any other maner, done whiles the ſame is yet freſh and new, you muſt take the fine powder of the Commine ſeedes, and wax, and worke the ſame togither at the fier,

and

and often apply that plaiſter warme vnto the greeued place, which ſo vſed, is thought a ſure and perfect remedie. And the Cummine ſeeds, ſodden in wine with Fenegreeke, do take away ſwellings, and the griping paine of the guts. And the ſeeds bruſed & tempered with the white of an egg and that laid on the eye, doth take away the rednes of the ſame. And the Cummin ſeedes boyled in wine, and laid hot on the Nauell, doth eaſe the ſtrangurie, and all other paſſions of the bladder. And the Cummin ſeeds ſodden in water (if the face be waſhed with the ſame) do cauſe the face to be clearer and fairer, ſo that the ſame be now & then vſed: for the often & much vſing of it, doth make the face pale. And the Cummine ſeedes bruiſed and boyled with vineger, and applyed warme to the noſethrils, doth ſtay the much bleeding at the noſe, and womens ſucceſſe of the Reddes. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Cummine ſeede.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Coliander.

Chap. 18.

COliander loyeth to be ſowen in a fat ground, although it will well inough proſper in a leane ground: and the ſeedes, the elder they ſhall be (ſo that they be not vtterly decayed with age) the ſooner and better they will proſper and come vp, and they muſt be often watered. And Palladius writeth, that the ſeedes may be ſowen from the middle of March to October.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The hearbe Coliander is ſufficient common, and hath the vertue of cooling, as writeth *Dioſcorides*, although other write (as *Vigonius*) that the Coliander is colde and dry, and others to be hot and dry. For by the effect it is knowen to be hot, in that it doth reſerue windines and wens: and on the other ſide againe, the ſeeds ſhew it to be cold and dry, in that (after meat) eaten, they ſtay the vapours ryſing vp that they aſcend not vnto the head. And the ſeeds in receits may well be vſed & kept for two yeares. And the ſeeds haue the vertue of helping digeſtion & the paines of the ſtomacke with windines, if they be miniſtred in meat. And the wine

of the decoction of Coliander drunke. doth the like: alſo the pouder of the ſeeds caſt on meats, do cauſe them digeſt the better.

And *Iſiodorus* writeth, that the pouder of the ſeedes miniſtred in ſweet wine, do cauſe men to be the proner to the veneriall act, yet the ſame too much vſed, is euill: for that it bringeth men vnto a frēzines, and raging with themſelues: and the much eating of the hearb and ſeeds togither, is venemous to dogs, and killeth them and further: the confects made of the Coliander ſeeds with ſugar, do not only ſtrengthen the ſtomack by vſing them, but repreſſe the vapours aſcending to the head, and therfore, the rather to be vſed in meats of thoſe which be moleſted with the falling ſickneſs: For the cauſe of this ſickenes, doth proceed of the vapours which riſe from the ſtomacke vnto the head. And the ſeeds may not be eaten raw, but rather ſteeped in vineger, or couered ouer with ſuger: for that being either ſteeped in vineger, or couered with ſuger, before the eating, doth ſtay the humors riſing from the ſtomack vnto the head. And he Coliander ſeeds prepared with vineger, & bruſed, and after taken with the iuce of Plantine, ſtaieth the great bleeding of the noſe. And *Xenocratus* writeth a marueilous matter (if the ſame be true,) that if a woman eat but one grain of the ſeeds, that then her courſes, ſhall runne for one day: if two graines, then two daies togither, if three graines, then three daies togither: and thus, looke how many graines, & ſo many daies following they ſhall continue. But this hearbe is forbidden to be taken inward, for that it harmeth the head and bloud. And the iuce of Coliander mixed with vineger, doth both coole and help the holy fire: and the ſeedes a little bruſed and giuen in raiſons to eat, doth ſlea the wormes in children. And the iuce of the hearbe, with the iuce of Lettuce, of Plantine, the white of an Egg, and oyle of Roſes, all theſe laboured well togither, and after laid on hot impoſtumes, and burning ſwellings, or bliſters, doe both aſſwage and heale them. Theſe hitherto of the Coliander.

Of

Of the ordring, and care of Muſtard ſeeds. Chap. 19

Muſtard ſeedes ioy to be ſowen in a tilled and well laboured ground, and rather on the ridge of furrowes although they will ſpring in any ground, and be nourished in fine earth like to pouder duſt. And the ſeeds muſt be raked ouer, whereby they may be couered in the ground, for that they ioy in the natural moyſture continuing in the earth: and the ſeedes which you prepare to be eaten (in tranſpoſing the plants) they will be ſtronger. Alſo the ſeeds ſowen before and after winter, do deſire a fat ground, and to be thin ſowen, for ſo they come vp better then being thicke ſowen: and after the plants be well ſprung vp, they may be remoued and ſet againe.

The phiſicke helpes.

Muſtard ſeeds be hot and dry in the fourth degree, & the ſeeds onely to be kept for fiue yeres: and the ſeeds haue the vertue of diſſoluing, attracting, & extenuating. And againſt the palſie of the tongue the ſeeds only chewed and holden vnder the tongue, do help the ſame. And againſt the palſie in other members, let the ſeeds be put into a litle bag, and ſodde in wine, laid on the grieued place, but eſpecialy in the beginning of the ſiknes. And the pouder of the ſeeds drawn vp by the noſe, doth prouok ſneezing, & purgeth the brain of ſuperfluities. And alſo *Plinie* writeth, that the ſeedes doe extenuate and deminiſh the clammy and groſe humours & doe heale the ſtings of Sepents and Scorpions, being miniſtred with vineger. And the ſeeds do marueylouſly purge, breake the ſtone, cauſe an appetite, & comfort the ſtomack. And the ſeeds bruſed with Enula Campana, and that laid on ripe impoſtumes, do both breake and draw them without paine. And the ſeeds garguled with water and honny, doth help the bliſtering of the mouth and the Squince. And the ſeeds eaten with figs and Cummine mixed togither, doth helpe the dropſie. And a like quantity of Muſtard ſeedes, Pelitory and Ginger, mixed togither with roſed honnie, and alſo waſhing the mouth there-with, and holding the ſame a good while in the mouth, dooth purge the braine

of

of such euil humours, which especially causeth greeuous aking and paine of the head: and the selfe same doth help the falling of the roofe of the mouth, & the vlcers in the throte: and to haue a clere voice to sing, take the meale of mustard seeds, and worke the same with honie into little balls, of the which swallow one down euery morning, and it shal cause you to haue a cleare voice in short time. And the chawing of the Mustard seeds in the mouth, doth drawe downe and purge the flegme of the head. These hitherto of the mustard seeds.

Of the ordering, and care, both of the Cheruill and Caper. Chap. 20.

Cheruill desireth to be sowen in a fertile, moystie, and well dunged ground, And to be sowen in the moneth of August, for so it serueth very well all the winter thereafter, And the Capers ioy in a barren and leane ground, and flourish, and beare their floure in the Sommer, and annoy al other herbes growing neere them. And they also wither and dye away, at the setting and going out of sight of the seauen starres.

Of the ordering and care of the hearb Dill. Chap. 21.

The hearb Dill, desireth the common earth of the garden, and to be sowen in the moneth of February or March, and in the months also of September, or October, And in a gentle and wholsome place: it may be sowen in the month of December, either by it selfe, or among other hearbes, and wel beareth or suffereth all conditions of weather: but it most ioyeth in the warme weather, and to be thin sowen and watered, if they be not otherwise dewed and moistned with showers. And some couer not the seeds with earth after the sowing, supposing that the birds will not eate vp the seedes, lying so bare.

The Phisicke helpes.

Dill is hot and drie in the second degree, and the seedes may be kept for three yeres, although they be the better, if yearly they be renued, & the seeds also be chiefly occupied,

ed in the medicine. And now the decoction of the hearb & ſeeds do preuaile & help the ſtraightnes of piſſing, and increaſeth milk in the breſts. And againſt the pain of the matrice, take a handfull of Dill, boyling the ſame in wine, and after applying it in plaiſter forme vnto the grieued place, it doth help the ſame. But *Auicen* writeth, that the much and often eating of Dill, doth weaken & make dim the ſight: & yet if any vſeth the hearb, it procureth ſleep, & the rather if the head be annointed with the oyle of Dill. And the ancient Phiſitians write, but eſpecially *Galen*, that garlands made of the greene hearb & worne on the head, procure ſleepe: and the iuce or oile of Dill dropped warme into the eares, doth help the pain of them. And the Dill ſodden with Poppy ſeedes, and drunk, doth ſtay vomiting, and the gripings & wind of the belly. And the aſhes of Dill doth help all the diſeaſes of the fundament, and paine of the priuities: and it may profitably be annointed on moiſt vlcers, and eſpecially, thoſe (as *Galen* writeth) which are often in the priuities. And the decoction of the Dill in wine, being drunke, doth help ſuch as are pained with the ſtrangury. And the Dil ſodden with ſuger & mixed with oyle and wine, and after drunk, doth help the matrice, ſend downe the after burden, and draw down the termes, taking to the quantity of two drammes at a time. And take the ſeeds of Dill & Nettle, a like quãtity, thoſe beate into fine pouder, which mix with water and hony, and after lay that plaſter-wiſe on the piles of the fundament, & it will heale them in ſhort time. Theſe hithertoof the hearb Dill.

Of the ordring, care, and ſecrets of Rue. Chap. 22.

RVe or hearbgrace, deſireth to be ſowen in a ſunny place and drye, in the month of March, and that the earth be mixt with aſhes. And this hearb loyeth to be ſowen on high beds, wherby the proper moyſture may ſhed therfro. as Palladius writeth. And the bare ſeeds alſo without huſkes, may be ſtrewed on beds, and couered ouer with fine drye earth with a rake. And the yong plantes ſpring out of the ſeedes,

being in the huskes be the stronger, although they be longer in the appearing aboue the earth. And the yong plantes hate both moisture and dung, and rather ioyeth in the dung of ashes, and it cannot well abide the cold of winter, and therfore desireth to be couered on the beds with ashes, whereby the same may the better defend them from the sharpenes of the colde through the heate therof. And if they be sprinckled with water, then do they faster spring vp, as writeth Theophrastus: yet may not the plantes be moued with any yron, for feare of hindring their growth. And when the yong plantes be somwhat come vp, then weede them diligently, whereby the weeds hinder not their growth. You must not onely sowe the seeds, but set the slippes, being slipped off from the greater stalkes neare to the rootes in the spring time, and in the month of August, and that the slippes be writhed at the ends for so they speedily take roote in the earth. And the whole plant remoued and set againe, doth seldome prosper, but dyeth soone after the new setting, which the slippes broken off from the stalkes contrary do. And they prosper many yeares without withering any thing, so that a woman (hauing then her tearmes) come not nigh nor handle the hearbe, for that by handling, the hearb doth by little and little wither and dye away, as writeth Collumella.

And some write, that Rue set within the Beane, boared through, and couered with earth, doth in the growing take away the strong smell of the hearbe.

And both Plinie and Palladius write, that the Rue more ioyeth and plentifullyer groweth, by being set vnder the shadowe of the fig tree. And of this, Theophrastus iudgeth that to be the best hearb grace, which being planted through the fig tree barke, is so couered with earth.

And the weeding also of this hearb with bare hands whilest the deawe hangeth on the leaues, doth cause dangerous blisters and sores.

And therefore if any by ignorance doth weede about the plantes without gloues on their handes, and that the handes be after infected both with an Itch and swelling or blisters, then

then let the perſon annoint his hands with ſallet oyle, or for lacke of oyle, with the iuce of Hemlocke, and it will heale them in ſhort time.

And the iuce of the hearbgrace ſprinckled on Hens, Cocks, chickens or any other poultrie ſitting on the rooſte, or ſprinkled in the poultry houſe, doth driue away Meaſelles by the ſtrong ſmell of the hearb, for it is a ſpeciall defence againſt ſuch kinde of vermine. And to driue away either gnats or flyes out of your chamber, take a greene branch of the hearb grace (as Democritus writeth) and with the ſame ſprinckle water round about your chamber. And thus much for the ordring the hearbgrace.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Hearbgrace is hot and dry in the third degree, & both the leaues and ſeedes may well be vſed in medicine. And the ſeedes alſo ought to be gathered in harueſt, which may wel be kept for fiue yeares, and the leaues dryed, for al poyſons, & a pecuhar Triacle for the poore, which not only the King *Methridates* witneſſeth, but very experience, doth daily teach the ſame: yea, both curious painters, and fine graners do often eat of this hearb with their meates, for the cleering and amending of the ſight. And Rue eaten doth put away winde and dulleth the deſire to the veneriall act. And the leaues eaten with dry figs and walnuts togither, is the ſureſt remedie that may be againſt any deadly poyſon, if the ſame be taken in time.

And to make another preſeruatiue of the ſame, ſomwhat more coſtly, is on this wiſe: Take an ounce of the leaues of Rue, halfe an oũce of figs, halfe an ounce of Iuniper berries, two ounces of walnuts, and four ounces of vineger: all theſe mix and labour togither, of the which, ſwallowe downe a little faſting in the morning when you riſe, and you ſhal be defended all that day from being poyſoned. And it is alſo a ſinguler & precious Triacle againſt a peſtilẽt aire: and the hearbgrace ſodden in vineger and drunk putteth away belching. And the herb ſodden in wine with figs, vntil the halfe be conſumed, and after drunke, dooth mightily helpe

the dropſie, the paines alſo of the breſts, ſides, and loynes: yea, the ſame drunk, doth help the cough, the diſeaſes of the liuer, the lungs and the kidneis, ſo that there hang no ague on the patient: and the hearb ſodden with oyle, and after caſt vp in gliſter form, doth put away the paines of the womans places, and the ſwellings of the great gutte. And the hearb bruſed with oyle, & laid-plaiſter-wiſe on all the priuie place vnto the fundament, dooth help the ſtrangling of the priuitie. And the hearb ſodden with Iſop and Annis in wine, doth put away gripings, eyther drunk or fomented on the greeued place. And a plaiſter made of the hearb with oil and laid on the nauell, dooth kill the wormes of the bellye. And the eating of the hearb grace doth amend & put away the ſmel of onyons & garlick: and the hearb grace helpeth thoſe diſeaſed with the ague, if the ſame be ſodden in oil oliue, & before the fit come, the body be annointed with the ſame, or els the ſame put (before the fit) in gliſter wiſe. And the hearb ſodden in oile & dropped hot into the eares, doth expell the wormes. And the hearb ſodden with mirre, and drunk, doth put away the water betweene the skin and the fleſh. And the iuce of Rue mixed with the oile of roſes and vineger, and annointing the head therwith, doth put away the beating paine therof. And the hearb ſodden in Fumitory water, and drunk, doth help children diſeaſed with ſmall pockes. If children hauing the meaſels, be not already blinded with them, then hang both the roote of Rue and Scabious about the childrens neckes, and they ſhalbe defended therby by Gods permiſſion. And an ointment made of the hearb with oile of Roſes, Ceruſe & vineger, doth heale any ſcabbe, the holy fire, running ſores, and hot bliſters. And the hearb with Garlike, ſalte and walnuts mixed together, and layed plaiſter-wiſe on the bite of a mad Dogge or Adder, it doth heale the ſame. And againſt the weaknes of ſight, proceeded of a chollerick fumoſitie, drink the noſe of the wine wherin this hearb hath bene laid to ſoake in the veſſel, for a while before: Alſo the hearb mixed with Roſe-water & laid on bleared eies, do marueilouſly cleſe & heale them.

And

And againſt the tooth-ach, take the hearbe ſodden in wine, and lay that plaſter-wiſe on the grieued place. Or this wiſe, take the ſtalke of the ſame hearbe, and burne the ſame ſomwhat in the fire, and with that burne the hollowneſſe within the tooth. And againſt the coldnes of the ſtomacke, and palſie of the other members, drink the decoctiō of this herb with Caſtorie: and againſt the ſtopping of the liuer & milt, and ſtraightnes of making water, drink the hearb with the root of Fenel ſodden in wine togither, or the pouder of the root of the Fenell, with the iuce of the hearbe. And againſt the ſtraightnes of making of water, and bloudie flixe, ſeeth the hearb in wine and oile, and lay it plaiſter-wiſe on the root of the priuity. And young maried wiues may ſeldome eat of this herb, for feare of hindring cōception at any time. And the perſon annointed with the iuce of this hearbe, or bearing the hearb about him, ſhall not be bitten or ſtinged of any venemous worme or beaſte. And laſt, the Rue of propertie doth driue away all venemous beaſts & wormes out of that ground which is ſet about with that herb: and this beeing planted in Gardens neere to the beddes of Sage, the Toad will not come neere the ſame, vnder which (as ſome write) they delight to be. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Hearbe Grace.

Of the ordering, and care, of the hearb Iſope.

Chap. 23.

Iſope is a fruitefull Plant, and neceſſarie in the Garden, which ought to be ſowne or ſet in ſlippes or whole Plants, neither in fat nor dunged ground, but in an open and ſunnie place: and after the hearbe is well ſprung vp, then may it indure the froſtes and Snow in Winter. And Palladius willeth the Iſope to be ſet in whole Plants in the moneth of Februarie. And in the Summer, when the hearbe beareth his floure, then cut off the ſame, and drie it in the ſhadow.

The Phiſicke helps.

The Iſope of qualitie is hot and drie in the ſecond degree: yet Galen affirmeth, that Iſope is hot & drie in the third degree,

gree, but the ſame is of the thin parts. And when the ſame is to be vſed in medicine, then ought the leaues to be ſtripped from the ſtalkes, and the ſtalkes caſt away as vnprofitable, but the leaues may well be kept for a yeare.

And now the Iſope ſodden in ſpring water, with figs, hony, and Rue, and after drunk, doth helpe thoſe diſeaſed in the Lungs, fetching their breath ſhort, an olde cough proceeding through the diſtillings from the head, vnto the lower parts, and in the fetching of breath (none otherwiſe) then by reaching the neck vpright, and ſlayeth all maner of wormes in the belly. And the iuce of the hearbe drunke with Oximell, doth looſe a coſtiue belly: and the ſame iuce taken with the ſeeds of Creſſes, doth gently looſe the belly, and cauſeth a cleare face, and good colour of the skin, if any drinketh thereof.

And the hearb boyled with pure duckes greaſe, and figs, and that laid in plaiſter forme on the milt, doth take away the ſwelling therof.

And againſt the hardnes or ſwelling of the milt, and the water betweene the skinne, boyle the hearb with figs and Salt Niter, and lay that plaiſter-wiſe on the grieued places. And the hearb ſodden in wine, and drunk, doth cleanſe the breaſt: and ſodden in water, doth ſwage the ſwelling of the gummes, by waſhing the mouth therewith. And the hearb ſodden in wine with fenell ſeeds, being drunk, doth take away both paine of the ſtomacke, and bowelles: and a foment alſo made with the hearb ſodden & applied vnto the ſtomacke, doth the like effect: and the ſame foment applied beneath, dooth purge and cleanſe womens places of the ſuperfluous humours. And for the diſeaſe of the Squince, the hearb ſodden with figs, & that garguled in the throte, doth greatly help: and the hearb ſodden in vineger, with the which, waſh the gummes of the teeth, and it will ceaſe the ach and paine of them. And of the Iſope made a wine, named Iſope wine, doth help by drinking thereof, the diſeaſes of the breaſt, th[illegible]des, & the lungs, the ſhortnes of winde, and an old cough: [illegible] the ſame prouoketh vrine, & helpeth the

gripings

gripings & nippings of the body, and ceaſeth the cold ſhaking of a daily ague, and draweth downe the termes. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Iſope.

Of the ordering and care of the Mints. Chap. 24

MInts may be planted neere vnto a well, or other running water, for that the hearbe delighteth in a moyſt place, and to be ſet either in ſlips, or in the whole rootes, and flouriſheth in the Sommer, but withereth in the Winter. And this hearb ought to be ſet in a ſunny place, but in no verie fat ground, nor dunged: and this hearbe may not be moued after the growing with any Iron, as we haue afore taught. And this hearb once ſowen and prouing, doth continue many yeares after in the Garden. And Plinie writeth, that the Mints ought to be ſet in the beginning of the month of March.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Mints in the Garden are hot and dry in the ſecond degree, and all the ſorts of mints in the garden, do both comfort the ſtomacke, and help digeſtion. And now the mints brought to pouder and eaten in milke, dooth ſlea the wormes of the belly: and the hearb eaten, doth looſe the belly: and the daily vſing of this hearb, doth giue a good colour: and at any time eaten, is very healthful to the body. And the iuce of the hearb mixed with a little Brimſtone and vineger, and that anointed on the holy fier with a feather, doth ceaſe the pain forthwith. And mints ſodden with wine & drunk, doth eaſe the pain of the kidnies, and bowels: and ſodden in wine and oile, & that laid plaiſter-wiſe on impoſtumes, doth diſſolue & cure them. And againſt the ſtinking ſauour of the mouth and rottennes of the gums and teeth, let then the mouth & gums, be waſhed with vineger, of the decoction of garden mints, & after rubed with the pouder of dry mints, or with dry mints. And againſt the breſt hardned by the curding of the milk, take a great handful of the mints, & the ſame ſeeth in wine and oile, & after lay that plaſter-wiſe on the paps & it helpeth them. And further note, that when any medicine is giuen againſt poyſon, the ſame ought to be miniſtred with the

the iuce of Mints, or with wine of the decoction of it, if you cannot get (at that time) the iuce, or the onely iuice of Mints, or wine of the decoction of it, or the iuice of it with honie commixed together, doth helpe the ſame. Alſo the ſame helpeth the ſtopping of the Liuer and Milt, and the waies of the vrine proceeding of a cold humour, and of the hot without an Ague. And the iuce miniſtred with honie, doth ſlea the worms in the belly, & it doth alſo kil worms, dropped into the eares. And the mints put into milke, will not ſuffer the milke to curd, although the runnet be put into it: and in the like ſort, it doth hinder generation. Theſe hitherto of the properties of garden mints.

Of the ordering, and eare of the Garden Time.

Chap. 25.

THe Garden Time is a plant right profitable, which delighteth rather to be ſet in the whole plants, then ſowen in the ſeeds, in a leane and ſtony ground, and that open in the ſun, but neither in fat nor dunged ground. And Theophraſtus writeth, that it will well enough proſper, if the plants be ſet with the flowers growing on them. And Palladius writeth, that the beſt time for the ſetting of it, is in the latter end of the moneth of September, in a ſunnie place, and ſtony ground.

The phiſicke helper.

The Garden Time is hot and drie in the third degree, and doth prouoke vrine, and the termes in women, and purgeth alſo the bowells, by drinking thereof in wine. This Time ſodden with honie and drunk, doth helpe ſuch as fetch the winde ſhort, and helpeth in a maner all other griefes of the breaſt, by ſpitting forth the corrupt matter. And four drams of the fine pouder of Time, taken with ſix ſpoonefull of Oximell, doth purge choller, and cleanſe the bladder.

And if the belly ſwelleth, then take one dram of the fine pouder of this Gardē Time, with a ſpoonfull of mellicrate, which drunk faſting, doe eaſe the paine of the boweles and loynes. And to take away the wind of the breaſt, the ſides, and

and flanckes, drink the quantity of three drams of the pouder, with a spoonfull of Oximel mixed together: also three drams of this pouder mixed with a spoonful of oximel doth purge the melancholly, and dulnes of the sences proceeding of melancholly: & the same potion also giueth the clearenes of sight, and helpeth the paines of the eyes, if it be taken fasting: also the pouder helpeth such, grieuously pained with the gout, being giuen with wine: and this Time must bee moderatly vsed, for the much eating of it doth greatly hear, and yet beware of the black Time, for that the same dooth corrupt and ingender choller: but vse that only which beareth a purple flower, hauing some whiteneſſe withall. Thus much of the Garden Time.

Of the ordering and care, of the herb Organie. Chap. 26.

ORganie delighteth to be set in rough & stony places, and to be dunged and watered till the same be well fastned in the earth. And it also delighteth in the same order of dwelling as doth the parcely.

And Palladius willeth that Organie be set in September about the time of the Suns entring into Libra. And it ought then to be gathered when it beareth flowres, and to be dryed in the shadowe, for so the leaues and flowres will continue for a yere, if they be before stripped from the stalks, and the stalks cast away.

The Phiſick helpe.

Organie of the garden is hot and drie in the third degre, and the kindes of Organy haue the vertue of cutting a sunder, drying, drawing, and also consuming: but the root of any of them haue no vertue in medicine. This Organie helpeth any person that is diseased in the liuer, by drinking the decoction of the flowres, and the flowres and leaues put into a little linnen bag, and the same boyled in wine, & aplyed hot to the head (the pacient then couered with clothes to sweate) doth driue forth and put away many griefes of the head and breſt, and helpeth also the streightnes of fetching breath. And the Organie sod in wine, & drunk, doth help the stomacke, and ease the bowels. And the same decoction

laide on the belly, doth prouoke vrine, and being drunke warme, doth eaſe the grieuous paine in making of water, & the dropping of the Vrine, and to helpe the diſeaſe of going often to the ſtoole and doing nothing, take the pouder of Organy, and ſtrew or ſprinckle that on the fundament, and it will ſhortly after looſe the belly & bring forth the ordure. And the hearb it ſelfe ſodden in wine oliue, and the ſame ſtriked on a linnen cloth, & applied after to the womās priuy place, doth take away the hardnes therof, and purgeth it, and draweth downe the tearmes: and to heale the red leapry take the iuice or Organy, the iuce of horhound, a little wine and the like of the oyle of Henbane, yet more of them then of the iuce, putting to them alſo a little oyle of tartar, which ſo don, mix altogether, anointing the partie in an hot houſe before his cōming forth: & if that after his comming forth he be greeued with pain, let him take Goates greaſe melted in a frying pan, with the which annointe the places againe, and afeer lye downe in a cleane paire of ſheetes, lying there ſo long vntill the ſame be dryed in, and after take and bruſe the Organy, mixing the ſame with wheaten bran, and heat that in a frying pan, and this being ſo hot as may be ſuffered lay vpon the bliſters and leaprie, & binding a cloth vpon it, let it ſo lye vntill the ſame neede heating againe: and this doe ſo often, vntill the patient be healed, which the ſame wil do without doubt, and in the meane while let the patient eat ſuch things as do ingender good blood, & be of an eaſie digeſtion, and dayly to drinke the ſirop of Fumitorie: and if the ſame happen in the winter, then to drinke the ſirrope of Egrimony in ſuch ſort.

And further, the iuce of Organye with womans milke dropped warme into the eares, doth eaſe the paine of them, and the hearb bruſed with Roſes, Calamus Aromanticus, and wormewood, and this applyed hot, doth ſend vp again the fundament into the proper place. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Organy.

Of

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of Violets. Chap. 27.

VIolets (after the minde of Columella) ought to bee planted in Beds a foote high, and the earth well laboured and turned in with dung, and that the Plants bee not aboue a yeare olde, and to bee ſet in ſhort furrowes a foote broad, in the beginning of the Spring or in the entrance of the moneth of March. And the ſeeds may be ſowen in beds twice a yere, firſt in the Spring time and after in the harueſt, but the later ſowing proſpereth the worſe with vs, through the colde ſeaſon following: which Violets ought in like ſort to be weeded, and the olde withered leaues cut away and watered (when neede ſo requireth) as you doe other Pot-herbes in the comming vp. And to haue one plant bring forth ſundrie colours together, take the leaues of all the colours of Violets, and put them together into a thin worne linnen cloath, and after ſet them in a well dunged and laboured ground, as before was taught. And this note, which by experience hath bene found true, that vnleſſe the faireſt Violet be remooued, it will beare both a ſmaller flower, and a leſſer of ſmell, then it did in the yeare before.

The Phiſicke helps.

Violets be colde in the end of the ſecond degree. The violets ought eſpecially to be gathered in March, and dryed in a ſhadowye place of the aire, & there be alſo three kindes of them which are vſed in medicine, as the white, the blacke and yellow: and the floures drunke, do take away the windines of the ſtomacke: and the decoction of the floures gargaled in the throat, doth help the diſeaſe called the ſquince.

And the iuice of this herbe doth put away any ſwelling proceeding of a hot cauſe, and two drams of the powder of the ſeedes drunken in wine, dooth draw downe the tearmes of women, and the roote ſodden in wine, and laide vpon the ſwollen Milt, doth put away the ſwelling, and dryeth vp the humour.

And the roote ſod in wine, and laide plaiſter-wiſe on the

hot gout, doth eaſe the paine. And white Vyolets boyled, and laide in plaiſter forme vnto the belly of a woman, doth ſend forth the dead yongling, and put away the ſwellings of the priuie place: and if a foment of them be applyed to the nether part vpward, it doth mundifie the priny place, and draw downe the tearmes: and the Vyolets applyed, doorh eaſe the paine of the head (proceeding of an vntemperate hotnes) cauſeth ſleep, ſoften & mak eaſie the breſt & throat, help the pallat of the mouth fallen, & the ſquince: but the ſirop of the Vyolets do eſpecially worke theſe aboue ſaide: and the only ſmell of the floures, take away the head-ache: and the roots boyled with Vineger and drunk, & the ſame annoynted on the ſpleene, doth aſſwage the ſwelling, & eaſeth likewiſe the gout: and the hearb with the root boyled & applyed to Children, doth help their cough: and the oyle of vyolets doth heal many diſeaſes: as firſt, dropped into the eares, doth put away the greefs of them, & taketh away the head-ache by annointing the head therwith. And the ſame oyle mixed with worme-ſeedes, and annointing the bellye therewith, doth expell and ſend foorth the wormes. And the ſirop of the Vyolets doth help the burning of the ague, looſe the bellye, and quallifieth a hot Liuer: and the purple Violets drunk in water, do looſe the belly, qualifie choller, help inflamations, ceaſe thirſt, and put away the iaundiſe: and the ſame doth the conſerue of Violets. Theſe hitherto of the violets.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of all Roſes.
Chap. 28

FOr that Roſes bee pleaſant ornaments in a garden, and ſo neceſſarie (all the kindes) in medicine, wee minde heere largely to write of the ſowing and ſetting of all the kindes.

For all kindes of Roſes may not bee ſet either in fat and clayie ground, nor moiſt or wet earth, but in a fine earth dunged with ſtore of drie rubbiſh, and in ſhort ſlips of a foote long, and in verie ſhort furrowes. For to bee ſowen in the ſeedes, they come ſlowly vp.

And heere note, that you may not thinke thoſe to bee the ſeedes

ſeedes of the Roſe, which grow in the middle of the flours, in colour like vnto gold, but that the ſeeds be in that part which reſembleth the forme of a ſmall Peare in the vpper end of the ſtalke, on which the leaues of the flours ſticke. And now the ſeedes are then ripe to bee gathered, when as the grapes with vs bee full ripe, which ripenelle of them is well known both by their ruſkiſh and browniſh colour, and by their ſoftnelle in the feeling. And note further, that the beds of Roſes, muſt be high caſt vp, which you ought eſpecially to doe in the moneth of March, hauing your grounde then in a readineſſe, and the day faire. And ordering your Beds after this manner yearely, they will continue many yeres: and when they way olde, then dig vp the earth about them, and prune them by cutting from them all the withered ſtalkes and dead branches, and repairing the emptie places with new ſlippes, after the minde of Palladius. And ſome wil, that the olde Plants with the rootes being digged vp, and cut a ſpanne long, to be new ſet againe. And other wil, that the young ſprings with their rootes bee ſet a foote a ſunder each from the other, well dunged & often watered. And if you haue not ſufficient plants to ſet out your Beds, then betweene the olde plants ſet young ſprings, ſlipped off from the old, and the olde ſet againe with the rootes and al, and that a foot a ſunder each from the other, wel dunged and often watered, for ſo they grow the plentifuller and faſter. And at the end of euerie yeare, new ſet them againe, and prune and cut away the ſuperfluous branches at the ſetting of each roote, and digge alſo freſh earth often about them, for in that they ioy. And the Roſes will ſmell the ſweeter, if they bee gathered in faire and drie daies: and to haue your Roſes ſooner then any other, and pleaſanter of ſmel, make little gutters too hand breadth from the rootes, and poure warme water morning and euening into the gutters, which ſo through the heate doth greatly comfort the Plantes, and maketh them grow the faſter.

Alſo Didimus writeth, that if you ſet Garlike heads heere and there among your Roſes, they will ſmell farre pleaſanter thorowe the continuall heate ſent from them. And here note,

that the maner of the watering aboue-said, ought not to bee done before the cups or verie young buds appeare, and then dayly after, to water vnto the gathering.

And to haue Roses euerie moneth, you must then (as Didimus writeth) new plant, dung and water them often euery moneth. But to haue Roses monethly cannot be possible, neither in our countrie of England, nor in any other Countrie, lying vnder the North, so well as in the temperate and warm countries. And this note, that those Roses which grow in a drie ground, bee farre sweeter then those growing in a wet ground.

And to haue timely Roses, sift then your earth through a Siue, and that earth mixe with dung, and put the same into an earthen pot, which after moisten a little, setting the same abroad in sunnie and warme daies, or letting small and fine raine fall vppon it, and at the setting of the Sunne take in the pot alwaies: and this so long do (and watering it the whiles) vntill the winter and colde weather be past. And after this, when a faire day commeth, then set the pot in the earth, couering it ouer and about the plants with fresh earth, and doe afterward (as aboue is taught) and you shal so haue timely Roses.

And to keepe Roses all the yeare, doe as Didimus teacheth: take greene Barley, being yet as grasse, (and not eared) with the rootes, and all those put into an earthen pot, not glased, or rather vnmealed: into which, put your buds nothing opened, and diligently couer them about with this greene barly, and you shall keepe them fresh and greene so long as you list (couering the mouth of the pot close) euen as though they grew still in beds on their stalkes. And others, strew the green Barley on pauemẽt or hard floor, and in the blades they bury or hide the buds. Also other take yong buds, a little opened at the setting of the Sunne, and in no wise touching them with hands, but properly gather them with a sharpe knife, & those lay on a drie boord, letting them be abroad all the night through if the night be faire: after, haue in a readinesse your earthen pot, well glazed both within and without: but some thinke

it better, if not nealed at all, but whether way you like beſt, (that vſe) and put therein your Roſes before the Sunne be vp in the morning, and ſtop cloſe your pot with clay, mired with horſe dung and flockes, that no aire breathe out at the mouth of the pot, which ſo done: then ſet the pot into a bedde of drie ſand, and couering it well ouer with the ſame dry ſand, letting no moiſt place be neere to, or about the ſame. And on this wiſe, and by that other meanes afore taught, you may haue freſh Roſes all the yeare through.

And here note, that Roſes and other flowers, dryed either in the Sunne or Ouen, doe longer and better retaine their ſtrength, ſauor, and colour, then being dryed in the ſhadowe, ſo that the ſame be done with diſcretion. And the like may bee thought to be done with the ſweete and ſmelling Roſes.

And as touching that way of making the white Roſes to be red, and the red Roſes to bee white, and ſo partie colours, with other pretty concluſions beſides of the roſe, you ſhal further reap and vnderſtād in my little treatiſe, intituled Naturall and Artificiall concluſions, where I largely write of theſe and many other right pleaſant concluſions to bee read vnderſtood of the common ſort.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The Roſe is colde and drie in the ſecond degree. Now, when the red Roſes be not fully opened, they muſt be clippedoff, and dryed in the Sunne. The roſed hony eaten, doth profit much, for that the ſame doth both comfort the blond and ſtomacke, and the iuce of the Roſes ſodden in wine, doth take away the paine of the head, and helpeth the eyes: and the gummes waſhed with the ſame, doth put away the paine of them: and the leaues of the roſes bruiſed, and laide on inflamations, doth draw forth the heat. The ſeeds of roſes beaten to pouder, doth eaſe the paine of the teeth, by rubbing the gums and teeth with the ſame pouder, and the heads (in which the ſeedes be ſodden and drunke) do looſe the belly, & help the ſpitting of bloud. Roſes mixed with hony & ſugar, & that eatē, do dry vp euil humors of the ſtomack: & the

leaues

leaues of the Roſes ſoden in wine, and giuen to drink, doth helpe ſuch griefes, as commonly happen in womens priuie places: and the freſh or new Roſe leaues, mixed together with hony, doe aptly purge mans body, and to make an eſpeciall Laxatiue, take two ounces of the iuyce of Roſes, & mixe the ſame with Whay made of cowes milk, & a little ſpicknard: & you may alſo take the whay of milk, putting therto twelue ounces of roſe leaues, and a little honnie, and this doth marueilous well looſe and purge the belly. And firope of roſes onely (being made of freſh roſes) dooth purge the belley: and roſe leaues wrought together with hony & ſuger, do both comfort and purge the body: and that Vinegar is right profitable, in which the roſes be infuſed or ſteeped for a night, to annoint or ſtrike on hot members, or places of the body. & to a hot ſtomacke the ſame applyed outward, doth greatly help & qualifie the hot burning therin: and the iuice of roſes, drunk with ſweet conduit water, doth both lo ſe the body, purgeth the blood, and eſpecially choller, and putteth away the Kings euill: and the iuice of roſes onely taken, doth put away a great burning without danger, and bringeth a man (after the purging of his body) vnto a quiet reſt: and the Roſes doe comfort the heart, and reioyce the blood: and the roſed hony dooth both comfort and expell the melancholly and flegmatike matter: and giuen in that water, in which Fennel ſeedes is ſodden, doth purge the better, if the ſame ſhall be mixed with a little ſalt.

The beſt making of the oyle of Roſes is on this wiſe, firſt clip off the roſe leaues from the whites, & boiling the ſame in oyle Oliue, then ſun the ſame in a glaſſe for fiftie daies: & this is the beſt approued oyle. And this oile applyed to a hot liuer, doth greatly helpe: and annointed about the temples doth take away the aking or beating paines of the head, and cooleth it. The roſe leaues vſed in meats, doth aſſwage both the heat of the ſtomacke and liuer, and the pouder of roſe leaues bruiſed with vineger, & mixed with the white of an Eg, doth effectually heale the paine of the eyes, reſtraineth the humours, and the ſheading of blood into the vaines of

the

the eyes, if the ſame be applied plaiſter-wiſe on the temples. And that which is called ſuger roſet, hath the vertue of comforting and ſtaying, & helpeth the bloudy flixe, the cholleriek vomiting, the faintnes of body, & the Cardiake paſſiō. And the dew falne on Roſe leaues, & gathered into a cleane quil, which drop on the nether eye lid, and it wil amend the bleardnes of the eyes. And the drye Roſe leaues boyled in wine and drunk, doth amend the paines of the head, the eies, the eares and the gummes: & the ſame caſt in gliſter forme, doth help the corruptions both of the bowells and womens priuy places: And the red Roſe water drūk in *Balneo Maria* hath many goodly effects: for the ſame water drunk, doth ſtrengthen & coole the braine, the heart, the ſtomack, and al the inward members: ſtrengthneth alſo the ſpirits & natural heate, and preſerueth from rottennes. Take one ounce of this red Roſewater, a litle quantity of white wine, one dram of Tutia, to which ad of Aloes Hepatike and of ſuger candy of each twenty graines, theſe mix altogither, which after drop, (as need requireth) into the eares, it doth clenſe, drye and ſtrengthen the ſight and the eies: and the ſame water dropped with a little ſuger into the eies, doth help the exulceration and rednes of the eies, proceeding of heate: which being drunk faſting, vnto the quantity of three ounces, doth take away the giddines of the head, and ſtrengthen the liuer. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Roſes.

Of the ordring, care and ſecrets of the hearbe Baſil. Chap. 29.

BAſill for his excellent ſmell and ſauour hath bene greately counted vpon in ancient time, inſomuch that Kings and Princes (for the greate delight which they conceiued in this hearbe) did plant the ſame in their gardens. And the time of ſowing this hearb, after the minde of Columella, ought to be done in the beginning of the moneth of May, in fat earth: and when the ſeedes be ſowen and couered with earth, then to be preſſed downe with a rollet, and diligently trod downe with the feete, For if the Gardner ſhall leaue the ſeedes vn-

troden downe, that they do lye hollowe in the earth, they will putrifie and come to no prooſe. Theophraſtus writeth a marueilous matter of the Baſil, that if the ſeedes be ſowen with curſſed wordes (like as ſome do in the Hempſeed) that then they will come vp the better and the ſoner but I rather wiſh to tarry the longer for them. The ſooner the ſeedes will breake and come vp if after the ſowing they be dayly ſprinkled with warme water. And ſome wiſh the ſeeds to be ſprinkled with vineger if they be ſowen towards the winter, for that with ſuch ſprinkling they ſooner ſpring vp. And Pliny willeth the Baſil to be watred onely at noone time of the day, whereas all other hearbes are to be watred morning and euening with cold water. And when the Baſil is come vp an hand full high, then to be cut off ſo right and ſtraight as is poſſible, although it be forbidden in the like ſort to touch it with yron, as the hearb-grace, Mintes and Sauery. And Gargilius Martialis writeth a marueilous matter and worthy to be noted, that the Baſil ſometimes bringeth forth purple floures, ſometimes white, and ſometimes red of colour like to the Roſe.

And Criſippus (as writeth Pliny) affirmeth the hearb to be vnprofitable vnto the ſtomack, the vrine, & the clearenes of the eyes: beſides, to cauſe feanzines, the forgetfull ſleepines, and ſtoppings or corruptions of the Liuer: and for this hee thought it beſt to be eſchewed both of men and goates. And the Greek writers think the Baſil ſo diſagreeing and contrary to women, that if the whole Baſil with the root, be put ſecretly vnder the diſh of meate ſet on the table (the woman not knowing thereof) that ſhe ſhall not after taſte of the meat ſo long as the hearb there lyeth. And Diodorus writeth that the much eating of Baſil doth ingender abundance of lice.

The Phiſicke helpes.

For the temperament and qualitie of the Baſill, Authors do not agree, for *Auicen* writeth that it is hot and dry in the ſecond degree, but *Galen* and *Ægineta* write, that the Baſil is heating in the ſecond degree, & that it hath a certain excrement moiſture, for the which cauſe, it is thought dangerous to receiue

to receiue inward, but outward to be anoynted, it doth put away and digeſt. And now the ſmelling to the Baſil doth comforte the braine, and yet the ſmell there of doth greatly harme a weake braine. And the ſeedes ought to be gathered in the moneth of Iuly, for then they be beſt. And the leaues ſodden and drunk, doth take away the ſwimming of the head: And the like doth the herb preuaile, if it be ſteeped for a night in wine, and after drunk. And the herb ſodden in wine, doth cauſe it to be pleaſant of ſmell, & heateth a cold ſtomacke, and helpeth digeſtion: and the pouder of the herb drunk with the iuce of ſlowes, for eight daies together, doth helpe an outward rupture: and the decoction of this herb in water, and the ſame applyed like a foment about the priuie place, doth both cleanſe the matrice, and drawe downe the tearmes: and the iuce of Baſil drunke of women in trauell with childe, doth not only moue forward the birth, but cleanſeth the after birth: and the herbe ſodden in wine and oyle, and applyed to the fundament, doth ceaſe the often deſire to the ſtoole: and beeing boyled in raine water, and drunke with a little pouder of the iuice of ſlowes, doth help the flixe of the belly, proceeding of cold. The ſeeds drawen dy the noſthrils, prouoke ſneeſing: and being mixed with ſhomakers blacke doth take away warts, and maketh them riſe vp by the rootes. And the ſeedes drunk do ſoften the belly and put away winde: and beeing drunk in wine, do put away all melancholly ſadnes, ſtirre vp the minde, cauſe boldnes vnto the fearfull, and make merry the ſad. And the Baſil helpeth the ſtomacke, for that it digeſteth hard meates, and profitable it is both to the Liuer and hart: and the herb bruſed and mixed with barly meale and vineger, and that laid in plaiſter forme, doth help inflamations of the Lungs: and the ſauour of Baſil doth help the ſtopping of the braine and noſe, purgeth the head, & ſtaieth the rewme: and the iuce of Baſil dropped into the eies, doth cleanſe the miſtes of the eies, and running of them: and the herb eaten worketh the like. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Baſil.

Of the ordering, care and ſecretes of the ſweete Marioram. Chap. 30.

Marioram for the pleaſant ſmell is an hearbe much eſteemed of all perſons, and may either bee ſowne in ſeedes or ſet in ſlippes, and it loueth to be ſet in olde dung (the earth before well digged vp) and to be ſet in the moiſt and ſhadowey places, for ſo it groweth the fuller and big, but ſet in an open and ſunny place, it groweth the ſhorter and criſped. It may either be ſowne or ſet in the ſpring time, and remooued to beds well dreſſed with drie dung, for ſo it proſpereth the better.

The Phiſicke helps.

Mariorum is hot and drie in the ſecond degree, & ought to be gathered in the ſommer when it floureth, and after dryed in a ſhadowey place, for ſo it will ſerue for a yeare. And now the Marioram ſodden in lie, and the head waſhed with the ſame, doth ceaſe the grieuous pain therof. Alſo the Marioram comforteth the braine, openeth the ſtopping of the members, and taketh away the diſeaſe called Apoplexia. And the pouder of Marioram, giuen with meate, or drunke in wine, doth heate the coldenes of the ſtomack, & comforteth digeſtion. And the drye leaues brought to pouder and annoynted with hony, do take away black and blew ſpots of the skin. And the oyle of Mariorum doth heat aſwel the inner members as the outward, and the ioynts and ſinewes. And the oile alſo doth heal womēs places: & applyed warm doth help all greeſes, comforteth the braine, & al the members of the body. Alſo this hearb hath the propertie of heating all the inner members, ſoftneth the milt, and aſſwageth the ſwelling therof. The decoction of the hearb drūk, doth help the water beginning betweene the skin, the ſtreightnes of making of water, & the griping of the body. And y flours & hearb laid in a fine bag, & that aplied to the ſtomack, doth take away the paine & greeſe therof. And the pouder of the Mariorum drawne vp into the noſe, doth both cleanſe and likewiſe heate the head, and may ſerue all perſons for the like cauſe. And the vapour of the decoction of this hearbe

receiued

receiued beneath, dooth cleanſe the matrice: and the herb made in a peſſarie, and applied vp, dooth draw downe the tearmes. The herb with waxe applied in plaiſter forme on looſe members, doth ſtrengthen them, aſwageth ſwellings and other griefes. And the pouder of the Marioram, with a little ginger, drawn vp in the noſe, dooth prouoke ſneeſing and ſtayeth rume. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Marioram.

Of the ordring, care, and ſecrets of the Marigolde.

Chap. 31.

THe Marigold is a floure verry well knowen, and to bee found in moſt Gardens at this day, which renueth euery moneth, and is to be found as well in Winter as in Sommer. And this is named (of the Italians) the monthly floure, or floure of euery moneth. And this floure alſo of certain, is named the Husbandmans Diall, for that the ſame ſo aptly declareth the houres of morning and euening, by the opening and ſhutting of it. Alſo it is named the ſunnes floure, for that after the riſing of the Sunne vnto noone, this floure openeth larger and larger, but after the noone time, vnto the ſetting of the Sunne, it cloſeth and ſhutteth more and more: ſo after the ſetting of the Sunne, the floure is then wholy ſhut vp together. Marigold ſeedes be commonly ſowne in a well labored and dreſſed ground, and in the increaſe of the moone for ſo they proſper the better. And to haue them growe big, and to beare thicke and wyde floures, you muſt remoone and ſet the young plantes often, and this alwaies in the increaſe of the Moone, and that you alſo put many ſeedes into one hole together, and water them in the ſpringing vp. And if in the remooning you ſet them thin they proſper the better.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The floures being ſteeped in vineger & ſalt, may be kept for two yeares. And now the floures drunk in wine, dooth comfort the ſtomack, procure an appetite to meat, conſume the humours of the ſtomack, and heat a cold ſtomacke. And the rind of the root ſodden in wine and drunke, doth both digeſt the euill humors, and helpeth the diſeaſes of the liuer.

And the pouder of the rind of the root, mixt with the iuice of Fenell, a litle wine, and a litle oyle, and boyled togeather into a thicknes, and a litle waxe put vnto the ſame, making therof an ointment, with the which annoint the milt or cold ſtomack, and it doth mightily helpe: and the iuice of the leaues dropped into the eares, doth ſlea the wormes: and the rinds brought to pouder, and laid on euill puſhes, dooth heale them: and the iuice of the hearbe and roote made in gliſter forme and applied, dooth helpe the palſie members. And to women hauing their breaſtes ſwollen through the ſtay of monthly courſes, let the floures of the Marigold, the Spikenard, and wine be miniſtred, which both doth aſwage the ſwelling, and prouoke the Termes (as writeth *Matheus Saluaticus*) And againſt the piſſing of bloud, take floures of the Marigold, and boile the ſame, and then drinke therof, and it will ſtay in ſhort time: and the water diſtilled of the floures, doth heale al the griefes of the eies, whether the ſame be cauſed of heat or of cold, and cleareth the eies: alſo it putteth away all griefes of the head. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Marigold.

Of the ordring and care of the Lauender. *Chap.* 32.

LAuender is an hearbe ſweete in ſmelling, and at this day growing in moſte gardens: of the which be two kinds, the one growing high, and ſending forth a great ſauour, which for that it giueth no leſſe ſauor then the Spike, is of the ſame named Spikenard: and the other, both in the largenes of the leafe and ſauor, is leſſe. And for that the ſame is occupied in baths, and in the waſhing of hands, for the ſweetnes of ſmell, therefore of moſte men named the Lauender. Alſo the firſt is named the Male, and the other the Female, as ſundry authors write. And now the Lauender ioyeth to be ſet in an open and ſunny place, and in ſtony earth, for ſo it proſpereth the better.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Lauender hath the vertue of heating & drying, but profiteth not vnto the digeſtion of meat: and now if any aplieth the Lauender often to the noſe in ſmelling thereto, it dooth

both

both comfort and cleare the ſight: and who ſo boyleth Lauender in water, and that a ſhirt wet in the ſame, and after dried again be worne, no Louſe after wil abide in that ſhirt, ſo long as the ſhirt keepeth the ſmell: and the floures haue ſingular vertues, eſpecially to the helping of the Apoplexy. Alſo the floures ſteeped in wine, and after diſtilled, and of the ſame holden in the mouth, doth recouer the ſpeech loſt, proceeding of the Apoplexie: and Lauender hath many other vertues beſides: for the ſame helpeth al the cold griefes of the braine, crampe, and gripings of the body, proceeding of cold: It helpeth alſo the ſtopping of the milt, heateth the belly, and ſendeth downe the tearmes. And this hearbe (with the floures ſhred) ought to be diſtilled in Iune, which drunk vnto the quantity of two ounces, doth helpe the gidines of the head: & the like if the water be rubbed all ouer the head, and ſo let drie in of it ſelfe: and the ſame water in like quantity vſed, doth help the crampe, the Apoplexie, the aſtoniſhing and the trembling of the members, and handes. Alſo this water helpeth the palſie members, if they be often annointed and rubbed with it: and likewiſe helpeth the heauines in the mouing of the tongue, by drinking three ounces at a time: alſo it helpeth vlcers and paines of the teeth, if the ſame be often holden in the mouth: and the ſame water helpeth well the bliſtering of the mouth, if the mouth be waſhed with it. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Lauender.

Of the ordering, and care of the Spikenard. Chap.

THe Spikenard groweth like vnto the Lauender, ſauing that the leaues be thicker and bigger, and beareth alſo a longer ſtalke and bigger floures, which bee of purple colour like to the Lauender, and hath beſides greater vertues. And now the Spikenard ſeeketh to be ſet in a fat earth, well laboured and dreſſed, and in an open and Sunny place of the garden.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The Spikenard is hot in y firſt degree, and dry in the ſecõd and cauſeth vrine. And if of the decoction of it be a plaſter made & the ſame laid to the priuy place, ſtaieth the ſuperfluous

fluous courſe of the tearmes, and taketh away the humors of womens places. And the Spikenard drunke with colde water, puts away the weaknes and trembling of the heart. And this Spikenard infuſed in Lie, & the head waſhed therwith, doth cauſe the haire to grow, & helpeth the ſheading of the haire. And the oyle of the Spike, well drawne by glaſſe, is marueilous ſweet, and hath many vertues, & eſpecially vnto the palſie members, if they be annointed therwith. And the ſaid oile dooth eaſe the gout, and all other griefes of the ioyntes. Alſo this oyle dooth help the ſwellings of the ſtomacke, the diſeaſes of the liuer, the kidnies and the kings euill. The decoction of the Spikenard, helpeth againſt the palſie of the tongue, comforteth the ſinews, and dryeth vp the moiſture occupying the inſtrument of the tongue. And the floures of the Spikenard infuſed in wine, and ſet in the ſun for a certaine ſpace, in a narrow mouth glaſſe wel ſtopped, and after diſtilled by glaſſe in *Balneo Mariæ* with a ſoft fire (& if the freſh floures may be had, then need you not to infuſe them in wine) it is very precious, and being diſcreetly vſed, helpeth all colde griefes aſwell within as without the bodie: alſo the griefes of the head and braine, if a linnen cloath dipped in the ſame, be applied to the noſe: And the ſame water helpeth the rume, and diſtilling of the head: and this water drunk, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, doth helpe the Collicke paſſion, proceeded of colde: and it ceaſeth the paines and giddines of the head, proceeding of a colde cauſe, if the noule of the head, & for-head, be annointed therewith. And this water helpeth the colde and palſie members, heating them, and putteth away the ſhaking of them. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Spikenard.

Of the ordring, care, and ſecrets of the white Lillie.

Chap. 34.

The white Lillie, for the beautie and ſmell, is affirmed of Plinie, to be next to the Roſe, and higher of growth then the moſt floures of the garden. And the increaſe of this Lillie is marueilous, in that one roote ſendeth forth and yeeldeth

(for

(for the moſte part) fiftie heads. And Palladius willeth the Lillie to be planted in the month of October, Nouember, and March, and that in a fat and well dreſſed earth, and the heads ſet a ſpan or a foote a ſunder, like as is taught hereafter in the ſetting of Garlike. And to make them to beare purple flowers, gather (as Pliny teacheth) to the number of ten or twelue ſtalkes in the month of July, or when they floure, which binde together and hang in the ſmoake, and after that, ſlip off the leaues, making the ſtalkes naked, which ſteepe in red wine-lees, in the month of March (ſo long) vntill the knots of the ſtalkes haue ſufficiently drunke in, and appeare well coloured as a purple, and then ſet the ſtalkes into the earth, hauing the Wine-lees hanging both on the ſtalkes and rootes, and thoſe after ſhall ſend forth and beare purple flowers.

And Florentius writeth, that the Floures of Lillies will ſhewe red if that betweene the rinde and the ſmall heads growing about the roote, you poure of that fine powder of Vermilion, or elſe the ponder of red lead, regarding that you harm not the ſmall heads growing about. And likewiſe dying them of any other colour, euen of the ſame colour will the floures growe: as if you liſt to haue either greene or blew Lillies.

And to haue Lillies all the yeare, take the buds not opened, with ſome of the ſtalke, thoſe put into an new earthen pot not glaſed, and after ſtop cloſe the mouth of the pot, and when you ſhall need them, then ſet them on the ſide of a Baſon in the Sunne, and after they haue felt a while the warmth, they will open and ſpread abroad. And Anatolius writeth, that you may haue Lillies at diuers times of the yeare, if in the proper time of the yeare you ſet ſome of the heads twelue fingers deepe, other eight fingers deepe, and other but foure fingers, and thus in the growing vp will they beare floures at ſundrie times one after another. On this wiſe may many other floures be made growe, and to beare at diuers times.

The Phiſick helps.

The white Lillie is hot and dry of qualitie, but the flours be of a temperate qualitie, and the oyle of Lillies doe greatly profit, by annointing on the belly, for that it heateth

womens places, & ſoftneth the humours there hardned. The root ſodden and laid on hot impoſtumes, dooth ripen them, and the roote roaſted in hot embers and bruſed, and after mixed with Roſewater, and the ſame laide on the holy fire, doth heale the ſame if it be dayly vſed, and in the like ſort laide on wounds, doth increaſe the fleſh on them. The roote ſodden and bruſed and mixed with Barrowes greaſe, or oile Oliue, and after laid on impoſtumes, dooth mightily ſoften them: & of the Lillie is made a good ointment on this wiſe, Take of the white Lilly roots, of the roots of Bramker fine, and of marſh mallow roots of each a quarter of a pound, all theſe bruſe together verie wel in foure meaſures of wine, and after ſeeth all in halfe a pinte of oyle, vnto a thickneſſe, which ſtraine through a linnen cloth, putting therto a little waxe, and make thereof an oyntment, and annoynt it on the hard milt on the left ſide, and it will greatly helpe, for that it doth not onely ſoften the ſame, but putteth away the paine thereof. Item, the root of the Lillie ſodden, and after boyled with oyle of Roſes, and annoynted, doth heale burnings.

Alſo, the root ſodden in wine, and the ſame drunk in the euening at the going to bed, doth purge down-ward al noyſome humors of the body. And the leaues ſodden in vineger and laid plaiſter-wiſe, doth heale woundes. And the roote roſted and mixed with hony, & that laid plaiſter-wiſe, doth heale looſe & cut ſinewes. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Lillie.

Of the ordering, and care, and ſecrets of the wood Lillie. Chap. 35.

THe wood Lillie or Lillie of the valley, is a floure meruailous ſweete, flouriſhing eſpecially in the ſpring time, and growing properly in woods, but chiefly in valeies and on the ſides of hilles. But now for the great commoditie and vſe knowne (of the floure) the ſame of late yeares is brought and planted in Gardens. And this hearb ſpringeth vp with two leaues together, in faſhion like the white Lillie, and in the middle ſpringeth vp a ſmall ſlender ſtalke: in the top of which growe foorth little ſmall floures, in a manner white, and of a

pleaſant

pleaſant ſmell. And the roote of it is white within the earth, but wrinckled without, and this Lillie ioyeth to bee ſet in a moyſte ground and ſhadowey place of the Garden, for ſo it proſpereth the better. The commodities of this floure, is alwaies had in the ſpring time.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The wood Lillie is colde and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and the floures be of greater effect then the hearbe, and the root paſſeth the flowres in vertue. The flowers drunk in new wine, doth ſtrengthen the heart, the brain, the liuer, & al the ſpirituall members (as they do name them) and of the ſame is aptly miniſtred vnto the panting of the heart, giddineſſe of the head, the falling ſickneſſe, the Apoplexie and frenſines.

It doth alſo help thoſe which be pained with a trembling of the heart, & prickings about the heart, and the members which ſhak & tremble. Moreouer, it doth alſo ſtop the paſſages of the Leapry beginning, that the ſame ſpred no further abroad, and it doth put away the ſcabs & ringworme, being annointed vpon, & the ſooner if you waſh them ſundry times with the water. Furthermore, it aſſwageth the ſwellings of the ſtings of Bees, Waſpes, and ſuch like, by ſtriking or annointing the water vpon them, and the water of the diſtilled wine, dooth put away the inflamation and miſt of the eyes, by often vſing the ſame, and ſome diſtill this water for the aboue named diſeaſes, on this wiſe.

Firſt they take the floures & lay them to ſteepe for a moneth in new wine & then taking them quite from the wine they will diſtill fiue time in a Limbecke or bodye of Glaſſe, which wine ſo diſtilled, is more pretious then golde: for if any drinke of this water, with ſix grains of pepper & a little of the Lauender water, he need not after feare the Apoplexy that month. And *Otho Brunfelſius* teacheth the making of the water on this wiſe. Firſt take a gallō glaſſe filled with the beſt old wine, into which put a pound of floures, ſetting the ſame in the ſun for 40. daies, after diſtil it in a limbeck of glas twice ouer, into which put a little lauender water & peppers

But other take old Wine, putting into the ſame a pound of the floures, and after forty daies ſtanding in the Sunne, diſtil the ſame, into which put of the floures of Lauender & Roſemary, and ſome goood ſpices, diſtilling it ouer againe, and then keep it as a moſt pretious water, well ſtopped in a narrowe mouthed glaſſe: and a ſpoonfull of this water giuen to the patient at the point of death, dooth reuiue and prolong his life vntill his naturall time appointed, and it dooth comfort the braine, helpeth the Apoplexy, ceaſeth the chollick paſſion, and helpeth the impoſtume hapning in the hinder part of the brain, alſo, this diſtilled water giueth a good memorie and ready wit, by annointing the hinder part or noule of the head and fore-head therwith. And the water of the floures onely diſtilled in the middle of the ſpring, and drunk to the quantity ſixe ounces at a time, doth help thoſe which be poyſoned, and the ſame water helpeth the bite of a madde dog, the birth childe, comforteth the braine, the heart & the ſences, and alſo putteth away falling ſicknes, if the ſame be drunk for forty daies together. And the ſame water drunke helpeth the ſtrangury, the pricking about the heart, inflamation of the Liuer, and doth ſtay the exceſſe of the month courſes. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the wood Lilly.

Of the ordering and care of the Floure-de-luce. Chap. 36

The Floure-deluce, is a floure well knowne to all perſons bearing leaues both bigger, flatter, and larger then that called the Sedge. And the roote and hearbe needeth no other diligence of ſetting, then to be planted in a drie earth, well laboured and dreſſed about the beginning of March. And the rootes grow into ioyntes, ſolide, and verie ſweete ſmelling: which ſome plucke vp about the beginning of the Spring, and cutting them into round ſlyces, after ſtitch them through with a needle, and hang them vp to drie in the ſhadow.

And thoſe rootes alſo be beſt commended, which bee verie ſhort, verie hard ſomewhat red, ſweete ſmelling, biting in the taſte, and which in the beating of it in a morter, cauſeth the perſon to ſneeze.

The

The Phiſick helps.

The roote of the Floure-delure, is only vſed in medicine, and is hot and dry of qualitie in the ſecond degree: and it is very profitable againſt the cough, in extenuating thoſe humours of the breſt, which hardly are ſpit foorth: and it alſo purgeth the groſſe flegmatick and chollericke humours, & taking ſixe drams of the roots, with water and hony, and the ſame drunke, prouoketh ſleepe, ſtaieth the tearmes, & ceaſeth the greefes of the body, and being drunke with Vinegar, doth help the diſeaſes of the milt, the crampe, the colde ſhaking, which comes before the fit of an ague, and helpeth alſo the ſheading of the Sperme: and druuk in wine prouoketh monthly courſes, and the decoction thereof applyed to the womans priuie part, doth ſoften the hardnes thereof, and likewiſe open the ſtopping therof: & mixed with turpentine, by annointing, doth eaſe the greefes of the loynes and hips: and the pouder onely drawne vp into the noſe, prouoketh ſneezing, and cleanſeth the head, and by chawing the roote in the mouth, dooth amend a ſtinking breath, and taketh away the ſtrong ſauour comming from the armhoales, and the greene freſh roote boyled, and the ſame laid plaiſterwiſe, doth ſoften wens, and other hard impoſtumes

And the pouder of the dry roote, mixed with honny, and the ſame thicke laid on Vlcers, dooth cleanſe them: and the ſame aplied plaiſterwiſe, doth draw out the bones in wounds and doth couer again the bare fleſh, and the pouder of the root applied plaſter-wiſe to the forhead, doth greatly help the paine & griefe of the head: alſo, the pouder of the root, mixt with the pouder of white Noſewort, and two parts of hony, the ſame annointed, dooth take away the pimples of the face, & all ſpots cauſed by the Sun, and againſt the dropſie, take a new laid Eg, pouring out the white, and to the yolk put ſo much of the iuice of the roote as was the white, after ſet the ſame egge awhile in hot embers, which being ſufficienntly warm, ſup off faſting in the morning, and the patient ſhall after ſend forth a merueilous aboundance of water betweene the skinne and the fiege: and this hath bene often ex-

perienced. These hitherto of the properties of the Floure-delice.

Of the ordering, care, and secrets of Pionie. Chap. 37

PIonie is an hearbe at this day well knowne, of the which be two kindes, the Male and the Female. It groweth after this manner. The leaues thereof be hard, from the neather part, and in colour like vnto Horehound, and the rootes cleauing together like to the roots of Violets, and be reddish in colour, bearing bigge and purple floures, and resembling the forme of the Red Rose, hauing within the floure a yellowish seede like to the Rose, of which come the cods, in fashion like to Almonds, and grow together, hauing within red seedes, to the bignesse of the smaller Pease. And the stalke also, on which the seedes grow, beareth big reddish floures, which of some is named the blessed Rose: but the seede of moste, is named the blessed Rose. And the seedes ioy to be sowen in a well dressed earth, and to be weeded about at the comming vp of the plants.

The Phisicke helpes.

The roote Pyony heateth and dryeth in the second degree, and indureth for ten yeares in his efficacy, and hath also the vertue of comforting & cherishing the body, & causeth besides vrine, and purgeth the liuer and kidneis: which roote boyled in wine and drunk, doth purge the blood, and the root of the piony is aptly ministred to women in childbed, being not throughly purged after the birth of child, for that the same causeth the comming downe of the tearmes, & purgeth them so without harme: and the quantity of an Almond is to be ministred at a time. Also, the root boiled in wine and drunke, dooth help the gripings of the belly, and sheading of the gall: and likewise it helpeth the pains of the kidneis & bladder, if the same bee with any stopping of the vrine, and a smoake made of the little fine branches of the root, and receiued into the nose, doth put away the Kings Euill, & the Piony root doth take away the black spots of the body: also, the root hanged about the necke, dooth put away the falling sickenes: as by a late practise was tried, that while a Childe

a Childe had this root hanging about the necke, ſo long he was not grieued with this diſeaſe, but when the ſame was taken from his neck, then was he vexed in like ſort as before: and this did the male Piony roote, but the ſeeds doe not the like, and this may the male be known from the ſamale. The Female Piony root boyled in wine and drunke, doth aptly purge women after the birth of child, & the ſame alſo doth the ſeedes of it. And in other matters the roots of both haue in a manner the like properties, and the field roote of the Piony, as *Monardus* writeth, worne about the necke, dooth put away the vapours flying vp to the braine, & ſtrengtheneth the braine: but the male only doth this, which beareth leaues like vnto the Walnut, hauing a white roote of a finger thicknes, and a ſpanne long, and certaine will, that the roote be digged vp in the waine of the moon, ſhe the being vnder the earth. Theſe ſeedes of the Pyony doe help eſpecially the termes of women, which ſend them down, & the dead yongling: which being drunke in wine, doth help the hard deliuerie of childe: alſo the ſeedes of Piony bruſed with Setwal, galingale, and ſugar, of each a like weight, that ſame pouder taken morning and euening, dooth put away poiſon, and gently looſeth the belly, & ten or twelue ſeeds of the piony drunke in olde wine, doth ſtay the ſuperfluous courſes of women: and fifteene ſeedes drunk (of the black) in either water and hony, or wine, do help the night Mare, the ſtrangling of the ſecrets and paines of the matrice. And the pouder of the ſeeds of piony miniſtred in meat & drink to children, doth ſend foorth the ſtone beginning in them, and the pouder of the root of piony (miniſtred in wine) in which the root it ſelfe, and Mugwort ſhall be boyled, doth helpe the falling ſickneſſe, and the ſame pouder boyled in Caſtorie and drunke, helpeth the palſie. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Pyony.

Of the ordering and care of white Poppy. Chap. 38.

THe white Poppy muſt bee ſowne in hot and dry places, like as you doe other Pot-hearbs. It is thought that this hearbe

hearb doth the better come vp there, where as twigs or rods and ſhrubs of trees be burnt. But the Poppie and Dill haue the like conditions and ordering of ſowing, which the Charuill hath. And Palladius willeth the Poppie to bee ſowne in September, in hot and drie places among the pot-hearbs, and yet in temperate and cold places, in the monthes of Ianuarie Februarie, March and Nouember, either alone or with other hearbes.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Poppie is cold and dry in the firſt degree: yet as touching the kinds, the white Poppy is cold & moiſt, and the blacke colde and drie, which doth more mortifie, and the ſeedes of the white gathered in the ſummer when they be ripe, may well be kept for fiue yeares, which haue the vertue of prouoking or cauſing ſleepe, and of aſwaging, and now to prouoke ſleep, make a plaiſter of the white Poppy ſeeds bruſed, and mixed with the white of an Egge and womans milke, which apply hot to the forehead, & on the temples, and the women of Salerne giue to their Children the pouder of the white poppy with milke, to cauſe them to ſleepe, and the ſeedes of the white Poppy, or the hearbe it ſelfe bruſed, & mixed with the oyle of roſes, and this laide plaiſter-wiſe on vlcers proceeded of a bruſe, doth draw out the great heate. And the ſame applyed to a hot liuer, doth much helpe: and the pouder of white Poppy ſeedes, mixed with oyle Oliue, and annointing the ridge of the backe with it, dooth take away the ache of the ioynts, and ſtrengtheneth them, and the iuice of the white Poppy mixed with the oyle of Roſes, and annointing the feete therewith, doth put away the paine & ache of the hot gout. And the ſeedes of white Poppy beaten to pouder, and mixed with the oyle of Vyolets, and annointing the backe-bone therewith, dooth helpe both the burning of the ague, and heate of the liuer.

Theſe hithertoof the properties of the white Poppy.

Of the ordring, care, and secrete of the floure Petilius. Chap. 39.

The floure named Petilius, which of the Frenchmen is named the little Indian eye, must be sowne in the midst of sommer, that in the ende of Marueil it may ware to a tree and bring forth floures vnto winter. It is also sowen in the seedes and set in slips: but the slips alwaies dye through the sharp colde of the winter (howsoeuer they be tended) and yet they refuse no ground. But they prosper best in a fat ground and shoote vp a mightie heigth, so that they appeare bushie, and spread into many branches, like a mightie tree or greate stalke resembling neerest to the sweet Briar tree.

Of the ordering, and care, of the Velues floure, or floure Armour. Chap. 40.

This floure (in a manner) neuer decayeth, but keepeth still his colour, and the floure also is eared much like to an ear of corne, very purple of colour and beautifull to behold, yet the same hath neither smell nor taste. And it properly groweth vp in the month of August, and indureth vnto Marueil. And when all other floures be withered and dead, and it also in a manner withered, then after the moistning with water, it doth recouer againe, and serueth to make winter garlands.

And this floure is sowne in many places in pots of earth, that growing from August, it may flourish vnto October, in which time bearing the floure, it is to be gently and tenderly gathered. And the floures so gathered, is be put into an Ouen (after the drawing of bread) and there gently dryed: after which, the Maydens of Fraunce and of other Countries, doe lay them chastly vp and keepe them vntill wintertime to make garlands of them, and to hang them about the house.

And now of this floure, is heere sufficiently written, which although it bee not to be counted vpon amongst the smelling floures, yet for the beautie thereof, worthy to be sowne in Gardens.

The Phisicke helpe.

The hearbe named floure Armour, is of quantity colde and dry in the third degree. And the floure of this boyled in wine and pontey, and drunke, dooth help the perrillous fluxe of bloud, & the continuall paine of the often scouring of the belly, and stayeth also the abowndance of the reddes in women, and the white fluxes of the bellie. Also the same helpeth the spitting of bloud, especially when any vessel or part in the Lungs or breast shall be broken: and the hearb sodden and laid plaister-wise on brused members, doth put away clotted bloud, & healeth the places speedily: and the floures boyled in wine and drunke, doth heale the biting of any venemous wormes, and the Sciatick: the distilling of the vrine, and a Rupture: and the pouder of this hearbe, to the quantity of three halpence in waight, drunke in white wine, doth stay the rume distilling from the head: and the hearbe sodden in wine, and the fundament fomented therewith, doth stay and take away the fluxe, and the piles: and in the same manner applied, dooth helpe the often desire vnto the stoole: And the root holden in the mouth, dooth cease the paine of the teeth: and the rootes brused and mixt with May butter, and of that made an ointment, which annointed on inflamations, doth aswage them. And the hearbe dooth keepe cloathes and garments from being harmed by worms and moathes. These hitherto of the properties of the veluet floure.

Of the ordering, care and secrets of the Gilliflowre. Chap. 41.

THe Gilliflowre for his sweetnes and beautie, is named of the Frenchmen the little eie, and of the Italians Gariophilon, for that it giueth a sweete smell and sauor, like vnto Cloues. The seeds of the Gilliflowre be seldome sowen: but at the beginning of the spring and harueste you may breake off slips from the roote, and set them againe (beeing weathed at the end) in a halfe Tubbe or Pot, the earth therein made fat with rotten dung, and when the frostes oppresse and nippe them in the Winter time, then may they be remooued, and set vnder some couert, in places safe from the bitter colde,

And in faire dayes when as the sunne shineth warme, then set the pot or halfe tubbe abroad, that the plantes may so be comforted with the warmenesse of the Ayre, and you may sometimes suffer the plantes to be moistened a little with a gentle raine. And after those plantes being set in beds, doe spread in the sommer into small branches, then do the Gardeners slip them off from the greater stalkes, about the set of them before the Cups at the tops (where the floures appeare) be sprung out. And after this maner you may dresse and set out a whole bed with a fewe plantes, if you will. There be some which take Cloues and howse them, lapping them about the stalkes nere to the rotes, and some make holes through with a bodkin, that the floures after drying up may saueur of them. And there bee some others which write, that by the often remouing and setting of the plant, the floures spred the broader & pleasanter to the eye. And Cardanus writeth, that you may haue Gillyfloures (in a maner) vnto Hollontide, if scraping of the vpper rinde of the plants, you set them againe with the rootes in horse dung, which so causeth them to beare faire floures in the winter, if you keep them from the cold aire. And certain new practitioners write that you may make one stalke to bring forth floures of many colours, if you take the seeds of every colour of Gillyfloures and put them altogether into a thin small reed, or tarde of a sheep or goat, or els tyed vp in a thin worne linnen cloth, setting the same in earth well mixed with dung, which after the watring will cause the plant to come vp, bearing the like number of colours in one stalke as ther were seedes so ben. And there be some which write that if you mixe the Basill seedes with the Gillyfloure seeds, and ose them as before said, that they will spring together on one stalke: and the leaues of the floures put into a glasse of vineger, and set in the Sunne for certaine dayes, doth make a pleasant vineger.

Of the ordring and care, of the Strawberies. Chap. 42.

The Strawberie is accounted among those hearbs that growe in the fieldes of their owne accorde. And the Berries be much eaten at all mans tables in the Sommer, for the plen-

Pleaſantnes of them, which for a more delight in eating, they dreſſe with wine and ſugar. The rehearſall of the formes of this hearb needeth not, ſeeing the ſame is well knowne vnto all perſons. And it aptly groweth in ſhadowey places, and rather vnder the ſhadowe of other hearbes, then alone. And the plantes ſet in Gardens, will growe vnto the bignes of a Mulberry, if the earth before in the beds be well dreſſed, and diligently tended of the Gardner. But the hearbe of it ſelfe continueth not aboue a yeare.

The Phiſicke helpes.

The Berries be colde and moiſt in the third degree, and the like is the hearb. And *Virginius* writeth, that the Straw-berrie leaues be of a colde qualitie, ſo that the iuice of them with the wine of the Pomgranets, and a little Roſe-water mixed togither and applyed, doth helpe hot impoſtumes in the beginning, and in the increaſe of them. And the Straw-berry leaues vſed in a bath, doe greatly help the ſtone. And for the mightie paines of the hips, take three or four handfull of the Straw-berrie leaues ſeething them in water and after bath the pacient from the nether part vpward: which ſo done, then annoynte the grieued place with this oyntment following. Take the oyntment of marſh mallowes, one once, of home halfe an ounce, of wax a dram weight, all theſe mixe together, making thereof an oyntment: and this doth not only help the ach of the hips, but ſoftneth the matter hardned in them and prouoketh vrine. And the Berries be profitable to men, in that they take away the vnnaturall heat, & do eſpecially proffit the chollerick perſons, for that they coole and moiſten them. Alſo take of the iuice of the Berries, and of Plantine water, of each of them eight ounces, of Roſed hony two ounces, of the iuce of the Mulberries one ounce, of Albigræci & of Balauſtia, of each a dram, all theſe mix together, waſhing the mouth therewith, which ſo helpeth the impoſtumes of the throate. And this hearbe eaten with meate, doth help ſuch as are diſeaſed in the milte and

and the like dooth the iuice of the hearbe drunke: and the ſame iuice giuen with white pepper, dooth helpe the ſhort winded: and the Berries alſo doe ſtay thirſt, profit the ſtomacke, eſpecially of the chollericke. And the decoction of the roots drunk, doth qualifie the Liuer, being taken morning and euening: and the like doth the decoction of the heatbe and roote togither, both qualifie the heat of the liuer, and cleanſe the raines and bladder: and the beſt diſtilling of the Berries, is when they be ripe, but not ouer ſoft, and thoſe which grow in the hilly woods be the better: and now the diſtilled water drunk, or mixt with ſomwhat and ſo drunk, doth qualifie the vnnaturall heat, and ſtayeth thirſt: and the ſame water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of foure ounces at a time, dooth helpe the Leaprie, and purgeth the bloud, by drinking of it in wine, or otherwiſe eaten with bread; and cleanſeth the foule ſcabbe of the bodie: and in the ſame manner drunk, dooth helpe the liuer, the kings euill, looſeth the breaſt, comforteth the heart, purgeth the bloud, and preuaileth againſt the ſtōe in the loyns, kidneis and bladder. Alſo it helpeth vlcers of the throate, the grieuous ſwellinges of the ſame, and the ſtincke of the mouth, if any gargell the ſame in the mouth or throate: and drunke of women, doth cleanſe them, and ſend downe their tearmes: alſo it healeth all filthy corruptions of the legs, if they be waſhed morning & euening with the ſame, or with linnen wet and applied: and it cureth filthy wounds, if they ſhall be waſhed in the ſame water, or vſing to drinke of the water: alſo it putteth away the ſwelling of the face, if the face be ſundry times waſhed therwith: and mixed with ſalt, and diſtilled once ouer againe, it doth both coole and cleare the eies. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Strawberries.

Of the ordring, and care, of the Borage, and alſo of the Bugloſſe Chap. 43.

BOrage is ſowen in the moneth of Auguſt, and September, and beſt ſowen in the moneth of Aprill, either a-

lone in beddes, or about the borders of new beddes of other herbes. And it cannot aptly be sowen in any other time of the yeare, yet may the same plant after the comming vp bee verry well removed in any time (in a manner) of the yeare, and the seedes ought to be gathered but halfe ripe least they other-wise fall out of the huskes. And the herbe with the seedes, after the plucking vp, must be laid together on a heape, for the space of two or three daies, that the seeds may so come vnto their full ripenesse. And when conuenient time so serueth, then you may rub the seedes foorth on a linnen cloath, for otherwise you cannot aptly come by them: which seedes thus had, may well be kept for two yeares. And the Buglosse, which the Romaines name the Ore tounge, and with vs Langde-beefe, hath the like order in sowing, and vsing of the seedes, which the Borage hath. And yet some write, it loyeth to be sowen in an open and Sunny place, and that the earth be well laboured and dressed before, for so it prospereth the better. And the Buglosse also for his singular vertues, deserueth in all gardens to be sowen is a right necessary herbe.

The Phisick helpes.

Borage, which of *Galen* and *Dioscorides* is named the Buglosse is hot and moist in the first degree. Which the self same *Galen* witnesseth (writing) that the Buglosse is of a moist & temperate hotnesse, so that beeing put into wine in the drinking, causeth gladnesse and mirth: and the Borage boiled in wine, and so drunke: dooth engender good bloud. And those which be pained with the giddines of the head, let them take the iuice of this herbe, and mixing the same with suger, drinke therof, which doth throughly help the same. And the iuice of the herbe with Senee, if the same shall be mixed with the Sirope of Borage, and drunke morning and euening, doth increase the senses and putteth away melancholie. And the raw floures eaten, doe cause good bloud, and put away the trembling of the heart: & they worke the like effect, if the floures be drunk in wine. And the Sirope of Borage is vsed against the kings euil. And the floures dried and

kept

kept but a yeare, do ſerue all thoſe diſeaſes, which the hearb it ſelfe helpeth: and the floures put to oyle Oliue, and ſet in the Sun for a time, with the which annointing the ſtomack and region of the heart, it doth greatly comfort. And the diſtilled water (in *Balneo Mariæ*) of the hearb and root drunke morning and euening, to the quantitie of two or three ounces at a time, doth put away the gripings & ſwellings of the belly, helpeth the bloudy flixe, and the hardnes of fetching winde: and the ſame in like order drunk, dooth comfort the heart and braine, and increaſeth memory and witte, purgeth the bloud, and putteth away frenzines: and linnen cloathes wet in that place, and laid to any place, where either Spider or waſpe hath venomed, dooth quickly take away the paine thereof: and red Sarcenet wet in the water and laid to the eies, dooth take away the paine thereof, and cleareth them. And the diſtilled water of the floures drunke, doth help all the aboue-ſaid diſeaſes which the hearb dooth: yet the ſame is the more precious, for that it dooth purge the bloud, putteth away melancholie, and marueilouſly purge the heart. And the ſame water helpeth all diſtillations of the head, by drinking euery euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time: and it alſo greatly preuaileth againſt the burning Agues and the Iaundize, and cooleth moreouer the liuer, either by drinking, or wetting clothes in the ſame, and ſo apliedoften on the region of the Liuer.

b

And now the Bugloſſe hath the ſame vertues which the Borage hath, and is hot and moiſt in the firſt degree. For the Bugloſſe alſo being drunke in wine, doth help ſuch diſeaſed in the Lungs, troubled with a dry cough, and boiled in water and honny mixed together (as *Galen* writeth) doth help the coughing through the roughneſſe of the throate. And the Bugloſſe ſteeped in wine, and tempered with Mellicrate, and after drunke, dooth cauſe mirth: and often drunke in Wine, dooth purge the red choller, proceeding of ouermuch heat, and in like manner helpeth the Cardiack paſſion, and dooth alſo put away the hurtfull humours of the Lungs.

And the iuice drunke with warme water, doth take away the ſwelling of the feet: alſo the wine in which the Bugloſſe ſhal be ſteeped, drunke, doth maintaine a good memorie, comfort the heart, and ingendreth good bloud: and the diſtilled water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time with ſuger, doth helpe thoſe diſeaſed with the bloudy flix, the hardnes of fetching wind and the beſtraught of minde, or hauing a weake braine: and the ſame water helpeth againſt al hot ſickneſſes: as ỹ agues, the diſeaſes of the Lungs, the liuer and the milt, it purgeth alſo the bloud, & putteth away the pricking of the hart and ſtomacke: and the ſaid water of Bugloſſe, putteth away the Iaundize, cleanſeth the Leapry, and ſcab, & mittigateth the diſtillings of the head: and it ceaſeth the paine and burning of the eies if linnen clothes dipped in the water, be applied either to the forehead or eies: and in the ſame maner applied, it dooth take awaye the ringing or ſound of the eares. And the floures of the Bugloſſe diſtilled in *Balneo Mariæ* doe yeild a precious water to comfort the heart and braine, being drunk either with pouder of pearles, or with the confection of *Manus Chriſti*, made with pearles. Theſe hitherto of the properties both of Borage and Bugloſſe.

Of the ordring and care of Roſemary. Chap. 44.

THe Roſemarie is a plant of a pleaſant ſauour, which for the beautie and ſmell of it, is ſet (at this day) in gardens. And the gardners alſo in our time, doe make diuers ſeates, ſome like to benches and other proper formes (as liketh them beſt, to be delighted at) in their beds, running of length and of height. And the ſame plant alſo in medicine hath a marueilous efficacy. And Dioſcorides nameth it the garland roſe for that in time paſt they made garlands thereof. And it is named alſo of the Greeke Authours Libanotis, for that the leaues and rot of the Roſemarie, doe ſauour likeſt vnto the Frankencenſe. And the Roſemarie hath a hoarie and hard ſtalke downeward, and in the vpper part the leaues of it bee ſharp, and is both greene aboue, and white vnder the leaues. And the floure of it is bleuiſh, like to the Lauender, and hath

a

a ſweete ſmell, ſauouring like to turpentine or frankincenſe. And it hath alſo a blacke roote, full of little branches ſhooting out of it, and it may be ſet in any ground, being well labou-red and dreſſed before: but it rather ioyeth to be planted in a rotten earth, and dunged with ſheepes dung.

The phiſicke helpes.

Roſemary heateth and dryeth in the ſecond degree, and hath the vertue of ſoftning, digeſting, cutting aſunder and cleanſing. And now the Roſemary with Harts tongue ſteeped together for a night in wine, and after drunke, doth put away the Kings euil: and the iuce both of the root and hearb mixed with honny, and drunk, doth help the dulnes of ſight and purgeth the groſenes of humors. And the root bruſed and mixed with hony, and laid on vlcers, doth ſpeedily ſoften them: and the root with Pellitory boyled in wine, and drunke, doth ſoften the belly, and putteth away the paine therof: and the ſame alſo preuaileth againſt the biting of venemous beaſtes and wormes: alſo in the ſame manner tempered with Mugwoort, doth cauſe vrine, and prouoketh the tearmes of women: and the Roſemary floures tyed vp in a faire linnen cloth & boyled in wine, which drunke morning and euening, do put away the griefs of the body, but eſpecially helpeth the griefes of the pappes: and the floures being brought to pouder and drunke in warme wine, dooth make merry the minde, and comfort nature and the blood, & preſerue many alſo from diſeaſes which might otherwiſe happen: and the coles made of the wood or ſtalkes burnt, and the ſame brought to pouder & tyed vp in a linnen cloth, & rubbing the teeth therewith doth make the teeth white, and ſlea the wormes in them: and if he which is diſeaſed with the rewme, make a ſmoke of the barkes, and do holde his head ouer it, it ſpeedily ſtayeth the ſame. And the Roſemary boyled in water and drunke, either alone or mixed with wine, dooth cauſe an appetite to meate. And he which is mightily dry through a greate heate, let him mixe the wine of the ſower Pomgranets, with that water (being colde) in which the Roſemary leaues ſhal be boyled, and drink of the

ſame,& out of dout it wil help him:and the pouder of Roſmary flours eaten in reare poached egs,doth greatly ſtrengthen nature and amendeth the bloud: and the wine made of Roſemary,if you drink a good draught therof morning and euening, dooth cleanſe the blood, prouoketh a deſire to meate, expelleth all the inner humors, and helpeth a greate weaknes: and the Roſemary boyled with wilde Pennyroyall or Mints,in wine and oyle olme,& that any diſeaſed doth annoint him therwith, doth both cauſe him to ſweat & helpeth the dropſie. And the Roſmary boyled in wine, with hearbgrace & a little pepper,& drunk,doth help the falling ſicknes: alſo the Roſemary boyled in wine with Pellitorie, doth help the greatnes of the Euuela,if the ſame be gargaled in the mouth: and Roſmary with the flours boyled in wine and that drunk warme morning and euening, & neither eating nor drinking three houres after,doth help the Kings euill, the hard fetching of the breath,openeth the pipe of the lungs,cauſeth eaſie ſpitting forth,helpeth digeſtion,& ceaſeth the gripings of the body,& mundifieth the blood. And the floures boyled in the ſtrongeſt vineger,and laid plaiſterwiſe to the Nauill, doth ſtay ſhortly after, the great flixe of the belly. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Roſmary,

Of the ordring and care, of the hearb Germander. Chap. 45.

THe hearb Germander, which of the Latines is called the little lowe Oke of the earth, is a plant very ſhort: which as Dioſcorides deſcribeth, is not in the growth aboue a ſpan high, bearing ſmal leaues, dented in like the Oke leaues, bitter in taſte, bearing purple floures and thoſe berry ſmall, and it alſo groweth of it owne accorde in rough and ſtony places: but now this hearb is planted in Gardens. And the ſeedes ought to be gathered when the hearbe beareth floures, which is about the end of May, as Galen and Macer do write.

The Phiſicke helps.

The hearb hath the vertue of heating & drying togither, vnto the third degre,& taketh away the hardnes of the ſplen or milt,cauſeth vrine, moueth the tearms, helpeth the dropſie(& this)if in the begining of the ſicknes, the patient drink

of the

of the decoctiō of the hearb thrice a day: and the hearb bearing the flours doth greatly help bruſed members, if they be waſhed with the ſame, or drunk of the decoction of it: and the hearbe bruſed and laid on Fiſtulaes in the corners of the eies, or if oile made of the hearb be dropped into them, doth forthwith heale them, ſo that the patient be of a colde complexion, but being a perſon of hot and dry complexion, this helpeth not: and the hearb ſodden in wine and drunk, doth put away the Kings euill: And the Germander ſodden in wine with Fenell ſeeds and Seene, dooth greatly helpe the ſtopping of the liuer and milt: and if Parcely ſeedes be put thereto, then the ſame helpeth the ſtrangury and the ſtone. And the hearb boyled in wine & laid on the palſie members doth help them. The hearb alſo bruſed with oile oliue, and laid vnto wounds doth heale it: and the greene hearb boyled in conduit water and drunk, doth helpe the crampe and palſie: and the ſame decoction drunk, doth helpe the cough, the hardnes of the milt, the ſtraightnes of making water, & the water betweene the skin & fleſh. And this hearb ſodden in wine & drūk, doth preuaile againſt poyſons: & the ſame laid plaiſter-wiſe doth help the bite of venemous beaſts and wormes: and the hearb boyled with wine and vineger, and drunk, doth help the hardnes of the milt, an olde cough, and olde vlcers, being mixed with honny and ſo drunk: and the pouder of the herb miniſtred with hony, doth ſlea the worms in the body: and againſt the rewme, heate the pouder of the hearbe in a linnen bag, and apply it on the head, which is a ſpeciall remedy. This herb alſo helpeth the bliſtering of the mouth, if it be waſhed with the decoction thereof thrice a day: alſo it helpeth the ſmall ſcab, if making an ointment with the hearb and barrowes greace, you annoint the skin. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Germander.

Of the ordring, and cure of the bleſſed Thiſtle. Chap 46

CArduus Benedictus, or the herb named the bleſſed Thiſtle, is verie wel knowne, and of great vſe in medcine, and hath a ſpeciall efficacie againſt poyſons, the plague, and diſeaſes of the hart. And both the name and forme of the hearb

do declare it to be a kinde of thiſtle, although there hath beene great controuerſie among the ancient phiſitians, of the true deſcription of this hearbe. And Ruellius, ſeemeth more exactly and better to iudge of this hearb and come neerer to a truth, who deſcribed the bleſſed Thiſtle to haue a big ſtalke and prickling, like to Endiue, with rough and criſped leaues, and bearing a yellowe floure, and delighteth to be ſowen in a fat earth, in the garden.

The phiſicke helpe.

The Bleſſed Thiſtle hath the nature and qualitie of opening the ſtopping of members, of peircing & cauſing vrine. This hearb in the eating, doth help the paines in the head & lungs, & cauſeth good hearing, & ſharpneth the wit & memory, & putteth away giddines: alſo it comforteth the brain and ſight, not only by eating, but alſo by anointing the eies therwith. And when the iuice of the herb can not be had, then may you vſe the pouder, or the hearb it ſelfe dried, and ſteeped in water, & ſo waſh the eies therwith. And the iuice dropped in the eies, dooth helpe the blood ſhotten in them: and the hearbe ſtayeth the bleeding at the noſe and mouth, if it be applied to either place: and the pouder of the hearbe mixed with honny and eaten, doth cauſe the perſon eaſilier to ſpit forth fleame & groſe humors, and it helpeth a weake ſtomacke and cauſeth an appetite to meate, and ſoftneth the hart: alſo it conſumeth euill blood & ingendreth good: and the hearb boyled in wine, and drunk doth cauſe the perſon to ſweat, but being boyled in water, & drunk, doth conſume the euill humours and preſerue the good. Further this hearb eaten, doth ſtrengthen the palſie members, and healeth the bliſtred lungs. And the hearb boyled or drunk rawe with wine, doth breake the ſtone: and the hearbe boyled in the vrine of a healthfull man Childe, and drunke doth helpe the dropſie and plague, and breaketh all impoſtumes, and maiſtreth the canker, and falling ſickneſs: and the pouder of this hearbe drunk, vnto the quantity of a dram, before twelue houres be paſt of the diſeaſe felt, doth both expell and heale the plague: and the downe comming of the floures, laid on

cuts

cuts and new wounds, doth heale them without paine. And the hearbe chawed in the mouth, doth cure the ſtinke of the breath: and the hearbe boyled in wine, and drunke hot, about a quarter of an houre before the comming of an Ague, and the patient afterward well couered with cloathes in the bed, doth helpe all Agues, both hot and cold: and the pouder of the hearb drunke with hot wine and the diſtilled water, recouers the patient in ſhort time: and againſt any poyſon receiued by the mouth, when the ſame hapneth, drink the pouder and hearbe, or the iuice of the hearbe, or the diſtilled water, and after couered with cloathes, ſweat well for the ſpace of three houres: Laſtly the pouder of the hearbe, either eaten or drunk, doth help the ſtitch of the ſide. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the hearbe named the bleſſed Thiſtle.

Of the ordring, and care of the hearb Wormwood.

Chap. 47.

WWOrmewood is an hearbe ſo well knowen through out England, that it needeth the ſmaller inſtruction of the ſame of it: yet be there three kinds of wormewood, deſcribed both of Plinie and Dioſcorides. And the firſt is the Romaine Wormwood, which alſo of the Countrie is named Ponticke, in which the beſt groweth: and the leaues of the ſame the ancient Phiſitions vſed to miniſter in figs to Children, to abate the bitternes therof. And the ſecond is the Sea Worm wood, which alſo is named Siphinum, the ſeeds of which the Phiſitions appoint to the killing of wormes in the bodie: and of this they name them (at this day) the ſeeds againſt the wormes, or wormeſeede. And the third is that which is named Santonicum, growing in Fraunce, beyond the Alpes. And this although it be leſſe then the others, yet it is far gentler in the bitternes: and the ſame wormewood alſo at this day, is ſowen in beds in many gardens, and the yong leaues alſo mixed in ſallets, vnto the great commoditie of the ſtomacke and liuer: and the wormwood ought to be gathered in the month of July at what time the ſeeds appear, and to be dryed in the ſhadow.

The Phiſicke helps.

The wormewood is hot in the firſt degree, and drie in the third, aſtringent, and endued together with a bitter and ſharpe qualitie, and the iuice of the hearbe is much hotter. Now the iuice being drunke for ten daies together, vnto the quantity of foure drams at a time, and tempred with Suger, doth helpe the laundize, the water betweene the skin, and driueth forth many noyſome humors of the Liuer and milt. And the wormewood doth comfort both the ſtomacke, and mooueth an appetite vnto meat, and helpeth alſo thoſe diſeaſes proceeding of a ſtopping, like as the dropſie, & ſuch like diſeaſes: and it killeth the wormes in the belly, and doth mightily expell them, by wearing a plaiſter prepared after this manner: Firſt take foure ounces of wormewood, halfe an ounce of *Euphobium*, one ounce of the Harts horne burnt, and to theſe mixe an ounce of a Hare gaule, and hony, which prepare in plaiſter-forme, and apply vnto the belly: and he which is ſicke of an Ague a long time, let him drinke the iuice of Wormewood tempered with Suger, which dooth helpe the Ague in ſhort time after: and if any be ſo pained with the head-ache, that he cannot ſleepe nor reſt, let him cauſe wormewood to beefinely bruiſed and boyled well in water, and put after into a fine linnen cloath, apply the ſame gently about the head, and it will both remoue the beating paines, and cauſe the patient to ſleep ſoundly: and boiled in wine, and dronke each day vnto the quantity of four ounces at a time, doth preſerue the perſon, that the bloud putrifieth not in the bodie: and the Oyle of wormewood dropped in the eares, doth reſtore the hearing. And wormewood boiled in vineger, doth amend the euill ſauour of the mouth, if it be waſhed therewith: and the drinking thereof dooth put away the ſwellings of the milt: and wormewood boyled in oyle Oliue, and annointed about the breſt, doth both helpe the weakenes of the ſtomacke, and the mallice of the Liuer. And the iuice of wormewood, boyled with the iuice of Borage, and the floures of Centurie, in Goats whay and drunke doth help thoſe diſeaſed of the Ague, and griefs of the milt.

And

And wormewood ſodden in Lie, with Sothernwood, doth helpe the ſheading of the haires. Item for rawnes of the ſtomack, take wormwood & hearbgrace, of each a like waight: and to theſe mix a little pepper, beating them together, and boiling them in wine, drink of the ſame, which doth greatly comfort the ſtomacke & purgeth it. And worm-wood laid among clothes, doth driue away moths: alſo the often ſmelling vnto worm-wood procureth ſleepe, or laying the ſame vnder the bolſter, the party not knowing therof. Theſe hitherto of the properties of wormewood.

Of the ordering, care and, ſecrets of Sothernwood. Chap: 48.

OF the ſothernwood be two kinds, as plinie and Dioſcorides write, the one growing on the plaine, the other on the mountaine: and ſo the one is taken to be the female, and the other the male: both hauing a bitternes like to the wormwood. And now the female (after Dioſcorides) ſhooteth vp in ſtalke like a kind of tree, and for that named of many, the little Cipreſſe tree, bearing little white leaues about the ſmall bowes or branches, and thoſe finely parte, like the ſea wormwood, and hauing big yellowe berries in the top, whoſe ſauor yeldeth ſomwhat vnpleaſant and bitter in taſte. And the male beareth not ſo white leaues, being branched with a ſmal ſeede and leafe like to the fennell, ſhorter of groth, bearing in the top a yellowiſh floure, and hauing the like berries, hanging thicke together on the top, and ſauouring ſomwhat ſtrong, and with one roote growing neere in the earth. And neither of them can abide the long colde of the winter, but that it withereth, and is much harmed alſo by the long heate of the Sunne when the ſame ſpreadeth it ſelfe in the top. And Theophraſtus writeth that it better proſpereth, being ſet with the roote, or in braunches ſlipped off, then ſowne in the ſeed.

The Phiſick helpes.

The Sothernwood is hot in the firſt degree, and dry in the ſecond: but *Ægineta* writeth, that it heateth & drieth in the third degree & hath the vertue of digeſting, and cutting aſunder although it doth a little bind: and now the Sothernwood burned and brought to pouder, & tempred with the

Oyle

Oyle of Raddiſhe, and with the ſame annointing the balde place of the head, do cauſe the haire to growe: and the iuice of the hearb mixed with oyle of Dill, dooth the like, in cauſing haire to grow in any place of the body: and the ſame hearb doth diſſolue impoſtumes and flegmaticke humours, being boiled in a pot with the kernels of Quinces, and ſo applied. and the iuice preſſed out of the Sothernwood, and drunke with wine dooth defend the perſon from the apoplexie: the iuice anointed on palſie members, dooth helpe them. And the Sothernwood boiled with oyle Oliue, and annointing the head therewith, doth take away the vntemperate coldnes of the head. The hearb boyled with parcely and ſuger, and drunke, doth both breake and expell the ſtone of the kidneis and bladder: and the oyle of Sothernewood annointed beneath the nauil, doth cauſe vrine: and the hearbe drunke in wine, helpeth againſt poiſons, and againſt the biting of venemous beaſtes or wormes: and if any often drinke of the root of this hearb, it killeth the wormes in the body: alſo if the iuice be mixed with a little milke, and drunk, it dooth the like: againſt the colde griefes of the Lungs, and breaſt, this hearbe is profitably giuen, being ſodden before with Iſope in wine and water, and ſweetned both with Licoras and Suger: and the hearbe bruiſed with oyle and ſalt together, and laid on the Pulſes of the hand, is a profitable remedie againſt the Ague: and a branch of the hearbe (as *Plinie* writeth) laid vnder the bolſter, doth mooue the deſire to the veneriall act. It doth alſo greatly auaile againſt all bewitchings, which by eating therof in hindred. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Sothernwood.

Of the ordering, care and ſecrets of the hearbe Sage. Chap. 49.

THe hearbe Sage is ſo common, that the ſame is growing in euery Garden, and is either ſowen in the ſeedes, or ſet in ſmall ſlippes broken off, and weathed at the end, in the moneth of October, November, Februarie and March, in well laboured and dreſſed ground, and deſireth alſo to be couered about with Bucke aſhes, for ſo it proſpereth, and

com-

commeth the faſter forward, and loueth beſides in a Sunnie and open place, although it may well abide the colde of all the winter through, without any couer or defence ouer it.

And it loueth to be ſet by the hearbe Rue or Hearbgrace, and not in dunged earth, but in colde earth mired with clay.

The Phiſicke helpes.

Sage helpeth in the firſt degree, and drieth in the ſecond, and the leaues (for the vſe of medicine) may well bee kept for a yeare, and now the ſage being ſodden in wine, & drunk doth ſtay the exceſſiue flixes: and the tearmes ſtaying, it draweth them down, but to much running, it ſtayeth them. And the Sage ſodden with Worme-wood, and then drunk, dooth ſtay the bloody flixe: and the leaues and ſtalkes ſodden together and drunke, doth prouoke vrine, and the tearmes. And the ſage ſodden in wine, and either drunk or applied plaiſter-wiſe, doth help the palſie, and ſod in water helpeth the gout and falling ſicknes, & eſpecially the dropping of the vrine, and being drunk, & applyed plaiſterwiſe to the blley, & a fomentation applyed with the licour of the decoction of the hearb, doth help the ſtrangurie or bloudy flixe, and clenſeth the matrix. And the ſage boyled in wine with the herb named *Tauxin Barbarus*, and ſiting ouer the hot broth of the ſame decoction on a cloſe ſtoole, cooth ſo ſend vp the fundament fallen down. The iuice of Sage mixxed with hony, and waſhing filthy woundes therwith, doth ſo cleanſe them, and the leaues and ſtalks ſodden in wine & waſhing with the ſame, doth helpe the itch of the priuities: and ſitting ouer the hot broth of the decoction of the hearb doth take away the itch about the fundament, and the Sage water (diſtilled at the time of bearing the floures) drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two or three ounces at a time, doth amend the defaults of the Liuer, putteth away the cough, and ſendeth forth the dead yongling, and this water doth greatly helpe ſhrunke and aſtoniſhed members, if they be bathed therewith. This water drunke, dooth help the paines of the ſides, the ſhaking of the hands, and the palſie, and the like if they be bathed with the water.

And the water drunk with wine, doth procure an appetite to meat, and ſtrengthneth the ſtomacke, and womens places, and the ſame water drunke morning and euening, vnto the quantitie of three or four ounces at a time, doth breake any inward impoſtum, comforteth the braine, and taketh away the diſtilling of the head, comforteth a hot liuer, and putteth away frenzines, and the water of ſage, with peacocks dung, dooth ſtay the freſh bleeding wound, beeing bound about with moſſe or Cotten. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the hearb Sage.

Of the ordering and care of the Purſelaine. Chap. 50

PUrſelaine may be ſowne in any time and ſeaſon in a manner: yet the ſame ſooner ſpringeth vp, when the warme ſeaſon begimeth as in the Monthes of Aprill, May and June. And the ſeedes may either be ſown alone in earth well mixed with pouder duſt, or among other hearbes if you wil, for they will proſper and come vp by growing among Onions & leeks Alſo they deſire to be ſown in a fat ground, for by that means they grow and ware the bigger, and where the ſeeds ſhal once be ſowne, there will they euerie yeare after come vp of their owne accord, eſpecially being ſuffered to growe to a big turffe and ripenes. The Purſelaine is much harmed by a long drought vnleſſe it be otherwiſe holpē with the often watering in that ſeaſon. And note, that the Purſelaine growing vnder the ſhadow of trees will come to no turffes.

The Phyſicke helpes.

Purſelaine is cold in the third degree, and moiſt in the ſecond, and the freſh and greene more allowed then the dry which hath then little vertue. And now the eating of the greene Purſelaine doth helpe a hot ſtomacke, and the ſwelling of the mouth of the ſtomack: and the Purſelaine boyled & holden in the mouth, doth ceaſe the paine of the teeth and a plaiſter made of Purſelain, & laid on hot vlcers, where it is found that the matter in them putrifieth, doth helpe the ſame, and the like: if the impoſtume ſhall be hot, and that it wandreth from one member to another, and the Purſlaine taketh away the vlcers of the head, if the ſame be bruſed & tempe-

tempered with wine, and the head waſhed therewith.

And the often eating of it raw, doth fill the ſtomack with clammie humors, but eaten raw with vinegar, dooth put away the burning ague, and bruſed with Barly meale, and after applyed hot to the ſtomacke, dooth qualifie the heate therof, and the eating of Purſlaine dooth ſoone ſtay the monthly courſes without harme, and the Purſlaine bruſed and mixed with barly Flowre, & the ſame laid plaiſterwiſe doth ceaſe the paines of the head, quallifieth the heat of the eyes, ſtaieth the flixe of the belly, and eſpecially the bloudy ſcouring, and ſtrengthneth beſides the raines and bladder, and the iuce drunke doth help the burning ague, killeth the wormes in the belly & helpeth the ſpitting of blood in the body, and againſt the coſtiuenes of the belly, ſeeth the hearb in water with prunes, and the ſame eate together, and after drinke the water: and *Auicen* writeth, that the Purſlaine dryeth vp waters of propertie, if they be annoynted with the iuce therof, and the hearb bruſed and laid plaiſterwiſe, doth helpe the holy fire, and the hearbe holden vnder the tongue, doth put away thirſt. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Purſlaine.

Of the ordering, and care of Penny-royall. Chap. 51

PEnny-royall is an hearb well knowne to all perſons, and ioyeth in the growing with Nep and Mints, but the female worketh the greater effect (as Pliny writeth) and beareth a purple floure, but the male a white floure. And now Palladius willeth the Penny-royal to be ſet in the beginning of March, in earth well laboured and dreſſed, without any dung at all, and rather in a moiſt place where it moſt ioyeth.

The Phyſicke helpe.

The Penny-royall is hot and drie in the third degree, & doth alſo heat & decoct mightely, ſo that it maketh the perſon eating & drinking therof, the eaſier to caſt & ſpit forth the clammie matter from the lungs and breſt, and Penny-royall is then to bee gathered, when it beareth the floures, for that they may after be kept for two yeares, and againſt the itch of the body, boyle the Penny-royall in faire water,

and waſhing the itching places therewith, it doth ſpeedilye heale them, and ſodden in wine and drunke, it dooth ſend downe the monthly courſes, and the like the after burdens alſo being bruiſed with hony and ſalt, and that laid plaiſterwiſe, doth helpe the palſie and broken members. And the Penny-royall bruſed and eaten with hony, dooth helpe the hardnes of fetching the breath, and againſt the gripings of the bowelles, take two partes of wine and a third part of the hearb boyled together, and ſo drinke the ſame, and hee that is dayly mooued to much ſleepe, let him take the freſh Penny royall, and holde the ſame vnder the tongue, and in the mouth, and thus often vſing the freſh hearb, ſhal ſo driue away deſire of ſleepe, and the pouder of the Penny-royall drunke in wine for two daies together at night going to bed doth helpe the greefe of the liuer and lunges. And the pouder of the hearbes or ſeedes taken in an Egge, doth help the rawnes of the ſtomacke and the caſting of it, and if any by ouer much bleeding is bereſt of minde: let this hearb be applyed with vinegar to the noſtrils, and it will both refreſh and reſtore the perſon, and the teeth robbed with the pouder of this hearb, doth put away the greef and paine of them and the hearbe bruſed and tempered with Saffron and annointed, doth help the euill vlcers of the body, and eſpecially thoſe which ariſe about the nailes of the fingers, & the hearb bruſed & applied plaiſterwiſe, doth aſſwage the ſwelling of the milt, and drunke warme in wine, dooth help the dropping of the bladder, and the ſame wine with the hearb boyled in oyle, & applied to the belly, dooth work the ſame effect, and the Penny-royall ſodden in wine and applyed twice or thrice to the noſtrils, doth helpe the rume and diſtilling of the head. And the wine of the decoction of the hearb and dry figges drunk, doth help the colde cough, proceeding of calamitie and watry humors. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Penny-royall.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Artichockes. Chap. 52.

THe Artechocke groweth in the head like vnto the Pine-apple, which ought to bee ſowen or ſet in the earth in March:

March: Palladius willeth the earth before to be well dunged and laboured, for that it beſt inioyeth in a fat ground. And the ſeedes ſet in faſt ground, doe greatly auaile againſt the caſting vp of the Mole and other beaſtes, in that they cannot ſo eaſily make holes in the ground. And Palladius alſo willeth, that when your beds be thus dreſſed and prepared in a readineſſe, that then to ſet the ſeedes in the earth halfe a foote a ſunder, and this eſpecially ought to be done in the encreaſe of the Moone: and that holding the ſeedes with three of your fingers, you ſet them ſo deepe in the earth, (as vnto the firſt ioynts) and couer them lightly with earth, and water them often, if a hot ſeaſon inſue, for by that means they ſend forth both tenderer and fuller fruits, as Varro writeth. And when the young plants be ſomewhat ſprung vp, then ought they dayly to bee weeded, and their withered leaues plucked away and to bee well dunged about with ſtore of aſhes, after the minde of Columella: for that the ſame kinde of dung (as he writeth) is aptеſt, and beſt agreeth to this hearbe. And beware you ſet not the ſeedes turned vp ſide down in the earth, for on ſuch wiſe they will ſend forth feeble, crooked, and very ſmall Artichockes, as writeth Palladius. And the Artichockes will grow without prickles, if that the ſharpe endes bee preſſed downe, or made blunt by rubbing them on a ſtone, before the ſetting in the earth. And certaine writers affirme, that if the vpper ſkin of the roote of the Lettuce be pared off, and that the roote afterward be ſhred into verie ſmall peeces, and that into each peece cut a ſeede be put, and ſo couered in the earth, of ſuch a depth aboue ſaid, which after will grow without prickles: and they will grow ſweete and pleaſant, if that the ſeeds (three daies before) be ſteeped in any ſweet ſmelling licour, & after the drying in the ayre, ſet ſo deep in the earth as aboue is ſaid. For by that meanes they ſend forth Artichockes of the ſame taſte (which the licour was) in which the ſeeds were ſteed: and thus they will ſauour and taſte of the Baies, if that you ſteepe the ſeedes with Bay-leaues, or put of the ſeeds into Bayberries, and ſet them into the ground. And a practiſe may be vſed (if you will) in the ordering on ſuch wiſe al-

their seedes. And to make Artichockes growe sweete in taste, infuse the seedes before, in either milke with hony, or in water with suger, or else in pleasant wine: and after the drying, set them orderly in the earth, and many doe couer the leaues well with earth in the beginning of winter, to cause them to turne white, and take away the bitternesse, and the better to serue with meats in winter time. And Palladius affirmeth of experience, that the yong plants of the Artichocks set among yong wheate in the end of October, to grow vp with the same will the better prosper, then by the setting of them in beds alone. And certaine ancient men will, that the whole plantes be plucked vp, with the endes of the rootes left in the earth, or cut off in the ends with some sharpe hook, and that those roots so cut or broken off, be dipped in dung, and set againe in earth, well laboured and dressed with old dung, a three foot a sunder for the better increase of the plants. And if neede so require, for the heat of the season, then to water the plants, vntil they haue sufficiently taken rot in the ground, and the artichockes are not to be gathered altogether, for that they ripe not all at one time, but ripen alwaies the one after the other, and they also are then to be gathered, when they haue as yet flours in the nether part, round about like vnto a Garland, and not when all the floures be fallen off for then they bee worser, and euerie yere the yong plants ought dayly to be plucked vp from the old, for feare of hindring the yeeld of the old, and the young new set in other places further a sunder: and there bee some Authors which will, that the young Plants bee plucked vp, with some part of the roote. And those plants which you preserue for seeds, ought first to be cleansed from al the yong ones growing about, & covered ouer with some potshard or Watke, for that the seedes through the burning of the Sun, & showres of the raine corrupting, doe vtterlye perrish and come to nothing, and the Mice and Rats doe greatly couet to feed on the roots of the artichockes, and if they once taste of the rootes, or otherwise be mooued to come vnto them, then gather they after in great companies vnto the place, and that comming a great way of, so much do they delight in the sauour and taste

of

of thoſe rootes. Wherefore to auoid the reſort and comming of them vnto the rootes, then take (as Varro willeth) either ſwines dung, lapping the ſame about the roots, or els fig aſhes, ſtrawing them in like ſort about the rootes, which ſo will driue them away.

The Phiſicke helps.

The artichock eaten raw, doth amend the ſauour of the mouth, and the prickle partes like to the Pine apple kernels, ſodden tender, and boyled after with butter and vinegar & ſeaſoned with ſalt, be greatly commended: & ſome delight in eating of them rawe, and finde a pleaſantnes in the eating if they be prepared with pepper, ſalt, and the fine pouder of Coliander ſeedes ſtrawed vpon. And ſtieped in wine, or rather ſodden in wine, & eaten, doth not onely moue or cauſe vrine, but procure the veneriall act, and the ſame ſodden in water & eaten, doth ſtrengthen the ſtomacke, & procure a more earneſt deſire both of man & woman, by eating both at one time of the ſame. And *Galen* affirmeth, the artichock to be then hard of diſgeſtion, and hurtfull to the ſtomacke, when the ſame is growne vnto the ſheading quite of all the floures of the head, although ſome write when it commeth to the bearing of floures, at what time the riper ones (as they write) doe not onely wax dry of moiſture, but hard and rough of skin, and alſo haue more plentie of the chollerick iuice: and of this they are rather to be ſodden then rawe, & yet the yong ones being full of iuce may ſafely be eaten raw being prepared in the like order as aboue is taught. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Artichocks.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of Leekes. Cap. 53

LEekes ought to be ſowne in a battle ground, and eſpecially in a plaine low place, as writeth Palladius, and that the beds bee leuell, high caſt vp, well laboured, and orderly dunged. And the vnſet Leekes after two moneths ſowing, ought to be cut as they grow, for ſo (as Collumella writeth) they war the bigger, and continue the longer. And the better alſo they will proſper, if after euerie remooning, and ſetting againe, the blades bee cut: and how often they bee cut, ſo often

ten to be watered and dunged. And this also learne, that the bigger the heads growe, so much the further distant, as commonly foure fingers a sunder they ought to be set, and after the growing, the blades then to be cut, also, the often watering dunging, plucking vp the weedes growing neere to them, and the often remouing, doe greatly further the increase. And when you mind to haue the heads of the Leekes grow bigge, then before the setting againe, cut away all the small berrie roots, & vnder the heads lay either pot-shards, or oyster shels betweene the heads and the earth, and after couer each head so ordered with earth, and by that meanes the heads will grow the bigger, so that you doe not then water the, after the minde (of the Greeke) Sotion. And Palladius writeth of Leeks on this wise, that when the leekes be grown a finger bignes, and that the blades be halfe cut away, that then yee set the heades againe in new and soft cow-dung, foure fingers a sunder each from other. And when the Leekes haue gotten some strength of roote in the earth, then with your forked dibble, put vnder the head, loose it so in the earth, that the head may so seeme to hang in the earth, and in the head by that meanes finding such large emptines vnder it, will after grow out, and fill that emptinesse.

And further, if you desire onely to haue vnset Leekes, then sow your seedes thicker together: but if big in the head, then sow your seedes the thinner, and dayly in a maner weed them and feed them with soft cow dung. And the the seeds also may be sowne in the moneths of March, April, May, and all June: But remoued and set againe (after the minde of Palladius) in the month of July, August, September, and October, will well serue the moneths of March and April following, being as aboue saide new dunged in the setting, and watered. And both the Greeke Sotion, Columella, and Palladius do write that if many seedes of the Leekes be tyed vp together, and set in prepared earth, & soon after watered, then will al the sedes in an heape together grow vp into one mervailous big Leeke, right wondrous to behold. And this practise may bee tryed by the seedes of any other plant. And like vnto the aboue-saide

may

may be caused, if that into the head of a Lèke you put a rape-sæde (the hole before being bored with a wooden pricke, for that killeth the head) and then set orderly, as is aboue said, doeth grow into a marueilous bignes, as writeth the afore-said Palladius. Columella writeth, that the head of a Lèke bored with the pointe of a wooden pricke or stiffe Rède, or else by any other meanes, a hole opened with iron, and putting into the same hole a Gourd seede, in the stead of Rape sæde, taught before, and ordring of the lèke (as is aboue said) will after grow into a marueilous bignes.

And there is yet an other way taught of certaine others, which is, that so many sædes be put into a thin Rede, as a may may aptly take vp with three of his fingers, and them set orderly into the ground, and of these sædes together will procède the like big plant, as is aboue said. And Columella willeth that after the sowing your seedes, and that couered with earth, to tread the earth close vpon them with the foote, and to doe no other worke vnto them, vntill three daies be past, and in the fourth day to sprinckle your sædes with water, vnlesse they be in the meane time watered with raine, for by that meanes (saith he) they will sauour much better: and when in sowing or planting you mixe sand w the earth, then will the Lèkes growe and yeeld the plentifuller. And to take away the strong breath and smell of eating of Lèks, chawe then Cummine in thy mouth, and the same will take away the strong smell, although you had eaten a large handfull of the Leekes at one time. And Petrus Crescentius writeth, that the sædes of Lèkes powred into wine, do not suffer the wine after to sower: but yet they restore vineger vnto the naturall taste and smell of wine, taking away by that meanes all the tartnes and sharpnes thereof. And Nero Cæsar so greatly commendeth vnset Lèkes, that eating them euery day with oyle, will after cause a cleare voice to sing, either priuately or publiquely. And lastly, this by experience is found, that the Lèke commeth vp after the eighteenth daies sowing, and groweth vnto two yeres end, and after that falleth to seeding, and so dieth.

The Phyſicke helps.

The Leeke of the Garden drieth in the ſecond degree, and heateth in the third, and the ſeedes may well bee kept three yeares. The Leeke bruiſed and mixed with ſalt, and that laid on euil puſhes, doth heale them: and being brought vnto pouder, and tempered with oyle of Roſes and vineger, & dropped into the eares, doth put away the pains of them: and the ſelfe ſame taken, doth helpe the tooth-ach: but the Garden Leeke by often eating, doeth harme both the ſtomacke and eies: and much more the wilde Leeke. The often eating of the Leeke doth fill the body with winde, and therefore it ought twice to be ſodden in water, before the eating with meat, and ſo the malice of it is qualified. And the Leeke alſo draweth downe the tearmes, cauſeth vrine, and procureth a ſuperfluous heat. The iuce of the Leeke drunke with womans milke, doeth helpe an old cough, and the bliſters of the lungs: and the ſame drunke doth helpe the ſpitting of blood. And for the caſting or vomiting vp of olde bruiſed blood, take two drammes of the iuice of the Leeke, with the like quantitie of fine pouder of the gaule, and Olybanum, mixing them together, which after drink, & it doth greatly helpe: and the ſame mixture applied vnto the noſtrils, doeth ſtay the bleeding of the noſe. And eating the Leeke raw, doeth cauſe vomiting, and is contagious, yet the ſame putteth away drunkennes. And a plaſter made of the Leek with hony, and that laid on broken and ſpoiled members, doeth aſſwage the ſwelling, and conſume the clotted blood. And againſt the paines of the hips, drink the iuice of the Leeke, and it will eaſe the ſame. And the iuice doth eſpecially heale ſuch wounds which be cold and putrified, if the ſame be powred into them, and eateth away rotted fleſh of the wounds. And the iuice mixed with the rootes of white Lilies, and anointed on the hips, doth put away the pain of them. And the often eating of the Leek doth cauſe the head ache, burdeneth the ſtomacke, cauſeth thirſt, and inflameth the blood: and the iuice mixt with ſalt, and that laid on freſh wounds, doth vncloſe them. And the eating of the leek pro-

cureth a deſire to the venerial act. And the iuice of the Leek drunk in wine, doth both help the old cough & the dropſie. And againſt the paines of the head, take two partes of the iuice, with a third part of hony, that drop either into the noſtrils or eares, and it will greatly help. And the vnſet Leekes ſodden in good white wine, with May butter, and that laid plaſter wiſe on the belly, ſo hot as the patient may wel abide it, & at the cooling of that, apply another hot plaſter, & this do the third and fourth time together if need require, which without doubt will greatly eaſe the cholick. And the water of the rootes diſtilled in Iune, drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of two ounces at a time, doth greatly help ſuch as ſpit blood, and alſo helpeth barren women by often drinking thereof: and the water ſtayeth the great bleeding at the noſe, if fine cotten be dipped in water and put vp into the noſtrils. And the ſame water drunke, doth helpe the coſtiue belly & the pain of the hips, purgeth the kidnies and bladder, cauſeth vrine, and ſendeth forth the ſtone. And the water ſpeedily helpeth wounds, if they be waſhed morning and euening with it. And the ſame water doth greatly helpe vnto the exulceration and fracture of womens priuie places which ſometimes hapneth after the birth of big children, if they be bathed or waſhed with the ſame water morning & euening. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Leeks.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Garden Onion. Chap. 54.

The Onion through the bigneſſe of the head, and number of cartilages, with the which the body is included, was of the ancient Huſbandmen ſo named. And now, as touching the condition of the ground and manner of ſowing the ſæds, you ſhal vnderſtand that the ſame ought to be done in a fat ground, laboriouſly digged vp, dunged and watered, and the earth alſo neare red, as writeth the Greeke Sotion. Alſo the ground where you minde to ſowe your ſædes, ought to be caſt vp, and lie open all the winter thorow, that it may ſo be nipped and bitten of the froſt, and the wæds killed and after that to be dunged and the earth caſt leuel into beds,

in which doing, plucke vp and caſt away all maner of weeds and rootes that you can finde. And when you haue thus handled and ordred your earth, then in the meneth of March in a calme and faire day, the wind blowing out of the South or Eaſt, ſowe orderly your ſeedes, with the ſeede of the herbe Sauery among them, for ſo they proſper the better, as writeth Pliny. And when they come vp, you muſt diligently weede them for three or foure daies together: and as Palladius willeth, your beds ought to be thrice digged vp finely, and plaine raked ouer before the ſowing of the ſeedes. And now after the yong plants be ſprung vp, and that you would haue your Onions to growe bigge in the heads, and not to beare ſeedes, then muſt you breake off the greene blades, that the iuice may ſo goe to the rootes, or els breake off and cut away both the blades and ſmall hairie rootes, before the ſetting againe in the earth, for ſo they will grow the bigger in the heads, as writeth the Greeke Sotion. And this learne, that the ſeedes ſowen in the wane of the moone, come vp both ſmall and ſower: but thoſe ſeeds ſowen in the increaſe of the moone, ſpring vp the bigger and ſweeter. This alſo is not to be ouerpaſſed, that in all kinds of Onions, the longer in faſhion is ſower then the round, and the reddeſt ſower then the white: and the drie then the greene: and the rawe then the ſodden. And farre bigger will the heads be, if after their remouing they be ſet againe into beddes lying open for twentie dayes before, and that well turned in with dung, and ſo long dried, vntill the moiſture be almoſt ſpent, after the minde of the learned Sotion. And ſome plucke off the vpper ſkinne, leauing them bare, and ſo ſetting them againe in the earth: And thus ſetting them againe, they ought to bee placed a hand breadth and ſomewhat more aſunder, that they may the better proſper. And thoſe which you mind to eate before the full ripenes, ought to be ſet in beds, where Cucumbers or Gourds, and Mellons be, and in their growing to be often digged about, watered and weeded, for ſo they proſper the better, as writeth Palladius.

And when they bee growen and ſhotte vp into high ſtems,

ſtems, then muſt their weake bodies be ſtaied vp with ſmall props, leſt their long ſmall neckes bent much downe-ward with blaſts of winde, and the heads alſo often knocking or beating together through blowing of the windes, ſhould ſo ſhake forth and ſeeſe much ſeede. And the time alſo of gathering the heads, as Columella and Palladius teach, when the ſeedes appeare blacke of colour. And further, Sotion the Greeke writeth, that the Onions will laſt a long time, if that before their laying or hanging vp, they be laide or put for a ſeaſon in warme water: or els, as Pliny willeth, to be infuſed in warme and ſalty water for a ſeaſon, and after laid to drie in the Sunne vntill they be thorow drie, and then couered with Barley ſtraw: and in ſuch wiſe they ought to be laid in the ſtrawe, that the one touch not the other. And ſome hang them in the ſmoke and Chimney, neare vnto the heate of the fire, and dot likewiſe continue a long time. And to make Onions grow of a marueilous bignes in the beds, cloſe the ſeedes of them with the ſeedes of the Gourd in the beſt dung, and mixe the earth diligently with them in the putting into the earth. And you may cauſe them alſo to growe of the ſame bigneſſe, if that raiſing vp the earth about them, you doe looſe the earth hollow vnder the heads, as before is taught of the ordering of Leekes. Alſo you may cauſe the like heads, if boring certaine holes, you put into them ſome ſeedes of the Gourd, ſetting them ſo into the earth. And there be alſo huſbandmen, which will the ſeedes of the Onion to bee then gathered, when as the pillings of the head be halfe drie, and that they be after thorowly dried in the Sun. And here learne, that certaine ancient writers (as Pliny and others) will, that both the Onions and Garlike ſhould be ſowen neer to ſweet ſmelling flowres, to cauſe them ſauour and ſmell the ſweeter. And thoſe Onions which you minde to plucke vp, to keep a long time, ought to be done in the waning or decreaſe of the Moone.

And further learne, that Palladius willeth the young Onions to be ſet againe in Februarie, but ſowen in the ſeedes, both in the ſpring and Harueſt. And yet many ancient huſ-

bandmen willeth, that the ſeedes be ſowen in the meneths of December, Januarie, Februarie, and March, either alone or in beds with other hearbes, and after they be ſomewhat come vp, then to bee remooued and thinner ſet, as a ſpan aſunder: and if the earth in the ſame yeare ſhall not be dunged, then the ſowing time following it ought to be dunged for the better increaſe and plentifuller growing. And thoſe Onions be counted beſt, which be ſet in the moneth of Auguſt, for that in the yere following, they may ſo ſend forth their ſeedes: and thoſe be counted worſt, which be ſet greene in the Lent time. And to conclude, thoſe Onions be thought to keepe the better and longer time, which bee gathered and plucked vp in the increaſe of the Moone, and being then a calme and cleare day, and after laid to drie in a ſhadowie place. And the ſeedes may well be kept for the ſpace of one whole yeare.

The Phyſicke helpe.

Onions be hot and moiſt in the third degree, and heate alſo in the fourth degree, as witneſſeth *Galen*. And the often eating of the raw Onions, doeth cauſe a rough throat, winde in the ſtomacke, and the head-ache. And the Onion mixed with honie, doth take away the griefe of an euill ſtomacke: & yet the eating of them doth harme the members, for that they drie ouermuch the moiſture of the body: but tempered with vineger, and laid on piles, they do then open them. And the eating of them, doeth ſoften the bellie, and cauſeth thirſt. And the iuice of the Onion mixed with honie, doth amend the ſight, and the pinne and the webbe, if the ſame be often dropped into the eies. And againſt paines of the breaſt, take the Onions roſted vnder embers, & eat them morning and euening, which by that meanes cauſeth eaſie ſpitting vp of humours, and looſeth the breaſt: and in the ſame manner it putteth away ſwelling, and purgeth the ſtomacke. And the Onion bruiſed, and mixed with ſalt and hony, and that laid on warts, doth make them fal off by the rootes. And the Onions bruiſed with vineger, if a ſcabbed skin be waſhed with the ſame, doe heale and make the skin faire.

faire. And the eating of them raw, doth cauſe loathſomnes vnto the ſtomacke, and yeeldeth a ſtrong ſauour out of the mouth. And the iuice of it drawne vp into the noſtrils, doth purge the head. And againſt the biting of a mad dog, take the iuice of the Onion, with the iuice of Rew, or herbe Grace, and hony, and with the ſame anoint the place. And the often eating of Onions, doth harme the cholericke, for that they cauſe them to be both hotter and drier: but the flegmatick perſons the Onions ſeldome harme, for that they cut aſunder, and conſume the ſuperfluous humours in them. And the iuice of the Onion mixed with Capons greaſe, and anointed on raw heeles, or ſleepie gaules, doth ſoone heale them. And the iuice dropped into mattery and running eares, and after ſeething them in ſalt broth with other good ſpices, is then profitable to the ſtomacke, and cauſeth better nouriſhment. And the Onion bruiſed with honie, and that laid plaſter wiſe on any wounds, doth heale them. And the yong tender Onions eaten with hony do maintain health. And the Onion roſted in the hot embers, and eaten with oyle, doth helpe the cough. And the iuice mixed with womans milke, and dropped into the eares, doeth helpe the paine and noiſe of them. And the iuice of the Onion drunk with the iuice of Fenell, doth helpe the dropſie, and being drunke with Rew and honie, doth greatly helpe the heavy ſleepines and forgetfulnes. And the iuice alſo mixt with raiſons and figs, and that laid plaſter wiſe on impoſtumes, doth both breake and draw them. And the eating of the Onion doth cauſe fearfull dreames, eſpecially to ſuch lately cropen out of a ſicknes. And laſtly, the Onion accuſtomed to be eaten morningly, and that yong and tender, both of labouring and husbandmen, doth greatly maintaine their health, and preuaileth the like to them againſt the infection of the aire, by eating them with ſalt and bread, for ſo they leſſe harm the head. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Onions.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Garlike. Chap. 55.

The leſſer Garlike muſt be ſowen or ſet in the ridges of beddes in the Moneth of September, and Nouember, and

and raiſed ſomewhat high, that it may the leſſe bee harmed with Winter waters. And therefore you ſhall make ſundry little furrowes in your beds, like to ſuch which be commonlie made in the fields, to auoide the moiſture and raine. And ſet the Cloues (pluckt off from the heads) foure fingers aſunder, and not deeper then the middle ioint, that they may the better come vp. And when three leaues are ſprung vp, then weed about them: for the oftner you do weed them, the bigger they will ware in the heads. And if you will haue them big in the heads, then tread them flat down, after ỹ faſtning & tying together of the greene blades, which you muſt do, when as the blades be ſomwhat come vp, and not growen vnto a ſtalke, that ſo the iuice may returne to the heads. And Palladius willeth, that Garlike bee ſowen either in Ianuarie, or Nouember, in a white ground, well digged and labored, but not dunged, and in a warme day, and that the earth be then indifferent drie: for by that meanes wil the ſeeds proſper the better, and come forward. And yet Pliny writeth, that the ſeedes ſowen doe ſlenderly come vp: for that in the firſt yeares growth, they bee no bigger then the Leekes in the heads: and in the ſecond yeare they come diuided: but in the third yeare, the heads be growen to perfect bigneſſe. And further, there be certaine others which will, that the ſeedes of the Garlike be ſowen in the moneths of September, October, Februarie, and March: and in hot countries in the moneth of December. And Palladius writeth, that if any happen to be left in the earth when they bee ripe, then thoſe remaining doe after renue both in the rootes and leaues, and ſend forth their ſeedes in the yeare following, which may bee ſowen and bring forth Garlike. And beſides, Palladius willeth, that when the Cloues bee thus ſet on the ridges of the beddes in white earth, well laboured and dreſſed without Dung, and that they be ſhot vp in ſtems, to tread the blades flat to the earth, and keeping them downe, that the blades ſhoot not into an height, which by the often treading of them downe, will cauſe the iuice to returne vnto the Cloues, and make a mightie head. Moreouer, Pliny, Sotion the Greeke,

Palladius,

Palladi-us, and diuers other antient men do write, that if the cloues of the Garlike be ſet in the earth when the Moone is vnder the earth, and the heads plucked vp when ſhe likewiſe is ſet vnder the earth, that then the ſtrength of the ſauour of them will be ſo ſmall, that the breath of the eaters of them ſhall ſcarcely be felt. And not vnlike to this doth Columella write, that if the cloues be ſet in the beds, ỹ moone being then vnder the earth, and the heads plucked vp at the change of the moone, that the ſauor of them wilbe greatly abated. And the Greek Sotion writeth, that you may make the Garlik heads ſauor ſweéter, if that you mixe the kernels of Olives braiſed with the cloues and afterward ſet them together in the earth, or gently breaking ſlat the ſharpe ends of the cloues, you ſet them ſo into the earth: or els in the ſetting, you mixe the Lées of the Oyle Oliue with the cloues of the Garlike. And Didimus writeth, that the ſtrong ſauour gotten by eating of Garlike, is put away by the onely eating of a greéne Beane or two. And others write, that the rote of the Bétes roſted vnder hot embers, and eaten: doth put away the ſtrong breath and ſmell of the Garlike. And likewiſe certaine late practitioners doe write, that if the eaters of Garlike do after eate greéne Parcely, that the ſame doth shortly after take away the lothſome ſmell thereof. And many of the antient writers affirme, that the Garlike heads will continue the longer, and ſerue the better to vſe, if that they be afterwards either buried or couered in Chaffe, or hanged vp in the ſmoke. Likewiſe there be ſome which will, that the heads of Garlike be a little while ſteéped in warme ſalt water, and after to be dried and hanged vp or couered, which ſo doth cauſe them to laſt the longer. But in this or that manner vſed, they become (after the ſetting) barraine of yéeld for the moſt part. And ſufficient it is, that the Garlike heads be dried ouer the fire, that they may not ſpring or growe afterward.

And Pliny writeth, that thoſe heads of Garlike be of a lower taſte, which haue the moſt cloues: and he alſo affirmeth, that the Garlike heads will haue no ſtronger ſauour

or ſmell after the ſæthing, then the Onions haue after their ſæthing. And Palladius writeth, that the Garlik heads ought then to be plucked vp, when the ſtalkes ware drie and feble: and this eſpecially do in the wane of the moone, & in a cleare day and drie ſeaſon. And Democritus in his husbandry writeth, that if you mind to driue the ſmal birds from the eating and ſpoiling of your fruits, and not to come neere them, then take Garlike heads, and hang ſundry on diuers branches of the trees.

The Phyſicke helps.

Garlike is hot and drie in the fourth degree, and hath the vertue of conſuming, diſſoluing, and expelling poyſon. And againſt the biting of any venemous beaſts and worms, take Garlik, bruiſing the ſame, and after apply the ſame plaſterwiſe on the bite: and this is named the husbandmans triacle. And againſt worms in the belly, take Garlike, with the iuice of Parcely and Mintes, which mixe with a little vineger and pepper, & making therof a ſauce, vſe to eat of the ſame with bread or meat. And for the cholicke and paines of the rains, ſeeth Garlike in wine and oile, which applying plaſter-wiſe on the belly, & round about the root of the yard, doth greatly helpe the ſame. And by eating of Garlike, a man may the ſafelier go into a ſuſpected aire, and by ſtinking places, becauſe the ſtrong ſauor of it (for the ſeaſon) doth put away all other noiſome ſauors and ſtincks. And a Garlike cloue holden in the mouth, doth ceaſe the paine and ach of a tooth, if the ſame proceed of a colde cauſe.

And *Syrapio* writeth a marueilous matter, that although the eating of Garlike doth harm the whole and perfect ſight of the eies, yet he affirmeth, that the moiſture of it doeth comfort a dull ſight. And here learne, that the Garlike hath certaine euill properties, which be theſe: it maketh inflammation, drieth and harmeth the ſtomacke, and cauſeth thirſt, and laide to the skin (in any place) it raiſeth vp bliſters, if it lieth twelue houres ſpace, and therfore the often eating of it doth harme the cholerick, in that the Garlike doth inflame them, and drieth the whole body, eſpecially in a hot ſeaſon, and engendreth

gendreth beſide the lepriein them, cauſeth alſo frenzineſſe, hurteth the ſight, and moueth the head-ache. And in conſideration hereof, the cholerick ought to take heed of the often eating of Garlike, and chiefly in the latter end of the Spring, the Summer, & hot ſeaſon of the Harueſt, becauſe it doth then ſooner engender red choler, and increaſeth aduſt matter: alſo it doth more harme being eaten raw, then ſodden or roſted. And yet the eating of Garlike moderatly in the winter time, is right profitable to the flegmatick perſons. And further, Garlike roſted vnder the hot embers, and bruiſed with figs and barrowes greace, and that applied plaſter-wiſe, doth breake a cold impoſtume which is long ere it be ripe. And the garlik eaten putteth away the inward ſwelling of the body, and ſoftneth and openeth impoſtumes (as aboueſaid) and draweth forth the matter, and the head annointed with the iuice of Garlik, doth kill both the nits and lice. And the Garlik drunk with the decoction of the Organy doth alſo kill the nits and lice of the head. And the aſhes of the Garlike mixed with hony, and that anointed on thin places of the head, doth helpe the ſhedding of the haire: and the ſame anointment amendeth the foulenes or filthines of the skin. And the aſhes of Garlik doth help the vlcers open, by ſprinkling them vpō: & the aſhes of the Garlik wrought together with hony and May butter, and anointed on the grieued places, doth make the skin ſmooth, if the ſame be either infected with the ſcab, or leprie, ſo that the anointing be done after bathing in an hot houſe. And as the moſt Authors do write, the often eating of Garlik, doth greatly harm and dull the ſight of the eies. And Garlik ſodden and eaten, doth cauſe a cleare voice, helpeth an old cough, purgeth the cold breſt, and drieth vp the moiſture of the ſtomacke. And the Garlike (with the leaues & all) ſodden in wine & drunk, doth not only procure vrine, but moueth down the tearms, and draweth down alſo the after burthen, if the belly be anointed with the ſame. And a ſmoke alſo made of Garlike, may doe the like, if the woman ſit ouer it, on a cloſe chaire for the purpoſe. And the ſauour of the Garlike, doeth driue

away all venemous wormes. And if any being ſtinged of an adder, doe eate of the Garlike, he ſhall not after be harmed of the ſtinging, and is alſo a good remedy againſt poyſon. And Garlike ſodden with vineger, and drunke with that & hony mixed together named Mulſe: doeth after ſend forth the flatte and broad wormes, and many other venemous wormes crept into the belly. And Garlike ſodden with oile Oliue, and annointed, doth aſſwage the ſwellings and other griefes of the bladder: and ſodden with Centorie in wine, and drunke, doth helpe the dropſie gathered of a cold cauſe. And the Garlike bruiſed with the Coliander ſeedes, and ſo taken in wine, doth aſſwage the paines of the ioynts, and openeth the ſtraitneſſe of making water. And Garlike ſodden with Beanes, being bruiſed & tempered with oile Oliue, or oyle of Poppy, and an ointment made of the ſame, with the which annointing the temples, do greatly help the head-ache. And the Garlike ſodden, and after roſted drie, with Pellitory and Maſtick, and brought to pouder, with which waſhing the mouth, doth greatly help the tooth-ache. And if a woman doubt of her being with childe, and ſmelleth not the ſauour of the Garlike ſet by her bed ſide in the night, it doth then vndoubtedly declare that ſhe is conceiued with child. And the eating of Garlike is good & profitable both to husbandmen and labourers which often eate cold meats, and meats of hard digeſtion. Theſe hitherto of the properties of Garlike.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the great Garlike. Chap. 56.

The great Garlike, which ſome Authors name the Africa Garlike, and the Greekes Aphroſcorodon, is far bigger of increaſe then our common Garlike. And now this Garlike doth Columella will to bee ſet on the ridges of beds, like vnto the former Garlike, and that out of one head many cloues bee broken off, which ought to bee done in a faire and calme day, in a white earth wel digged vp & dreſſed, without any dung, about the Calends of October & Nouember. And to make the heads of this Garlike to grow big, then

order

order the Garlike blades that come vp, like as was taught of the other Garlike. And in the ſetting alſo of the cloues, remember to plant them, not only foure fingers aſunder, but a finger deepe, & to rake the earth often ouer them in the growing vp, whereby the iuice may run to the root, and cauſe them to waxe the bigger in the heads. And to conclude, all other inſtructions neceſſarily to be vnderſtanded about the further ordering of this great Garlike, may be learned in other afore taught.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Radiſh. Chap. 57.

THe Radiſh roote is well knowen both vnto the rich and poore, ſo that as well the husbandmen as the Citizens doe (at this day) eate of the Radiſh, the ſame before being well ſcraped, cut into thinne round ſlices, and dipped in Water and Salt, the better procureth an appetite vnto meat.

And Columella willeth, that the ſeedes of the Radiſh be ſowen in a wel dunged & laboured earth, and in the moneths of March, Aprill, & September. And after the roote be growen vnto ſome bignelle, then couer it ouer thicke with earth, for otherwiſe, by leauing it bare, that the Sunne and aire may worke on the root, doth ſo cauſe the ſame to become hard and hollow, as writeth Pliny, which willeth the Radiſh to be ſowen in a lowſe and moiſt earth, without dunging. And Palladius writeth, that the Radiſh in no wiſe agreeth to be ſowen either in a ſandy or gravelled ground: but he affirmeth it to ioy vnder a temperate aire, and to be ſowen in beds, large aſunder, and deep nigged after a new raine, vnleſſe the ground be ſufficiently moiſt and watry of it ſelfe. And when the ſeeds be ſowen, then ought they by and by after to be couered with fine earth, and no dung mingled nor caſt vpon, but onely the chaffe of corne, although Columella contrary writeth. And Ariſtomachus willeth the leaues to be quite broken off, and pulled away in the winter, whereby the root may be the bigger in Summer. And the roote alſo will be the pleaſanter in eating, if you breake off the leaues before it grow to a ſtalke, as Plinie writeth. And the ſmaller the leafe ſhall be, ſo much

the ſweéter and pleaſanter will the roote be. And to be alſo watered with ſalt water, it proſpereth the better, as Pliny writeth: for that by the watering on this wiſe, the root ſendeth ſuch bitternelle as then remaineth in the ſame. And to make your Radiſh taſte ſwéet, then after the mind of Florentine, ſteépe your ſéedes before, either in water and hony mixed together, or in the liquor of Raiſons, or elſe in water and ſuger for two daies together, and after the drying againe, ſow them ſo in the earth. And to make your Radiſh grow big, plucke away all the leaues, ſauing a ſmall ſtalke remaining, and after cover the ſame very thicke over with earth, as Palladius willeth. And the like affirmeth Pliny, if that a hole be made with a wooden dibble, and the ſame filled fyue fingers high with the chaffe of corne, and after the ſéeds mixed with dung and fine earth, it will after cauſe ſo great a rote grow, as was the bignes of the hole made. And the thin ſowing of the ſeeds in the end of July, and vnto the middle of Auguſt, or elſe a little after, and weéding them often after their comming vp, doth ſo cauſe them to grow the bigger in the rote. And they alſo ioy in open aire, but be much harmed by growing in ſhadowie places. And if ſuch a drought doth happen, that you cannot aptly ſow your ſéeds, then ſow them the thicker together, in ſome moiſt and watery place.

And when the yong plants be well ſprung vp, and ſtrong in the earth, & that the ground be well moiſtned with ſhowers, then may you remoue the yong plants, eſpecially about the end of Auguſt, and vnto the middle of September. And ſet them after in the earth, well laboured and trimmed, for ſo they grow the pleaſanter in eating. And Petrus Creſcentius writeth, that the rots of the Radiſh dried, and theſe wrought into pouder, and after powred into a bigger glaſſe, or narrow mouthed pot glazed, ful of wine, and letting the ſame ſo ſtand couered for a few daies, wil after be turned into ſharpe vineger, which drunke daily, doth marueilouſly weare away, and conſumeth the ſtones of the kidneis, and helpeth beſides many other grieles of the body.

The

The Phyſicke helps.

The Radiſh is hot and drie in the third degree, but ſome write in the ſecond degree. And now the Radiſh eaten at ſupper, doeth digeſt the meate eaten, and heateth the ſtomack, and cauſeth alſo a ſtinking breath, if any ſleep by and by after the eating. And this roote is hurtfull vnto women with child, and therefore to be refrained in that ſeaſon. And the iuice of the roote anointed on olde vlcers, doeth both cleanſe and eat away the canker in them: and the ſame like worketh the pouder of the root. And the iuce of the Radiſh boiled with hony, and mixed with a litle vineger, and after ſtrained and drunk, doth help the quartaine ague, and ſtopping of the milt. And the root of the radiſh laid plaſter-wiſe doeth helpe the water betweene the skin, and ſuch diſeaſed with the hardnes and ſwelling of the milt. And the iuice of the roote drunke with the liquor of Raiſons, doth helpe the kings euil: and drunk with hony, doth put away the cough: and this being alſo drunk, helpeth ſuch which be ſtopped in the breſt, and draw the wind ſhort. And of this root is made an Oximel on this wiſe: firſt bruiſe the root ſomewhat, and infuſe them for two or three daies in vineger, and after put to the ſame a third part of hony, which ſtrained, drink thereof, for this helpeth the quartaine and one day ague, vnles the ſame proceed of ſalt fumes. And if there be colde and vndigeſted humours in the ſtomacke, then ſteepe the oindes of the rootes of the Radiſh with hony and vineger mixt together, & of the ſame let the patient daily eat a good quantity, and after the ſame ſo eaten, drinke a draught of warme water, putting then your finger, or a feather dipped in ſallet oile into the throte, and this forthwith will procure you to caſt forth at any time, but the apteſt time is in the morning. And againſt the hardneſſe of the Milt and Liuer, ſeeth the hearbe alone in Oile and Wine, and apply the ſame plaſter-wiſe, and the ſame plaſter laide hot on the bottome of the bellie, neare to the root of the priuitie, doeth helpe the ſtrangury. And the water of the Radiſh diſtilled in September, drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three

or foure ounces at a time, doth help the ſtone, cauſeth vrine, and clenſeth alſo the raines, and the bladder: It doth clenſe the places alſo where the ſtones containe. And the ſame water drunke, doth helpe the kings euill, killeth the wormes of the belly, and helpeth the digeſtion of the ſtomack, and purgeth it of all clammy humors, and other matters which hinder digeſtion, and it openeth alſo euery ſtopping of the inner members and veins. And drunke in the quantity aboueſaid, doth extenuate the rough humours, and cauſeth a cleare voice, and this water gargelled in the throte, and holden in the mouth, doth helpe the ſwelling of the throte, and vlcers of the gums, for it both reſolueth, breaketh, and conſumeth. And this water drunk morning & euening. vnto the quantity of foure ounces at a time, for three or foure weekes together, doeth helpe the water betweene the skin, if that the patient refraineth much and often drinking: for the leſſe the patient then drinketh, the more he ſendeth forth of the water in the vrine, and by that meanes is the ſooner holpen. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Radiſhes.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Nauew. Chap. 58.

The Nauew well beareth any aire in a manner, and delighteth in a fat loſe ground, but it better proſpereth in a leane and dzie grauelly ground. And the propertie of the place doth change the Nauew into a Rape, and the rape contrariwiſe into a Nauew. And that your Nauewes may well proſper, ſowe them in a well laboured and dunged ground. And they alſe wil come vp being ſowen in thoſe places where the cozne hath bene reaped of that ſame yeare. And if you ſee that they grow to thicke then remoue them, and ſet them thinner, whereby the other vnremoued may grow the bigger in the rot: they ought to be ſowen about the end of July, and in all the moneth thozow of Auguſt: and if they happen to lacke raine, then to water them ſo often as need ſhall require, and in the weeding about them, both the Nauew and Rape be much ſtrengthened, and grow the better. And thoſe Nauews be the better, which be long, and in a maner wzinkled, not bigge, and not hauing many rootes, but one onely

roote,

and that both ſharpe and ſtraight: and of the Nauewes is made a wholſome compoſition with the Radiſh, a little ſalt, vineger, hony, muſtard, and ſweete ſpices, and without ſpices alſo the ſame may be made pleaſant to eate.

The Phyſicke helps.

Nauew is hot of quality in the ſecond degree, & doth much nouriſh, but hardly digeſteth, & maketh the fleſh ſoft, & puffeth vp, yet leſſe then the Rape, for the which cauſe, if the Nauewes be boiled in water, and that the firſt water be caſt away, and in the boiling of the ſecond water, the hardnes of the ſubſtance tempered, and ſo they ingender a meane nouriſhment between good & euill. And of this, ſuch as are not wel boiled do hardly digeſt, & cauſe windines, & a ſtopping both of the veines & pores. Therfore the Nauewes are beſt to be eaten when as they haue bin ſod in two waters, and in the third ſeething to be boiled with the fat of Beefe or Mutton. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Nauew.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets, both of the Parſnep and yellow Carret. Chap. 59.

THe garden Parſnep is well knowne to moſt perſons, and is vſed in moſt places, which (as Rutilius writeth) being tenderly ſod, nouriſheth well the body. And now Palladius willeth Parſneps to be ſowen in the ſeeds, or ſet in the rootes, in the moneths of December, Januarie, and March, in fat ground, deepe digged, looſe, and well turned vp, and orderly dreſſed. And the ſeeds alſo muſt be thin ſowen, and likewiſe the rootes thin ſet, whereby they may grow the bigger. And after the comming vp, they muſt bee weeded about for the better increaſe alſo of the roote. And Pliny writeth, that there be many kinds of Carrets, and this not of themſelues, but of the proper places where they grow ſo altered. And now the yellow Carrets (moſt ſowen in gardens) ought to be ordered in the ſowing, like as we haue aboue taught in the ſtage of the Parſneps, and they ought alſo to be ſowen as well in Haruеſt as in the Spring time, and after they be come vp, then to be remoued and ſet thinner, for ſo they proſper much the better, and waxe longer in the rootes.

The Phyſicke helps.

The roote of the Parſnep is hot in the middle of the ſecond degree, and moiſt in the firſt degree, ſo that the ſame eaten doth greatly profite the body. And now the root tenderly ſodden & eaten, cauſeth vrine, & doth eſpecially profite the melancholy. And the gardē Parſneps alſo eaten with meate be profitable to the body, in that they ingender good blood, & the wilde Parſnep roots eaten of women, do moue the tearmes. And the Parſnep roote hanged on the necke, doth help the ſwelling of the throte, and no venemous beaſt ſhall harme the perſon which beareth the roote about him. And the ſeedes of the Parſnep drunke with wine, and applied in plaſter forme to the priuie place (as *Dioſcorides* writeth) doeth drawe downe the tearmes, helpeth the ſtraitnes of making water, and the paine of the ſide, which otherwiſe is called the pluriſie. And the roote applied plaſter wiſe doth helpe the bite or ſting of venemous wormes. Alſo the roote ſodden and eaten, doth cauſe vrine, and prouoketh the veneriall act. And the leaues bruiſed and laide plaſterwiſe with hony, doth cleanſe and heale the great eating in the vlcers. And the hearbe with the roote ſhred together, & diſtilled about the end of March, which drunk morning and euening, vnto the quantity of three ounces at a time, and the pallie members bathed with the water, doeth helpe the ſhaking of them. And drinking euery night to the quantity of ſixe ounces at a time, doth prouoke the veneriall act, and increaſeth the ſperm of man: and this water alſo drunke doth helpe the ſtraitnes of making water.

And now the garden Carret (as writeth *Conſtantine*) is hot & drie in the ſecond degree. But the Carret which groweth of the owne accord (named the wilde Carret) is both leſſe then the garden or ſowen Carret, and is alſo drie and hot in the third degree. Alſo the garden Carrets tenderly ſodden with meate, are pleaſant and holeſome. But now the wilde Carret boiled in wine, with as many figs as you think needfull, and drinke, doth put away the drie cough: and the ſelfe ſame wine drunke, doeth helpe the hard fetching of winde.

And

And the hearbe or roote boiled in lie or water, and waſhing the head therwith, doth help the ſhedding of the haire, proceeding of a colde cauſe: and three handfuls of this hearbe boiled in wine & oyle, and applied plaſter wiſe on the belly doth put away wind & heateth the ſtomack. And the herbe boiled with mallowes and herbe mercury in wine and oyle, and applied in plaſter forme on the nauill, doeth helpe gripings of the bowels. Theſe hitherto of the properties both of the Parſnep and Carret.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Melons and all kind of Pompions. Chap. 60.

MElons and all kinds of the Pompions, deſire (in a manner) the ſame earth and aire which the Citrons and Cucumbers doe, and yet the earth not ſo fatte nor ſo much dunged, whereby they may growe the pleaſanter in taſte and be the ſoner ripe. And all kinds ought to be ſowen thin, as the ſeedes put two foote aſunder in the earth, well laboured and caſt diligently into beds, for that they ioy in largenes of rome where they may ſpread hither and thither. And they be alſo greatly comforted with hearbes growing neare to them, ſo that they neede little weeding: And they ought to be often watered, vntill they be well ſprung vp, but after you may not: and they be then ripe to be eaten, when they ſauour ſweete and appeare yelloin within. Alſo thoſe Melons or Pompions be the pleaſanter in eating, which haue farre ſmaller ſeedes then the other.

And there be other kindes of them which be ſmall, greene, and very long, and all (in a manner) are croked, which be named Melons, and doe alſo rate lower, like the Citrons, hauing the like taſte in the eating, but they be not ſo colde as Citrons, and therfore the better digeſted. And if you would make them ſweete in the eating, then let the ſeedes be ſteped for three daies together, in the ſweete liquor made of water and hony, called otherwiſe Mulſe, or in ſweete Cow milke, and after the drying, ſet orderly in the earth: for ſo the Pompions comming vp of thoſe ſeeds will be far ſweeter and plea-

ſant of taſt. And the Pompions will ſauour and ſmell verie ſweete, if the ſeedes be laid for a good whiles among Roſe leaues, and that thoſe leaues mixed with the ſeedes, be ſo put into the earth, or otherwiſe the ſeedes bée either ſteeped in Roſe water, or in ſome other pleaſant ſweete water, and then ſet (after the drying in the ſhadowe) into the ground. And here learne, that Cats ought carefully to be defended from the Pompions, for that they greedily deſire to come to them.

And as touching the other ſecrets, as to make them grow timely, verie big, and without ſéedes: Read hereafter, where we intreat of the ordering of Gourds and Cucumbers.

The Phyſicke helps.

The Melons be cold and moiſt in the ſecond degree: but thoſe which be ſweet in taſt, are temperatly cold, & the ſeeds haue the like property in medicine to be vſed. And pleaſantly doeth the Pompion eate, yet very hardly digeſteth, through the coldnes mixed to the moiſture of it. And the Pompion is then to be eaten, when the ſtomacke before is thorowly cleanſed, in that the ſame doeth lightly alter into thoſe humours, and doth ſo ſlacke digeſtion, by hauing preheminence in the ſtomacke. And of this we learne by the mind of the ancient men, that we eat the Pompions faſting, and to eat no other meat after them, vntill they be halfe digeſted in the body. And the eating of them do greatly help vnnatural heats and wicked Agues. And the ſeeds do purge the skin, if the skin be waſhed with the decoction of them. And the Melons haue the vertue of clenſing, as writeth *Galen* in his booke *De alimentorum facultatibus*: and of this they may aptly clenſe the ſpots of the face, or Sun-burning, red pimples, and the foulneſſe of the body, through the ſpots of ſundry colours. And the perſon which is ill coloured in the face, let him or her take the ſeedes of the Melon, pilling off the vpper skin of them, vnto which put a litle beane meale, and working the ſeedes into fine pouder, mixe them wel together, & after make ſmal cakes of the ſame with Roſe water, which drie in the Sunne, and when they be thus dried,

then

then waſh the face with thoſe cakes orderly, and they wil after cauſe the face become very cleere and faire, and cleanſe the filthie ſpots of the skin. And the ſeeds eaten or drunke, doe cauſe vrine, and purge the lungs and kidneis. And more do the ſeeds worke in the lungs then in the bladder, for that a more ſtronger and mightier remedy ought to be miniſtred in the ſtone of the bladder, then in the ſtone of Kidneis or Loynes. And the vpper rinde of the Melon laid to the forhead, doth ſtay the running of the eies. And the root of the Melon doth heale ſuch vlcers that ſtand full of matter, if the ſame be applied plaſter wiſe with hony on the places. And many do eat the Melons with vineger, mixing with it the Peny-royall and Onions together, for ſo they temper the harming force of the cold of it: and the Melons diſtilled, which ought to be done when they be ripe, and ſhred into ſmal pieces, the water drunke once euery morning, vnto the quantitie of three or foure ounces, for the ſpace of a moneth, doth greatly helpe the ſtone, cauſeth vrine, and purgeth the Kidneis: alſo the ſame water cooleth and delaieth al inward heats not vnnatural, cooleth the liuer, and ceaſeth the thirſt tempered with ſuger. And this water doeth helpe a hot cough, if linnen clothes dipped in it be applied without, and it both putteth away heats & ſwellings of the body, wherſoeuer they ſhall be. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Melons and all the kinds of Pompions.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecrets of the Cucumber. Chap. 61.

CUcumbers be either ſowen or ſet in beds or in furrows, a foote and a halfe high, and three foote broad, and the ſpaces betweene the furrowes ought to bee eight foote broad, whereby they may the freelier ſpread out and runne abroad. And Palladius willeth the ſeedes after the ſowing, to be often watered, vntill they be ſomewhat ſprung vp; for that they loy much in moiſture.

And after they be thus ſprung vp, which commonly do appeare after the firſt or ſeuenth day ſowing, then may you water them no longer, for that the watring afterward doeth ſome deſtroy and kill them. And heere learne, that when the

ſéeds be ſowen, you ought then in the firſt or eight day following, to ſée if the ſéedes be then hard or opened, a ſure note or token that they may be good, but if the ſéedes be ſoft, then doe they throughly declare to be naught.

And in this caſe found, you ought to ſet other in their places, proning againe the firſth day after, which finding in like condition corrupted, then ſet other in their places, and this ſo often do, vntill they appeare aboue the earth. And they alſo deſire to be ſowen or ſet in a fatte earth, well dreſſed, dunged, and moiſt, and ſet in the end of the moneth of Aprill, and alſo in the beginning of May: and after their comming vp, they neither néed raking or wéeding with the hands: for that they be much holpen with the other hearbes growing neare vnto them. And to make them the tenderer and pleaſanter in the eating, kéepe the ſeedes for two daies before the ſowing, in ſharps milke mixed with hony, or as Pliny writeth, in water mixed with hony, or in water mixt with ſuger, for ſo do they cauſe the tenderer, whiter, and pleaſanter Cucumbers, both in the ſmel and taſt, and fairer alſo to the ſight. And the ſame experience doe Columella, Florentine the Gréeke, Pliny and Palladius write. And the Cucumbers alſo will grow long, white, and tender, if that vnder the branches of the Cucumbers growing, you ſet either a boule or pan of water and hony, two hand breadth beneath them, for by that meanes they be cauſed ſo like, as writeth Gargilius Martialis. And as they ſpread and runne out into length, ſo ought they then to bee borne vp with props and other meanes from the earth, for the weaknes of their branches, and vnto the better growing and proſpering of the Cucumbers. And if you will haue Cucumbers without ſeeds, then before the ſetting dip your ſéed in the oyle of Sauine, mixt with the herbe Culix bruiſed, and the Cucumbers wil after grow the like. And to haue Cucumbers timely ripe, and in a manner all the yeare, then vſe the ſeeds in the like order, as ſhall after be taught of the gourds, and that they alſo be ſet in ſuch veſſels or baſkets, that they may afterward in the colde ſeaſon, be drawne vnder the ſuccour of ſome warme place in the houſe, and in warme and

Sunny

ſunny daies ſet againe abroad. And they may alſo be ſet vnder the cloſe couering of the walke in a garden, from the cold winds and froſts, and from the great heat of the Sun, and ſo continue all the yeare thorow, as write both Pliny and Columella, that Tiberius Cæſar had the like. And beware that they which haue their monethly courſes, doe not then either come neare, nor handle them in no wiſe, for feare of hindring their growth afterwards, and as ſome thinke, they doe kill the yong Cucumbers by their looking then vpon them. And to haue beſides your Cucumbers with litle moiſture in them, let then the hole in the furrow, in which you ſhal ſet the ſeeds be filled halfe vp with chaffe, and the other halfe couered againe with earth, and water them nothing at all after the doing on this wiſe.

The Phyſicke helpe.

Cucumbers be colde and moiſt in the ſecond degree, as writeth *Ægineta*, and doe hardly digeſt, but the outward part of them doth cauſe a perfiter moiſture to ſuch, hauing hot and ſtrong ſtomackes, and extinguiſheth thirſt. And the whole ſubſtance alſo of the Cucumber eaten in the ſummer, doeth greatly profite ſuch, which then exerciſe themſelues with any labour. But the eating of them do much harme the flegmatick and delicate perſons, which do no labour of body, and that to their ſtomacks eſpecially. And yet the water or iuice of them doth help ſuch diſeaſed with the Ague, and ceaſeth thirſt.

Alſo the meat of the Cucumbers hard within, and heauy in the hand, bee dangerous to the ſtomacke, and of this the ripe ones be the oftner willed to be eaten, which are known on this wiſe: that when they be ſoft in the feeling, and light in the hand, then they be fitteſt to be eaten. And the ſeedes drunk in milk, do greatly helpe ſuch hauing a bliſtred bladder, & drunk in wine with ſo many ſeeds of Cummin as you may wel take vp with three fingers, and bruiſed altogether, doth greatly helpe the cough. And the ſeedes alſo bruiſed, and drunke with womens milke, doeth helpe the frenzineſſe: and alſo doeth helpe thoſe that ſpitte matter vppe,

being

being drunke with a little quantity of Cummin ſeeds. And the Cucumber eaten doth cauſe a ſoluble belly, & profiteth the ſtomacke, as writeth *Dioſcorides*: and the ſmell of them doth reſtore the perſon out of his wit. And the ſeedes haue a meane force to cauſe vrine: and the ſeedes boiled in wine, and laid plaſter wiſe, with the greene leaues vppon, doe helpe the bite of Dogs. And the ſeedes bruiſed and tempered with hony, and that laid on hot burning Puſhes, doe qualifie the heate, and cleare them. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Cucumber.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecret of the Gourd. Chap. 62.

THe Gourdes deſire to be ſowen or ſet in fat ground, moiſt, dunged, and well laboured, as writeth Palladius. And in watering the ſeedes often they proſper the better, for that they much ioy, and are holpen with moiſture, although there be ſome which increaſe with a ſmall watring, and be alſo more pleaſanter by this in the eating. And if you happen to ſet the ſeedes in a drie ground, then ſet an earthen pan ful of water neere to them, putting clothes or liſts made ſharpe at the one end, and hanging halfe out of the pan ouer the edges of it, that they may ſo drop continually water on them in the forme of feltring, as the wiſe name it: And this way alſo of the watering of them doeth greatly helpe in a drowth. And further Palladius willeth the ſeedes to be ſet in the end of the moneth of Aprill and beginning of the moneth of May, a three or foure ſote aſunder, and in ſuch ſort, as that two of the ſeedes be thruſt into the earth together, with three of the fingers, and that the blunt ends alſo be turned downeward, and the ſharp ends ſtanding vpward. And that a night before they be thus planted in the earth, the ſeeds be put into a pan of water, caſting then forth ſuch ſeedes which ſwim aboue, and the other not the like ſwimming, or rather lying in the bottome, ſet in the earth well mixed with dung. And they may not be ſet in low furrowes, leſt the raine falling, and filling thoſe furrows, do ſo choke and kil the yong plants ſprung vp. And when they be well ſprung vp, and appeare aboue the earth, then rake the earth, putting it well about

them

them, and as neede shall require, to vse to water the plants. And if they happen to be set in an earth somewhat lose, then after they be sprung vp into some bignes, the earth round about ought to be deepe digged vp that the rots may so stretch and run out diuers waies. And as they grow vp stil, you may make a couer ouer them like to an harbour, vnto the height of a man, that the leaued branches may be laid ouer to giue shadowe, and the leaues also laid on the Gourdes to defend the heat of the Sunne, may so cause them to grow the better. And if not on this wise, then may you let their vine runne along on the earth if you list. And to this also in doing the like shal much auaile, whereby they may the soner send forth their fruits, and the more store, if that the principaller and bigger heads be a little broken off in the tops, that they may so cause other branches to spring forth of the Gourds.

And Columella, Pliny, and Palladius doe write, that the sedes taken forth of the neck of the Gourd, and those set with the sharpe ends vpright, and both dunged and watered, doth after bring forth long and small Gourds. And the sedes which lie in the middle of the belly of the Gourd, set with the blunt ends vpright in the earth, and both dunged and watered, do after send forth big and large Gourds. And of those doe men after they be dried, make bottles to carry Wine, Ale, or Beere in, to refresh the body withall, in the trauell of any long iorney. And those sedes which lie in the bottome of the Gourd, set with the great and blunt ends vpright in the earth, doe after cause both wide and large Gourds. And sowing all the sedes together in one hole, you must after they be wel grown aboue the earth, stay them vp with props made for the nonce. And if the yong plants be molested with greene flies of the garden, then set by them the branches of the herbe Organy, and it will either kill them by lighting there vpon, or at the least cause them that they increase no more. And to haue Gourds to grow without sedes (like as was taught before) of the Cucumber, then lay your sedes for three dates before, either in Damaine oyle (as Palladius writeth) or in the iuice of the hearbe named Culex. And the like may be caused, if

being drunke with a little quantity of Cummin ſeeds. And the Cucumber eaten doth cauſe a ſoluble belly, & profiteth the ſtomacke, as writeth *Dioſcorides*: and the ſmell of them doth reſtore the perſon out of his wit. And the ſeedes haue a meane force to cauſe vrine: and the ſeedes boiled in wine, and laid plaſter wiſe, with the greene leaues vppon, doe helpe the bite of Dogs. And the ſeedes bruiſed and tempered with hony, and that laid on hot burning Puſhes, doe qualifie the heate, and cleare them. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Cucumber.

Of the ordering, care, and ſecret of the Gourd. Chap. 62.

THe Gourdes deſire to be ſowen or ſet in fat ground, moiſt, dunged, and well laboured, as writeth Palladius. And in watering the ſeedes often they proſper the better, for that they much ioy, and are holpen with moiſture, although there be ſome which increaſe with a ſmall watring, and be alſo more pleaſanter by this in the eating. And if you happen to ſet the ſeedes in a drie ground, then ſet an earthen pan ful of water neere to them, putting clothes or liſts made ſharpe at the one end, and hanging halfe out of the pan ouer the edges of it, that they may ſo drop continually water on them in the forme of feltring, as the wiſe name it: And this way alſo of the watering of them doth greatly helpe in a growth. And further Palladius willeth the ſeedes to be ſet in the end of the moneth of Aprill and beginning of the moneth of May, a three or foure ſote aſunder, and in ſuch ſort, as that two of the ſeedes be thruſt into the earth together, with three of the fingers, and that the blunt ends alſo be turned downeward, and the ſharp ends ſtanding vpward. And that a night before they be thus planted in the earth, the ſeeds be put into a pan of water, caſting then forth ſuch ſeedes which ſwim aboue, and the other not the like ſwimming, or rather lying in the bottome, ſet in the earth well mixed with dung. And they may not be ſet in low furrowes, leſt the raine falling, and filling thoſe furrows, do ſo choke and kil the yong plants ſprung vp. And when they be well ſprung vp, and appeare aboue the earth, then rake the earth, putting it well about them

them, and as nede ſhall require, to vſe to water the plants. And if they happen to be ſet in an earth ſomewhat looſe, then after they be ſprung vp into ſome bignes, the earth round about ought to be deepe digged vp that the roots may ſo ſtretch and run out diuers waies. And as they grow vp ſtil, you may make a couer ouer them like to an harbour, vnto the height of a man, that the leaued branches may be laid ouer to giue ſhadowe, and the leaues alſo laid on the Gourdes to defend the heat of the Sunne, may ſo cauſe them to grow the better. And if not on this wiſe, then may you let their vine runne along on the earth if you liſt. And to this alſo in doing the like ſhal much auaile, wherby they may the ſoner ſend forth their fruits, and the more ſtore, if that the principaller and bigger heads be a little broken off in the tops, that they may ſo cauſe other branches to ſpring forth of the Gourds.

And Columella, Pliny, and Palladius doe write, that the ſeedes taken forth of the neck of the Gourd, and thoſe ſet with the ſharpe ends vpright, and both dunged and watered, both after bring forth long and ſmall Gourds. And the ſeds which lie in the middle of the belly of the Gourd, ſet with the blunt ends vpright in the earth, and both dunged and watered, do after ſend forth big and large Gourds. And of thoſe doe men after they be dried, make bottles to cary Wine, Ale, or Beere in, to refreſh the body withall, in the trauell of any long iorney. And thoſe ſeedes which lie in the bottome of the Gourd, ſet with the great and blunt ends vpright in the earth, doe after cauſe both wide and large Gourds. And ſowing all the ſeedes together in one hole, you muſt after they be wel grown aboue the earth, ſtay them vp with props made for the nonce. And if the yong plants be moleſted with greene flies of the garden, then ſet by them the branches of the herbe Organy, and it will either kill them by lighting there-vpon, or at the leaſt cauſe them that they increaſe no more. And to haue Gourds to grow without ſeeds (like as was taught before) of the Cucumber, then lay your ſeedes for three daies before, either in Sauaine oyle (as Palladius writeth) or in the iuice of the hearbe named Culex. And the like may be cauſed, if

that the firſt ſtalke ſpꝛung vp, bee ſo digged about, that the head of the ſame may appeare, and as it alwaies groweth vp, ſo to be digged bare of the earth: and this doe the third time, if neede ſhall ſo require. And this alſo doe, that as the bꝛanches ſpꝛing foꝛth, and runne along on the earth, the like cut away of them, pꝛeſeruing alwaies the pꝛincipal, and this will ſo cauſe them to bꝛing foꝛth Gourds without ſeedes, hauing onely but a ſoft pulpe within. And now to haue either timely Gourds oꝛ Cucumbers; then at the beginning of the ſpꝛing put fine ſifted earth, either into an old baſket, oꝛ deepe earthen pan, and the ſame wel mixed with dung, ſpꝛinckle oꝛ moiſten a little with water, and after ſet the ſame abꝛoad in warme and ſunny daies, and in a ſmal rain; but at the ſetting of the Sun, ſet the ſame againe vnder ſome couert, and this often doe, in watering it in the meane whiles vntill all the frоſts and cold ſeaſon be paſt. And after that when a faire day commeth, then ſet the whole pan oꝛ baſket to the bꝛim in the earth well dꝛeſſed & trimmed, couering and raking the earth ouer and about it, and after oꝛdering the ſame (as afoꝛe is taught) you ſhal ſo haue the timely fruits, either of ỹ Gourd, oꝛ cucumber. And the ſame alſo you may the ſoner pꝛocure, & with leſſer trauell and paines, if that you cut off the rank and ſuperfluous ſhoots, either of the gourds oꝛ cucumbers, foꝛ by that meanes will they ſpéedilier ſend foꝛth their fruits. And to make diuers foꝛmes like to birds oꝛ beaſts, & ſundꝛy perfect letters (of the Romane faſhion) on your Gourds oꝛ Cucumbers, then take the yong fruit of either, as the ſame groweth on the bꝛanches, incloſing into a mould of the like bignes to the fruit, in the which let be impꝛinted deep oꝛ hollow, in the foꝛme that you deſire to haue after on your Gourds oꝛ Cucumber, and the like ſhall then appeare when as the fruit is come to his ful growth and bignes. But further of this may you learne in my litle treatiſe of Natural and Artificiall concluſions, where I wꝛite moꝛe at large, both of the ſame & the compoſitions of ſundꝛie ſtrange foꝛmes of apples, and other fruits, with other pleaſant (and that right marueilous) matters to read and heare. And now to come to our foꝛmer matter

ter in theſe: if that you deſire to haue long and ſmal gourds, then take a long Cane bored thorow, or a hollow pipe, into which put the very yong gourd, & let the ſame ſo hang, which after wil ſtretch out all the length of the hollow pipe, for that ẏ matter which ſhould run into a breadth, is by that meanes ſent into a length. And Pliny writeth, that he ſaw a Gourd of 9. foot long. And a like concluſion of making the Gourds of ſuch a length may be done, if that you ſet vnder the Gourds a pan or boule of water, a hand breadth or ſomewhat more beneath the ends hanging down, which in the next day following you ſhall find ſtretched out to the water, and thus ſetting the veſſell deeper, they will ſhot out longer. And on this wiſe you may make them ſhot out of a maruelous length, without any other craft or practiſe of the like. But if you take away the veſſell of water, then doe they after bend and turne vpward, ſo much do the Gourds ioy in the moiſture, & otherwiſe refuſe the dzieth. And Pliny writeth, that the gourds do ſo mightily hate oyle, that ſetting a boule or other veſſell of the ſame vnder them, in the like ſort as you did the water, will in the next morow be turned or bended another way. And if not turned on this wiſe, then will they be bended (in diſdaining the oile) into the faſhion of a hooke, which you ſhal manifeſtly trie in the ſpace of one night. And heere learn, that both Columella and Florentius giue ſpeciall warning, that no ſuch perſon hauing then the monethly courſe, do handle or come neere, either to the gourd or cucumber as they grow, for by the handling or approching nere to them, they ſome after wither away.

And if ſuch alſo being in the like caſe doth then but look on them, they either kill the yong ones with their ſmoke, or cauſe them to grow vnpleaſant, or elſe corrupted and withered. And thoſe Gourds which you minde to keepe for ſeedes, let them be hanged vp with their ſtems or ſtalkes vnto winter time, and dzied as they hang, either in the heat of the ſun, or in the ſmoke (as Palladius writeth) for ẏ otherwiſe the ſeedes wil putriſie and ſerue after to no vſe. And if you mind to kep the freſh and greene Cucumbers and Gourds a long time,

then hang them within a Hogſhead, or other veſſell of white wine Lees, not yet turned and ſower, in ſuch ſort, that they be wholly couered with Lees.

And in the like condition & maner you may preſerue them a long time, if that you lay them into a brine prepared for the only purpoſe. Alſo the Gourdes and Cucumbers be the like preſerued for a long time, if that they be hanged high in a pipe hauing vineger in it, or at ỹ leaſt ſo high, that they touch not the vineger in no wiſe. And the veſſell beſides ſerning to this vſe, ought to be well pitched about, that the vineger breath not forth, in that the vineger is ſo penitrable, through the thinneſſe of the parts. And the Gourdes and Cucumbers may beſt be kept freſh and faire all the yeare throw without putrifying, if that you put them into the diſtilled water of vineger, which will not after ſuffer them to putriſie, but maintaine their freſh eſtate, as hath often beene tried of the ſkilfull practitioners. And beſides theſe, if that you cut off yong ones whiles they be yet tender, and ſcauld them in hot water, and after lay them forth to coole all a night throw, being cleare and calme, and on the morrow put into a ſharpe brine, which will ſo kepe them freſh a long time. And now by all meanes aboue taught, you may kepe Cucumbers and Gourds freſh all the winter throw. And you may beſides all theſe make your Gourds laxatiue, and to purge the belly, if that you infuſe the ſeedes for a day and night, in the liquor made of Rubarbe, Scamanie, Coloquintida, Agaricke, and ſuch like purges: and after this, ſowe the ſeedes in the earth, in like order as before was taught. And to make them pleaſant of taſte and ſmell, order the ſeedes in like ſort before the ſetting of them, as you were taught in the other chapters going before.

The Phyſicke helps.

The Gourd is colde and moiſt in the ſecond degree, and the ſeedes doe ſerue to the vſe of medicine: and the Gourd alſo is not to be eaten raw, for that the ſame is ſo vnſauourie meat, and therefore it ought the rather to be ſodden, roſted, or fried before the eating, as writeth *Galen*. Now the ſeedes

cleane

cleane picked from the vpper skin, & ſodden in barley water, and after ſtrained and drunke, doth helpe the diſeaſes in the liuer, the kidneis, and the bladder, and the impoſtumes of the breaſt, and prouoketh vrine: and if a ſicke perſon ſhal abhor to drink of this water, then may you make a ſirope of it with ſuger, for that the ſame ſo greatly profiteth vnto all agues. And for the heat of the liuer, take the iuice of the pieces, and meat of the Gourds, and temper the ſame with milk and vineger, and after dipping a linnen cloth in the ſame, apply the liuer without, and it much helpeth. And the gourds alſo ought to be hanged vp & dried, as afore was ſpecified, and the winter approching, the ſeeds ought then to be taken forth and rubbed with ſalt, that ſo the clammy humors may be auoided. And the kernels alſo ought to be laid in a drie place, leſt the moiſture corrupt the ſeedes. And the ſeedes may well be kept for three yeares in good efficacie. And the meate and piece of the Gourd laid plaſter-wiſe to the fore part of the head of yong children, doth ſo take away the inflamation and great heate of the braine and head. And the iuice of the ſame anointed on hot burning gouts, doeth aſſwage the burning heat of the ſame, and alſo qualifieth the inflamations of the eies. Alſo the iuice preſſed out of the meat of the Gourd, & the ſame dropped into the eares doth aſſwage the burning heat of the. And to the ſame vſe it may either be applied alone, or els mixed with oile of Roſes, and ſo dropped hot into the eares. And the ſame iuice mixed with the oile of Roſes, & anointing the ridgebone & loynes with the ſame, doth aſſwage the burning heat of the Ague. And the ſame doth alſo help the burning heat of that griefe called the holy fire. Alſo the aſhes made of the rinds of the Gourds, and ſtrawed on the vlcers of ſhamefaſt places, now growen into a rottenneſſe, doth not onely clenſe, but bringeth them into a ſcarre: which aſhes ſtrawed on a burning, doth marueilouſly heale the ſame. And the decoction of the meat of the Gourd, with a little honie and Niter, and that drunk, doth looſe gently the belly. And if any making hollow the raw Gourd, and doth after fill the ſame with wine,

& ſetteth it abroad for a ſpace, & that on the morrow drinketh moderatly of it faſting, it doth alſo gently looſe the belly. And the raw meat of the Gourd ſhred, and laid plaſterwiſe on ſwellings and hard riſings of the fleſh, doth greatly aſſwage them. And the Gourd full ripe, ought to be diſtilled together with the ſeedes, and finely ſhred. And now the diſtilled water mixed with ſuger, doth ceaſe the thirſt, helpeth the cough proceeding of a cold cauſe, and looſeth the belly. And the ſame water drunk twice a day, for twenty or forty daies together, to the quantity of three ounces at a time, doth helpe the ſtone of the kidneis. And in like manner drunke for ten daies together, prouoketh vrine, and cleanſeth the reines and bladder. Moreouer, the ſame water alſo drunke, doth qualifie the burning of the ague. Theſe hitherto of the properties of the Gourd.

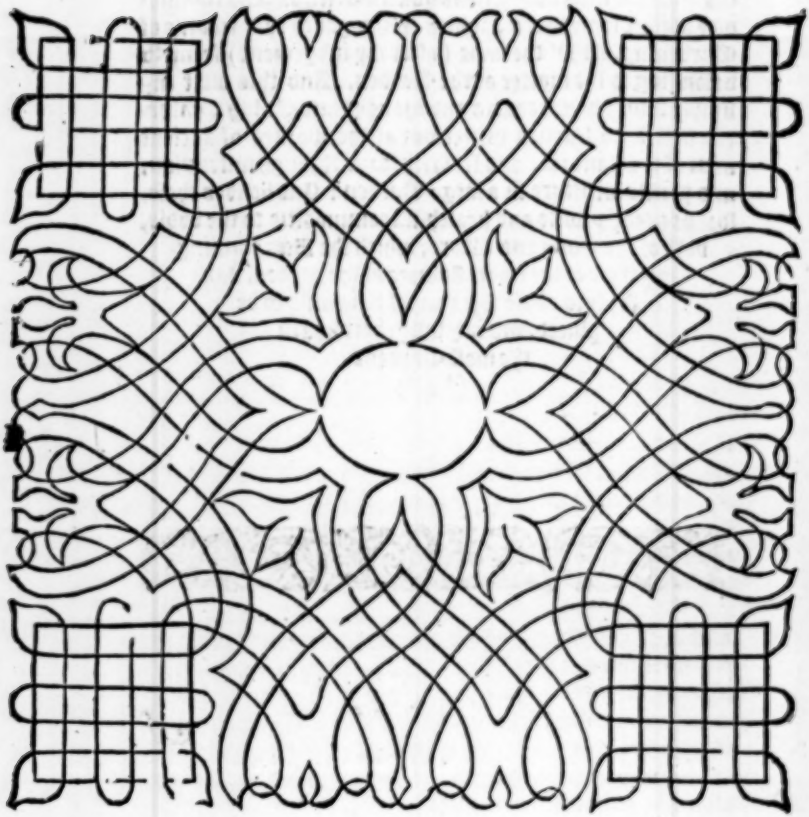
Of the ordering and care of the Beane of Egypt. Chap. 63.

THe Beane of Egypt ought to be ſowen or ſet in the moneth of Februarie, and loueth alſo to growe in a moiſt place fat and watriſh, & to come vp among running ſpringes, but for the quality of the ground, it greatly forceth not, ſo that the ſame be alwaies watered, as need doth require. And it may in a manner beare continually leaues, if the ſame be defenced from the cold, by ſome little couer or ſhed, ſtanding vnder all the winter time. And now the place from whence the ſlips of the moſt plants be daily ſtipped off from the ſtalks, for the intent to be ſet againe, will ſufficiently inſtruct any meane witted perſon, how at times conuenient he ſhould ſet thoſe againe in the earth. And where at this time, we doe omit, and ouerpaſſe ſundry Poſie and Garland flowres, with herbes profitable to be eaten, it is, for that they require no other manner or diligence of dreſſing and ordering, then the former taught. And many alſo of theſe come vp of their owne accord, and ſundry others, which delight in the like order of planting and ſowing as the former. And therefore let this

Treatise honourably passe, which I meane hereafter to increase with sundry pleasant flowres, and profitable hearbes, needfull to be sowen and set in the most Gardens. And in the meane time take for a proper Treatise (and that right profitable) of the most marueilous gouernment, vse, and commodity of the Honie Bees, which I adioyne to this treatise of Gardening, in that the same (after my iudgement) seemeth belonging to the matter of the Garden. And this after my simple skill, I haue reduced and brought into English, gathered first by a learned writer out of the workes of ancient men of Husbandrie, and set forth for a through instruction, and perfite furniture in a large Garden: And beside these, for the great profite and healthfull commodities to the bodie, both of the Hony and Waxe, which the Bées cunningly gather of the sweet flowres of the garden. And for this cause Bées ought diligently to be placed, and carefully cherished in the most Gardens.

(***)

A proper knot for a Garden, where is ſpare roome enough, the which may be ſet either with Time or Iſope, at the diſcretion of the Gardener.



CERTAINE NECESSARY PRECEPTS in the cutting vp, plucking away, gathering and preſeruing, of the moſt hearbes, flowres, ſeedes, and rootes, ſeruing eſpecially to Medicine.

CHAP. 64.

THoſe herbes which ſerue moſt for the pot to be boyled with meat, ought to be cut vp and gathered, when as they be well growen in height, and that with a ſharpe knife, ſomewhat aboue the earth. But of ſundry herbes be the leaues onely gathered, and that with the hand plucked vp, and broken off when they be come (as it were) vnto their full growth: which be, the Lettuce, the Endiue, the Succory, the Betes, the Arach, the Clary, the Borage, Marigold leaues, Parcely, Colewort leaues, and ſuch like. But in the winter time, the ſtalkes be wholly cut vp, leauing then no ſtems behinde. And beſides, in all theſe aboue rehearſed, except the Parcely, the Fennell, the Sage, and certaine others: if that the ſtems or ſtalkes after they be well come, be then broken off or cut away, they wil continue the longer greene and without fading. And when any would vſe any hearbes hot of qualitie, then let him rather gather the hearbes freſh and greene, then vſe thoſe being drie, for that the greene doe leſſe heate, in that the moiſture of thoſe greene doth greatly mittigate the heat in them.

And for the onely vſe of Sallets, gather your hearbes, being then very yong and tender buds, except of the Lettuce and Endiue, which after the minde of the Gardners, do eate pleaſanter being growen vnto a whitenelle, and then eaten yong and greene. And now thoſe hearbes (for the vſe of medicine) ought rather to be gathered and cut vp, when as they

be in a manner come vnto their growth, and that before the colour of the flowres begin to change, and the ſeeds ſomwhat appeare: And this alſo ought to be done in a cleare & warme day, and that they haue béene moiſtned with ſome ſhowers falling for two or three daies before, ſo that they ought not to bee gathered when any raine, moiſture, or wet dewe is on them, nor being then drie parched with the heate of the Sunne, nor in a rainie and clowdie day, for any of theſe doe much hinder the kéeping any time in their vertue.

Alſo they ought to bee gathered, when they bee full of iuice and freſh, and that not the ſmaller or bigger are to be choſen, but the meaner, and ſuch beſides which fall not to withering. And onely the tender toppes, the leaues, and flowres are to be gathered and dried in the ſhaddowe, in a place open toward the South, not being moiſt and defended from the duſt and ſmoke, and for the better defending and preſeruing of them, to be put vp in bagges cloſe bound at the mouth, and in boxes for that vſe.

And they alſo keepe their ſtrength and vertue for one whole yeare, ſo that they are to bee renued euery yeare, vnleſſe the hearbes bee gathered in ſuch a yeare, that the ſeaſon then ſhal be long without raine, and that the Summer following bee verie moiſt: for then may you rather vſe thoſe hearbes gathered in the drie Summer before, then thoſe in the rainie yeare following. And the flowres for the vſe of medicine ought then to be gathered, when as they be in greateſt force, and full open abroad, vnleſſe the Lilly, the Flowre-deluce, and Roſe, which ought rather to bee gathered, when as they be not wholly opened: And they ought alſo in the like order to be dried and laid vp, as aboue was taught of the hearbes, and ſo they laſt alſo for a yeare in their ſtrength and vertue.

And they ought beſides to be renued euery yeare, like as was taught before of the hearbes. And ſeedes ought to be gathered when they be thoroughly ripe, and before they ſhed or fall off, and this alſo muſt be in a cleare and faire day.

Alſo

Alſo the fuller ſeedes and not wrinckled, and ſuch which keepe the perfect ſauour and taſte of the kinde of the hearbe, are rather to bee gathered and kept, and dried in the like condition as the hearbes, and afterward put into glaſſes, or hanged vp in bagges, and this in a drie place, being free from moiſture.

And the fruits of the plants are to bee gathered, when as they be in their full ripeneſſe, and not before they beginne to fall off. And both the fuller and waightier are to be choſen, which ought afterward to be dried in the Sunne, or in an Ouen, by reaſon of the moiſture contained in them.

And the rootes are to bee gathered in their apt places, and the beſt of euery kinde, and that the fruits be lately fallen off, and the leaues of the ſtems begin to ſhed away, and this you muſt doe in a cleare day, for the great raine doeth weaken them, and filleth them full of moiſture.

And the greater rootes may be kept for two yeares, but the leſſer onely for a yeare, if they be hanged vp to drie in a ſhadowie place, and that from duſt and ſmoke. And as touching the whole hearbe together, the ſame ought to be gathered when it ſhall come vp vnto the full growth.

And whatſoeuer are gathered in the decreaſe of the moone, be better to vſe, and will longer be kept then thoſe which be gathered in the increaſe of the moone. And the worthier herbs be thoſe, and to greater effect, which keepe their liuely colour, ſtronger in ſauour, and more apparant in taſte.

And the Roſes and other flowres gathered in a faire and warme day, doe yeelde a ſweeter diſtilled water, then thoſe flowres which be gathered in a wet and clowdie day: and this diſtilled water beſides laſteth longer and to better effect then that other of the contrary manner. And further learne, that from the foure and twenty day of the month of March vnto the foure and twenty day of June, are the leaues of all manner of hearbs moſt of ſtrength and vertue, and do eſpecially ſerue in that time to the vſe of medicine. And from the xxiiii. day of June, vnto the xxiiii. of September, are the ſtems

and ſtalks in their ful ſtrength and vertue to the vſe of medicine. And from the xxiiii. day of September, vnto the xxv. of March againe, are the rootes of the moſt hearbes in their full ſtrength and vertue to be miniſtred in medicines. And heere alſo learne, that the wilde herbes are ſtronger in vertue then the garden herbes, although the wilde be leſſer in bignes, as Pliny writeth. And the wilde hearbes alſo growing vpon the hils and mountaines, bee farre ſtronger in effect then thoſe wilde, growing in plaines & lower ground. And to conclude, all hearbes and ſeedes which more aptly ſerue to the vſe of medicine, ought rather to be kept and hanged vp in bags, but the flowres cloſe ſtopped in narrow mouthed glaſſes, that the ſauour and ſtrength of the flowres breath not forth, and that theſe alſo be ſet and hanged vp in ſhaddowie places free from moiſture, and from the duſt and ſmoke. And the rots which you mind to kepe græn, are better reſerued and kept in light land, except they be ſuch rotes which be rather kept dried, and are alſo better preſerued in a drie and ſhaddowie place, as aboue was taught. But the ſeedes of the Lekes and the Onions, and of certaine other hearbs, be better kept in their huſkes, then the moſt ſeedes of the other hearbes. And heere learne the opinion of the learned Phyſition Montagnana, in the gathering of the rootes, flowres, and fruits, ſerving to the vſe of medicine, which affirmeth that the rots ought not to be gathered vntill the fall of the leaues, and this eſpecially from the middle of September, vnto the beginning of November, and the flowres are to be gathered from the middle of May, to the beginning of July, and ought to be gathered according to the diuerſity of times of the hearbs.

Thus endeth the ſecond Booke of the care, ordering, and ſecrets of the moſt hearbs of the Garden.

(***)

A

PROFITABLE INSTRVCTION OF THE PERFECT ORDERING OF BEES, WITH THE MARVEILOVS NATVRE, property, and gouernement of them: and the neceſſary vſes, both of their Hony and Waxe, ſeruing diuerſly, as well in inward as outward cauſes: gathered out of the beſt writers.

TO WHICH IS ANNEXED A Treatiſe intituled: Certaine Husbandly Coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer, and other matters *alſo meet for Husbandmen to know, &c.*

By THOMAS HILL *Londoner.*

Imprinted at London by H.B.
1608.

The Authors out of which this Treatiſe is gathered.

C. Plinius.
Ariſtotle.
Albertus.
M. Cato.
Iunius Columella.
M. Varro.
Palladius Rutilius.
Theophraſtus.
Guilhelmus de Conchis.
Galen.
Paule Aegineta.
Cornelius Agrippa.
Hieronimus Cardanus.
And ſundry others.

To the worſhipfull Maſter M. Gentleman, Thomas Hill wiſheth all health and felicity.

AS it hath beene, and is yet (worſhipfull Sir) a trade commonly vſed among moſt men, to chuſe out from a great number, ſome one vnder whoſe name and title they may publiſh their workes: Euen ſo I (following the ſteps of the learned, though in all other points moſt inferiour) hauing finiſhed this little Treatiſe of Bees, and caſting with my ſelfe vnto whom I might preſent it, found my ſelfe much bounden vnto your worſhip, both for your gentlenes which I haue of late taſted, and alſo for your friendſhip which I finde alwaies readie towards mee. And therefore hauing none other waies to recompence the very leaſt part of your courteſie and gentleneſſe, thought it beſt to gratifie your worſhip with ſuch a ſimple gift as mine abilitie will ſuffer mee to beſtowe vpon ſuch a friend. And although Sir, this Treatiſe is farre diſſonant from your ſtudies, yet conſidering your earneſt deſire to knowledge and learning: and againe pondering the pleaſantneſſe of the matter, thought this might bee made a recreation for your grauer ſtudies. For when your minde ſhal be ſearching for profound reaſons, and oppreſſed with deepe cogitations, then taking and reading this little Pamphlet, it will bring a forgetfulneſſe vnto your former wearineſſe, and cauſe a new delight vnto your minde:

For

For heerein may you ſee, firſt the marueilous gouernement of the Bees, through the onely inſtinct of Nature, as in their obedience to their King, and other officers, in puniſhing the idle loyterers, in cheriſhing the true labourers, in their manner of fighting, with ſuch like a great many, as it is wonderfull to read, and almoſt vncredible to beleeue: Secondly, the liuely effects and commodities that ariſe of their Hony and Waxe: and laſtly, how profitable they are for the common-wealth, and how neceſſary for mans vſe. I might heere ſpeake much in the praiſe of the Bee, which all I will omit, ſeeing onely mine intent is to ſhew my ſelfe mindfull of your good turnes and benefits, deſiring you to take this in good part, which proceedeth from a wel willing mind. And I am ſorie, that at this preſent I had none other matter more worthy to haue gratified your worſhippe withall: but that wanteth in power, aboundeth in good will. Thus troubling your worſhip no longer, I commit you to the keeping of the Almighty, praying him to increaſe in you al vertue and godlines, and to grant you the long yeares of Neſtor.

Yours moſt bounden,

THOMAS HILL.

The Preface into the inſtruction of Bees.

ALthough (gentle Reader) I haue not giuen thee any labour of mine owne, but rather haue collected theſe ſayings and writings of many antient Authors, yet I truſt they ſhall be well accepted of thee without offence. For as he that ſetteth forth vnto the view and reading of all men, ſuch knowledge as by his long ſtudie and experience he hath gotten, is worthy to haue his due reward and commendation: euen ſo hee is not to be diſcommended, who painefully reuoluing the bookes and volumes of many and diuers antient writers, reduceth them into one little treatiſe, for the commodity and profite of the ſimple & vnlearned ſort, for whoſe onely ſakes I haue trauelled in the tranſlation of this worthy matter, touching the right vſage and handling of Bees: a thing verie rare, and ſeldome ſeene in the Engliſh tongue, and yet verie profitable for a Common-wealth, and commonly vſed among the poore husbandmen, though not in euery point as they ought to be, yet according to their knowledge and experience. But I, to the intent that a further learning might be added to their skill, haue ſo trauelled therein, that I truſt their knowledge ſhall be increaſed, and ſuch as haue no knowledge at all, may be inſtructed without any other teaching. I haue ioyned this little Treatiſe vnto my booke of Gardening for that moſt men doe ioyne them both together, as when they place their Bees in their Gardens, whereas they may with leſſe paine and eaſilier gather of the ſweet ſmelling floures, their Hony, and Waxe. And for all theſe my paines (gentle Reader) I craue nought elſe of thee, but to giue me that which of dutie in a manner I ought to haue: for if thou doeſt receiue any commoditie or fruit, either by this, or by any other Treatiſe hereto annexed, which hath to name the Husbandly conieCtures, with ſundry rules of Phyſicke, then giue me the reward of thy good report, and friendly accepting of theſe two Treatiſes: and if not, yet accept mine endeuours in good part, which be meant to do thee good. And thus leauing (gentle reader) to trouble thee farther, I commit thee to God, who giue thee the furtherance of knowledge, both in theſe and all other needfull Arts.

(***)

A neceſsary Table, ſetting forth the Contents of theſe two Treatiſes.

Theſe are treated of in the firſt Treatiſe.

WHy Bees are named to be creaſted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed or rather pleighted: what worke the ſwarme new gathered in the Hiue doe firſt take in hand, and whether they may liue after their ſtings be gone. Chap. 1.

Who firſt taught the preparation and increaſing of Bees, and found out the vſe of hony. chap. 2.

How Bees do naturally engender. chap. 3.

Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name Drone Bees. chap. 4.

Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue any blood within them. chap. 5.

Of the great vtility and profit of Bees to mans vſe. chap. 6.

Of the care and diligence of Bees. chap. 7.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the king of Bees, and of the obedience which they vſe to him. chap. 8.

What kind of Bees the beſt, & rather to be choſen. chap. 9.

Where hiues of Bees ought eſpecially to be placed. chap. 10.

What things Bees do chiefly abhor & greatly hate. cap. 11.

By what ſignes men may know when the Bees are diſeaſed and how they may be cured. chap. 12.

What manner of perſon the keeper of Bees ought to be. chap. 13.

By what meanes the ſwarme commeth forth, and may be preſerued from flying away. chap. 14.

Of the Bees new ſetled in a ſwarme together, and taken and recouered againe. chap. 15.

Which are the beſt and fitteſt Hiues for Bees. chap. 16.

Of the cleanlineſſe and ſweetnes of the keeper of Bees, and how the Hiues ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. chap. 17.

How

How Bees lacking hony, may be fed in the time of their neceſſitie. chap. 18.
How the dead Bees may be reſtored to life againe. chap. 19.
Of the battels that the Bees haue ſometimes amongſt themſelues. chap. 20.
How Bees loſt, may be recouered & found again. chap. 21.
That the Bees ſting no perſon that commeth neare to their Hiues. chap. 22.
When and how the Hiues ought to be gelded. chap. 23.
What the hony is, and how from the Hiues the ſame may be prepared to vſe. chap. 24.
Which hony is accounted beſt. chap. 25.
Of the venemous hony, and of the wonderfull hony of Creta. chap. 26.
Of the miraculous worthines of hony. chap. 27.
How profitable the vſe of hony is in medicine. chap. 28.
Of the drinke of hony, which they call the Mulſe water, or ſweet water of the Romans. chap. 29.
Of the drinke *Oenomel*, which is made of pure wine and honie. chap. 30.
Of the ſingular water of hony, gotten by order of diſtillation. chap. 31.
An other manner of diſtilling the hony, more at large taught. chap. 32.
The manner of diſtilling a water from hony, named the Quinteſſence. chap. 33.
The manner of drawing and making waxe of the combes. chap. 34.
What waxe is beſt allowed, &c. chap. 35.
Of the great commodity and benefite of waxe in medicines. chap. 36.
Of that which is a ſtay of the combes, and made for a defence of Bees. chap. 37.
How to make waxe white. chap. 38.
How to make red waxe. chap. 39.
How to drawe a very profitable oyle out of waxe, for ſundrie vſes. chap. 40.

Another way of drawing the oyle of waxe moſt noble, and doth marueilouſly helpe the cold Gout, the Sciatick, the ſwelling of the legs, and all other griefs of a cold cauſe. chap. 41.

Theſe deſcribed in the other Treatiſe.

CErtaine Husbandly coniectures of dearth and plenty for euer. chap. 1.
An euerlaſting Prognoſtication of the ſtate and condition of euery yeare, by the onely Kalends of Ianuary, written by the ancient and learned *Leopol. Auſt.* and other for the commodity of the wiſe husbandmen. chap. 2.
How to foreknow the ſtate of the yeare by the onely riſing of the Dogge ſtarre, out of the husbandrie of *Diophanes.* chap. 3.
Other profitable inſtructions, right neceſſarie for husbandmen to know. chap. 4.
A moſt profitable rule for the preſeruation of mans health, thorow-out the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the mind of diuers learned men of the Vniuerſity of Padua. chap. 5.
Of the falling ſick on any of the weeke daies, out of that ancient Phyſition *Hippocrates.* chap. 6.
Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes, which declare raine to follow. chap. 7.
Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes which declare faire weather to follow. chap. 8.

The firſt Treatiſe ſetteth forth the *ſtrange gouernment, property, and benefite* of Bees, with the commoditie of their Hony and Waxe, which ſerue vnto many good vſes, aſwell in outward as inward cauſes applied: gathered out of *Pliny, Albertus, Varro, Columella, Palladius, Ariſtotle, Theophraſtus, Cardanus, Guilhelmus de Conchis, Agrippa*, and diuers other ſingular Authors.

Why Bees are named to be creaſted or parted betweene, or as it were ringed, or rather pleighted. What worke the ſwarm new gathered in the hiue firſt taketh in hand, and whether they may liue after their ſtings be gone. Chap. 1.

PLinie nameth Bees cleft beaſts, becauſe of the diuiſion or parting betweene of the head and ſhoulders: and Ariſtotle nameth them pleighted or ringed, in that their bodies are deuided with pleights and rings. And moſt men knowe, that the Bees haue neither ſinewes, bones, fleſh, griſtle, backe-bone, nor fat, but are onely created of certaine mixture, being a meane betweene theſe, and hauing a very few intrals. And againe no man needeth to doubt, but that the Bees be a kind of beaſts greatly to be ſet by for mans vſe, and for mans prouiſion, are nouriſhed of the aire: paſſing thorow the deuided places, which they by great diligence and care preſerue from being ſtopped, for as ſoone as they be ſtopped, they ſhortly after die, like as the ſame

we may learne, when any happeth to fall or light into Oyle, which straight way after die through the oyle stopping then their powers. They haue and flie with foure wings, that they may the better cary in their bellies ẏ stings of reuengment. For when two of them striue together in flight, then do they holde and kepe their stings in their mouthes by a grædy desire, or for cagernes sake. Now after the seuen stars named virgiliæ, be once risen in sight aboue our horizon, then do they hide them in their proper holes, so that they go seldome after abroad vntil the beans do bud, and if they chance to begin at any time to flie abroad, when as a faire day moueth them forward, then slacke they no such daies afterward, but occupie themselues: and first they prepare & make their combs, which they fashion into apt houses, or rather cels of wax: after this they haue yong, and then begin they to gather hony. They liue also the longer by hauing their stings, for that once gon, or taken away, they die forth-with through the lacke of their intrals, which they lose together with their stings.

Who first taught the preparation and increasing of Bees, and found out the vse of Hony. Chap. 2.

THe report goeth, that one Aristomachus first found out and taught the increasing of bees, whom Pliny writeth to be so ernest in the same, that setting apart al other affairs, he only studied night and day how he might best intreat & die bees according to their kind. But others ascribe this inuention to one Thassius, who (as they say) deserued no lesse commendation, both for his diligence and skill among bees: but this he especially followed in the field, and that far from the towne. And of this the common people (as by a nicknams) no more named him Thassius, but Agrius, for his wild or rather strange life, which he then led in the field, whom Plinie also affirmeth to haue written a booke of the increasing and multiplying of Bees. And Columella ascribeth this inuention to the inhabitants of the hill (named Hymetus) being the country of Attica, for there (saith he) was one Aristhonus, who taught (as men write) the true and perfect ordering of them. Pliny again ascribeth the inuention of hony to one Aristeus, a

man

man of Athens. Diodorus Siculus in the firſt booke of his workes writeth, that Curetes, a people of Creta, did firſt find out the hony. Macrobius aſcribeth the ſame to one Saturnus, others to the Theſſalians: and many to Meliſſus an ancient king of Creta, others to Naſſus liber pater, thus writing that Liber hath obtained the reward for finding out of hony.

How Bees do naturally engender. Chap. 3.

FIrſt the Bées proceed of Bées by the actuall doing together, after which they lay egges, ſitting vpon them as the hens do on their egs. And when they haue ſit on them for the ſpace of 45. daies, then do they hatch their yong ones, which yong (at the firſt) come forth much like to white wormes, except the king, who onely as he is hatched hath wings. At the firſt time one of them hatcheth fiue yong together, the next time fewer, and ſo fewer and fewer, vntill ſhe commeth to one at a time, becauſe the abundance which is in them, doth in the continuance of time weken. In the time of their ſitting, they mage much noiſe to get them heat withall. And about the ſides of the combs, be ſometimes greater bées bred, which men for their ſound and noiſe doe properly name Trumpeters, and they alſo haue whole hornes, of which come the baſtard bées. There be alſo other bées bigger in bodie, much like to the kings, but they be idle and haue no ſting, becauſe of the heauines of their body. All which kinds, Guilihelmus de Conchis did obſerue in the liues of a certaine Conſull of Rome, which properly were made of very thinne and cleare horne. Some write that bées are alſo engendred and bredde monſtrouſly, and that contrary to nature, without the mutual coniunction; if that a whole calfe be buried in the earth, & there lie rotting while the wind blow out of the Weſt, for by that meanes as writeth Maro, doth the ſame breed Bees. And not vnlike to this doth Cornelius Agrippa, in his firſt booke de Occulta Philoſophia, and Hiero. Cardanus in his 9. booke of ſubtilties write, that of a rotten horſe doe walpes proceed: of an Aſſe, humble bées: of a Mule, hornets. of the hair of a [illegible] and of Cremilles (the ſheis plucked off) ſcorpions.

Of

Of the vnperfect Bees, which men properly name Drone Bees. Chap. 4.

THe Drone Bées (as writeth Pliny) are vnperfect Bées, without ſting, and the leaſt wearie, yet be they verie heauy of body, and ſlow in doing their buſines: they alſo doe the ſeruices and trauels of the true Bées, although the right and perfect Bees doe rule and gouerne them, yea & put them formoſt in their labours, ſo that if they happen to be ſlowe in their doings, then doe the right bées puniſh them without pity. Alſo theſe do helpe the right Bées, ſo well in their workes as in their breéding, for that the multitude of them, cauſe the more heat and warmth together. And how much the greater the multitude of them ſhalbe, ſo much more wil the increaſe come of the ſwarm. When the hony wareth ripe, then are the Drone Bées driuen forth, and the kind alſe of theſe are onely ſeene abroad in the Spring time.

Whether the Bees draw breath, or haue blood any in them. Chap. 5.

NOw ſome affirm, that the clouen beaſts draw no breath, in that they haue not the fan of the heart, which is the lights or lungs: for as they write, nothing without them can breath. But Ariſtotle writeth, that the ſame is poſſible among Bees, hauing the ſting (although they haue no blader) to breath by their ſting. And the Bées haue no blood, becauſe they haue neither heart nor lungs: yet Pliny affirmeth, that nothing done by nature may be thought or iudged incredible, for the ſame is fully perſwaded in wiſe men, that Bees haue a certaine liuely moiſture, like as the Cuttle in the ſea, which hath a kind of incke in it, and is as the iuice of it, with the which the Diers (at this day) do make their purple colour.

Of the great vtilitie and profite of Bees vnto mans vſe. Chap. 6.

A Great profit riſeth by bées, if they be ſet in a conuenient and fit place, and that both carefully & wiſely guided as Pliny writeth in his 11. booke, where he willeth, that of all other clouen beaſts, the bées are principally to be cheriſhed, becauſe to mans vſe they gather a ſubtile and wholſome iuice, being

being very ſweete, and beſides they frame (by a marueilous ſkill and cunning) their cottages of wax vnto mans vſe, that no worke-man (be hee neuer ſo ingenious) can doe the like. The profit alſo comming by them in ſhort time, if the weather hindereth not, is ſo great, that they increaſe in a ſhort time into many ſwarmes, which ſwarmes againe increaſe others, ſo that the firſt ſwarmes increaſed, they eſpecially thruſt forth from them in the moneth of May or June, by which meanes they cauſe a great increaſe of them. As Varro affirmeth the ſame of two head Gentlemen in Spaine, which onely by the meanes of their Bees, gained yearly ten thouſand pound (but I rather thinke fiue thouſand pound, which alſo is very much.) And here is to be noted, that the ſwarmes of fiue yeares olde, doe ſeldome increaſe after other ſwarmes of themſelues, although in wax they giue a great yelde and gaine to the owners.

Of the great care and diligence of the Bees. Chap. 7.

CErtaine Bees, as the skilfull practiſers doe write, ſtand in the day time at the mouthes of the hiues, diligently loking to their buſines, like warders placed at the gates of a Caſtle, that they may ſo defend in ſafegard whom they will within. In the night time they ſettle themſelues to reſt vnto the morning, vntill one of them by humming twice or thrice about, doth ſo ſtirre them forward to flie out after the other. For if they happen to keepe themſelues in the morning within the hiues, then doeth the ſame declare a tempeſt to enſue that day. But being a cleare and faire morning, then do they flie forth, and returne againe to their hiues, laden with the ſubſtance of the flowres on their legs for their buſineſſe, and this eſpecially doe the yonger bees, ſo that the other bees beſides do either carry the water in their bils, or on the ſoft moſſines of the whole body. The elder bees remaining ſtill within do alſo follow their buſines, in diligently laying vp, & aptly diſpoſing the ſame, as they would diſpoſe their kindly ſeed. Such as be ſluggiſh and not labouring, they diligently note, which for their ſluggiſhnes they bitterly puniſh to death. And flying abroad in a mightie wind, they marueilouſly ſtay and

guide themſelues, by weighing their bodies down with little ſtones caried in their legges. They at the euening comming to reſt doe make leſſe and leſſe noiſe in the hiue, vntill one of them flieth about, which by a like order as he mooued them forward in the morning, euen ſo by the ſame noiſe and humming doth he procure them to take their reſt, and to be all ſilent within the hiue. If the Bées happen to ſcatter in their flying abroad, then doe they call and gather them into a ſwarme by the helpe of making a ſhrill ſound, either with pan, baſon, or ſome loud cimbal. They alſo follow their king whither ſoeuer he taketh his flight, who being wearie, and not further able to flie, they carry him among them.

Wherfore that the king may not often attempt forth with the ſwarme for feare of loſing them, the skilful practiſers wil, the wings of the kings be broken off; which feeling himſelfe thus depriued of his wings, wil not after attempt to flie forth of his bounds, but remaining ſtil within, will cauſe the other Bées to abide continually with him, not leauing the hiue at any time after. They alſo haue counſels priuily, and rulers among them. And as Ariſtotle declareth the Bées to be the cleanlieſt among all other beaſts, becauſe in flying abroade they ſhed their dung from them, leſt any fauor or ſtinke of their dung be felt in their cottages or holes. If theſe want hony at any time, then do they either kill or driue quite away the drone Bées.

Of the marueilous gouernment of the King of Bees, and of the obedience which they vſe to him. Chap. 8.

NAture hath not onely committed her lawes to bookes, the which men may learne by, but hath eſpecially ſet forth conditions & properties, as for an example of the like by the Bées, whoſe kings for doubt of reuenging, haue by the prouidence of nature no ſtings: whereby is to be vnderſtood, that kings ruling in power, through the lacke of their ſtings may be by that meanes the ſlower to hurt and offer reuengement. Yet ſome affirme the kings to haue ſtings, but they ſuppoſe them not to vſe their ſtings. And of this Pliny maketh a doubt whether the king be armed as other Bées, or lacketh a ſting.

Which

Which Columella putteth out of doubt, writing of the king, that he hath no sting, vnles any perhaps think that bighead (as it were) which the king carieth in his belly, to be his sting with the which they vse at no time to sting or hurt any body. This king onely doe Bées reuerence and honour, in such sort, that any of them is obedient and very readie to doe whatsoeuer he assigneth them vnto. Also this obedience and seruice which they vse to their king, they doe not the same for feare of punishment, but onely of a loue which they owe vnto him. They punish one another in such sort, that after their stings be lost, they die forthwith. Aristotle writeth of two maner of kings, the one (as he affirmeth) to be red, which he iudgeth the better: the other king blacke of colour, which he confesseth to be lesser of body: yet howsoeuer the kings be, they are notwithstanding farre bigger of body then the hony Bees, and haue a brighter & goodlier head then the other Bées, yet shorter wings. So that their king created among them, goeth not any time forth of the hiue, without the whole swarme follow him. The king flying forth of the hiue at any time, the other follow him, in such sort that each coueteth to flie next him, and ioyeth to be sèn of the king in office: and wherso euer the king setteth or resteth him, there be other bées placed like strong holds or castles about him. About the king also be placed certain rulers, which wait vpon him by daily authoritie. If any happeth (as writeth Pliny) to breake off the kings right wing, then from the king wil not the swarm after depart, as the like was rehearsed before. Besides these, the bées haue a marueilous order among them: if their king happen to die, they will bitterly mourne for his death, and for the lacke of an other, as such which cannot be guided and ruled without a king among them: and thus they be in continuall mourning: So that (for the time) they carry no foode into their hiues, nor flie forth, but with a sadde bewayling and humming after their king, they heape thicke together about the dead body, and vnlesse another king encreaseth by little and little among them, they die with hunger. Their king laboureth not, but as the other flie forth, hee in the

meane time (as an exhorter) moueth and encourageth forward euery one to his worke, by his flying about in the hiue.

What kind of Bees are beſt, & rather to be choſen. Chap. 9.

IN this point, & for true knowledge of theſe, doth M. Varro deſcribe thoſe bees to be beſt which be of ſmall bodie, and diuers and round, becauſe they be earneſt in labor, and make a thin hony, and better indure labour, and gather their hony on hils: but the worſer bees gather their hony of the garden flowres only, which be ſomwhat long of body, like to waips. Virgil doeth eſpecially commend the ſmall bees, being ſomewhat long, light, and cleanly in their buſineſſe, and glittering like gold: and the greater and rounder bee is diſcommended of al writers. Although the fierce bees are very ill, yet is their ireſulneſſe a note of the better bees, which may eaſily be appeaſed by the daily hanting among them: for if the keepers doe often handle the hiues, then doe they become gentle in ſhort time. The bees alſo indure, if they be diligently loked vnto, for the ſpace of ten yeares, & beyond this age no ſwarm can paſſe, although the keepers ſupply the hiues yearly with yong bees in the ſtead of the old dead: for in the tenth yeare, in a maner, by the generall death of them, the vniuerſall kind of the whole hiue is then conſumed. And therefore that this may not happen thorow all the hiues in that place, you muſt alwaies increaſe your hiues with yong bees, which diligently hiue in the ſpring time, or beginning of Summer, when as the ſwarmes be firſt and new thruſt forth of the hiues: & ſo may the number of your hiues be increaſed. Again, ſome write that in the countrey of Pontus, the beſt bees be white, becauſe they giue their yeld of hony twice in a moneth. And Guilielmus de Conchis affirmeth, the beſt bees to be about Thermedoone in Capadocia, abiding alwaies in the earth, for that thoſe doe build and make a triple yeld of ware, and giue alſo moſt abundance of hony. The aforeſaid Varro affirmeth, thoſe bees to be in health, which often keepe and be in ſwarme together, that be cleanely, and can do their buſines and worke alike, and that quicke and light in the ſame, being

being neither hairy, nor foule of body, or appearing ruſtie; ſuch alſo as be not ouer-cleane of body, nor that out of any of their cottages no dead bees be carried: but the contrary to be both euill and vnprofitable. Palladius declareth, that the beſt bees may be knowen by the fulnes and emptines of their veſſels, for if the hiues be full, then thoſe bees doeth beſt commend: if the hiues be nothing ſo full ſtuffed, thoſe bees doth he greatly diſallow: and he alſo praiſeth thoſe bees which excell or paſſe other in the loudneſſe of humming, or doe abound in the great hant of the ſwarme, not brought to the hiues from far places, ſo that there may be ſuch agreement, that they be not after feared away with the newnes of the aire and place.

Where the hiues of Bees ought eſpecially to be placed. Chap. 10.

ARiſtotle willeth the hiues of bees in the winter time to be placed in a warme place, & in the hot ſeaſon of ſummer in a cold place. Palladius Rutilius in his firſt booke of husbandry teacheth, that the fitteſt place for bees, is that which is in a Garden, not far, or rather neare to the owners houſe, which by that meanes ſuffereth not the windes, nor the acceſſe of thieues or beaſts: which alſo nouriſheth trees growing of the Northſide of the place, the better to defend the cold aire from them, and cleare ſprings or faire riuer water running by.

Columella willeth the hiues to be ſet open towards the South, far from noiſe and hant of people or beaſts, neither in a hot nor cold place, for either of theſe do moleſt and harme the bees. Alſo that the hiues ſtand in the bottome of a valley, or if not ſo poſſible, then placed neare to the valley, the better and eaſier for the bees to bring their food gathered to their hiues; and in any caſe far from ſtincking puddles, ditches, dung-heapes, and ſuch like filthy ſtinckes, which greatly annoy and endamage the bees being neare hand to their hiues. M. Varro writing in his ſecond booke vnto a huſwife of the Country, willeth alſo to ſet the hiues cloſe to her houſe and vnder ſome ſhed, and that farre from the noiſe of foxes,

which is meant from a grone or wood, leſt thorow the wood or groue nere hand, the ſame may giue a ſounding noiſe, like to that which men commonly name the Ecco, which ſound in very deed the Bées do greatly hate. Virgil willeth buſhy trées to be planted and ſtand right before their hiues, like as the Pear-tree is, the Peach-tree, the Oak-tree, many kinds of Apple-trées, the Birch tree, Holly-tree, the Iuy-tree alſo, not allowed for their goodnes, but becauſe the ſame giueth out much hony, and al other trées which beare no bitter flowers. And he willeth theſe plants and herbes to grow neare hand, as the Roſemary, the red and damaſke Roſe, the white Lilly, the Violets, the Flowr-delice, the Organy, the Time, the running Tyme, the Sauery, ſweet Marioram, the Saffron flowre, which colloureth the hony & maketh it ſmel ſweet, the beane flowres, the French beane flowres, the Melilot flowres, the herbe Balme, the white Poppy flowres, the Betony flowres, the Borage and Buglolle flowres, and many other ſweet and wholſome flowres not here named. But the Bore-tree, the Paſticke-tree, the Dog or Catten-tree, or as ſome ſuppoſe, the long and hie Cherry tree, they greatly hate, for that talling of the flowres of any of theſe, they die forthwith. Varro willeth ſtanding waters to be nere their hiues, and ſo ſhallow, that ſmall ſtones throwne into them, may appeare aboue the water, to ſerue in ſtead of bridges for their often recourſe vnto them, and that they may aptly ſtretch their wings abroad on the ſtones at the heat of the ſun. The ſtanding for hiues ought to bee three ſote diſtant from the ground, and wittily ſtopped about with reede clay, leſt vermins and mice creepe into the hiues, and ſpoile the Hony combs. The hiues alſo ought to be ſet a little aſunder the one from the other, leſt by looking into them, you ſhake one another by cleauing together, and ſo diſquiet the Bées next to, which feare all manner of ſhaking, leſt the ſame throwe downe their weake workes of ware. And the mouthes of the hiues ought to ſtand ſomewhat deeper then the back part, leſt raine beating in, might not lightly run out againe by their entry or hole: for remedy of the which, ſome make a couer o-

ner their hole, the better to kéep off the foule weather. And no maner of heat so much hurteth them as doeth bitter cold, and for this the faces of hiues ought to be in the winter toward the rising of the sun, that the bées may so receiue the warme comfort in the morning comming forth, & be the liuelier: for cold doth cause them to be sluggish; and for that cause their holes ought to be very narrow, that as little cold as is possible may enter into them, and so narrow made that the Bées within may receiue the entry but of one Bée at once: for by that meanes can neither the Bétle, Butterflie, nor great moth enter to annoy them. Besides, for their often recourse home, Varro willeth to make two or three commings into the hiue, somewhat distant asunder.

What things bees do chiefly abhor, or greatly hate. Cap. 11.

TO bées, is that (named the Eccho) vngratefull or much displeasing, which as Pliny writeth, doth greatly feare them, through the strange sound rebounding againe, and the mist also doth much molest and trouble them: besids, the spinner through her web hanging downe before the hiue, and the sluggish Butterflie (which Pliny nameth dishonorable) are 2. waies pestiferous, as the one when he spoileth the ware, and dungeth within the hiue: and the other breeding magots or little wormes within the combs. They greatly hate oyle, like as al the kinds of other bées do, and a stinking sauour, which euidently appeareth by that kind of herbe named mugwort, which they especially hate, because the same is of a strange stincke to them. The hornets also of the like sort creatt, but baser of kinde, they greatly feare, for that to the hornets the hony Bées are a speciall food: also they be meat to swallowes, to sparrows, and to all other small birds.

The frogs also they do greatly feare, which only lie in wait for them, both in Pariches, running springs, shallow waters, and little ditches: and likewise the todes doe lie in wait for the bees, which destroy many of them. And the shéepe doe greatly trouble the Hony Bees, if so be they happen to fall or light into the wooll of their backes, out of which they cannot easily wind or get themselues againe.

And

And if any happen to boile or ſteth Riuer Creuiſſes (or ſea Crabs) neare to the hiues, and that the bees ſcele the ſauor thereof, they die forthwith.

By what ſignes men may know when the hony bees are diſeaſed, and how men may cure them. Chap. 12.

THis is a ſpeciall argument and note that bees are diſeaſed, if that they flie ſcattering in the ſwarme, if they keep not their proper colour, but be (as it were) of a ſtrange and contrary colour, if they alſo are ouer leane, if they appeare duſty and hairy, and that out of their cottages be dead bees caried thence. When all theſe notes and ſignes are eſpied in the bees, it is then high time to ſeeke remedy for them, leſt helpe (by longer running) be ſought too late. Therefore Palladius willeth to miniſter the kernels of Pomegranets, bruiſed and mixed with ſweete and pleaſant wine, and the ſame powred into chaunels or gutters of halfe canes, ſet neere to the mouthes of hiues: or hony with Roſe leaues well beaten together, and ſo miniſtred to them: or the berries of the Sarnice tree bruiſed, and mixed with hony: and for lacke of theſe helpes, a man may make a ſmoke of drie Ore or Cow dung, which ſmoke much delighteth and comforteth them, ſo that the ſame be often vſed vnto warneſt. But if through the Waggots or little wormes of butterflies the bees be diſeaſed, Rutilius then iudgeth it beſt, to ſet a brazen Candleſticke, or ſuch like veſſell, with light burning in it at Euening within the hiue, that to the ſame light (the butterflies gathering, and flying about) may ſo fall downe into it, and be deſtroyed.

Ariſtomachus writeth, that the diſeaſed bees may be recouered in this maner: if that all the corrupt combe within the hiue be taken forth, and freſh food anew put in for the whole, and the hiue after ſmoked within. Alſo he affirmeth, that Roſemary ſodden with water and hony together, and being cold powred into halfe canes or elder ſticks made hollow like gutters, and the ſame ſet by the mouthes of the hiues, for the bees to drinke on, doth recouer the bees againe. Hyginius affirmeth, that either ore or mans vrine let in like manner (as

about

aboue said) by the mouthes of the hiues, doeth also recouer the diseased bees. Now al these must the keeper of the bees do, which is both sober and chaste, and feedeth not vpon sowre meats, nor filthy or strong of sauour, nor any salt meats.

What maner of person the keeper of Bees ought to be. C. 13.

THe bees, for that they much abhorre all filthy stinks and smels, Palladius willeth the keper of them to eschew diligently all strong and ill smelling sauours, one also that delighteth to be chaste of body, and free from filthines, amongst these not breathing sowrly, or of a stinking breath, not sweating, nor sauoring of sweat, not one besides of wicked conditions, or such a person as standing among the sight of the bees, doth not earnestly moue and procure them to flie to him, or as one stinged endeauoureth to defend himselfe from them: but rather as a flatterer among his acquaintance and children, hath learned to intreat and please the bees by a more gentle manner. He also which mindeth to haue in a readines, the hiues to his vse, in which he may receiue forthwith the rude youth of the swarmes, for forthwith if they be not diligently preserued they flie quite away at the full heat of the sun. But how these hiues ought aptly to be prepared, shall hereafter be taught in the sixtenth Chapter. If the Dosre bees be ouer many in the hiue, and that you would gladly rid them forth, then do on this maner: first take and plucke off the wings of one of those Dosre bees, and put into the hiue, and incontinent the hony bees espying the same, will fall vpon the other Dor Bees, and both kill and driue them quit away.

By what subtile meanes, the swarmes being come foorth, may be preserued from flying quite away. Chap. 14.

PAlladius in his second booke writeth, that the swarmes of the hony bees flie away especially in the moneth of Iune: but with vs the same oftner happeth in the moneth of May, as hath beene noted by sundry diuers times, especially if the yong bees be sound and hearty within the hiues. Therefore the keeper must diligently loke to the hiues, and at no time be absent, especially when the yong bees increase and abound in the hiues. for if they be not then carefully loked vnto, and

ſtated by the diligence of the keeper, they all flie quite away. For ſuch is the nature and propertie of the bées, that aſſoone as the ſwarme of the yong bees are bred with the kings, and that they be ſtrong & able to flie away, then as diſdaining the ſwarms of the old bées, they ſéeke the more gouernment. For they be ſuch liuing things as delight to rule alone, not ſéeking aide or counſel of the elder bées: & therefore do the new kings flie forth with the yong ſwarms following them, which for a day or two before their flying, remaine heaping together before the mouths of the hiues, & right vnder the hiues, ſo that by their cõming forth, & heaping in ſuch order, they properly ſhew the deſire of a new place, and be as yet contented to remain therabout, if the keeper prouide for them a fit place. But if they be not diligently regarded, then (as it were by an iniury receiued) they ſeeke a new place. To preuent this, let the keeper looke circumſpectly to the hiues in the ſpring time, about the eight houre of the day (when the ſwarms are not yet flowen away) that he may the diligentlier marke and ſée the flying out and comming in of the yong bées.

Now the readines of bees in flying away, is knowne two waies: Firſt, when for certain daies before, in a maner at the ſetting of the Sun, they abundantly gather on a heape right before the mouth of the hiue, like great cluſters of graps, and hang together one vpon another: the other note is, that when they be minded within three daies after to flie away, they make as marueilous a noiſe and ſtirring to & fro within the hiues at euening, as ſouldiers at an alarme within a Caſtle, which you may eaſily know (this readines of them) if that you lay your eare to each hiue. And when ſome of the Bées are flowen away, then doe thoſe waile for the others, vntill the whole ſwarme be come together. To kéep Bées from flying away, Pliny teacheth in the 11. booke of his Natural Hiſtory, that the hiues ought to be nointed about with the iuice of the herbe Balme. Alſo other affirme, that the ſwarme doth ſettle and ſtay againe, though the onely throwing of fine duſt on them, if ſo be the ſame be throwen on light, and that ouer the Bées. Some others affirme, that the Bées will not

flie

flie away, if the dung of a firſt calfe of any cow be ſmeared about the mouthes of hiues. Pliny writeth, that by the onely binding of freſh white vine (running in hedges) round about the bodies of hiues, it ſtaieth the ſwarme from flying away.

Of the Bees new ſetled in a ſwarme together, and taken or recouered againe. Chap. 15.

WHen the bées are now in a tumult in the aire, by throwing fine earth on high ouer the bées, or ringing a baſon or kettle, they be with the ſhrill ſound aſtonied, that they may the ſoner ſettle downe neare the keeper, which if the ſame happé to be on the branch of a tree, or on a graft or yong ſet, then with a ſharp ſaw, gently ſaw that off & lay it on the ground, and ſpeedily ſet a hiue on the ſame prepared for that purpoſe: for by that meanes (without doubt) will the whole ſwarm flie vp to the top and head of the hiue. Yet it often happeneth, that they do not wholy cleaue on a heap to the branch of a tree, but to the ſtocke or body of the tree, which to be cut, muſt be by great force, and ſo not able to be recouered by this meanes. In ſuch a caſe the ſwarme muſt be quickly ſwept off, either with the hand, or with a Goſe wing, that they may ſo fall together into the hiue. If the ſwarme happen to be cluſtred together on the top of a tree, ſo high that they cannot be climed vnto, to take them downe then, after the ſhaking of them into the hiue (turned vp) either with a pole, or high forke, the hiue muſt ſpeedily be turned downe to the earth. And if they be but thus taken or recouered, yet if the king ſhall be ſtill in the hiue, then doth the ſwarme flie in againe: where if he remaine not, then will none of the ſwarme abide in the hiue, but flie forthwith into the former place. Wherefore that they may be moued to abide, you muſt then ſprinkle the hiue with water and hony together, and couer the ſame within with greene Nettles, or rather greene Fennell, or ſome ſuch ſweete herbe, annointed a little with hony, and after ſet at the Euening in their proper place. For the hiue in the day time, after the recouering thus of the Bees, may not be ſtirred vntill the Euening, that the Bees ſo quietlie reſting all that night, may in the Morning eaſily goe forth,

but for three daies together (in a maner) muſt the keper daily looke whether the ſwarme keepeth below in the hiue, for if it doth, then are the bees purpoſed to flie away. And if none of all theſe remedies may yet moue the bees to ſtay and tarie in the hiue, then beſmoke the hiue with flare, and they will after enter in and abide in the Hiue: which ſo ſtaying in the Hiues, ſet at the Euening in his proper place. Here learne a further inſtruction, that if the ſwarme of Bées cannot be gathered and recouered together all at one time, then may you gather the ſwarme at two or more times together, and alwaies put each part gathered vnder the hiue. If it hapneth that you haue gotten the king with a part of the ſwarme, then will all the others ſoone come to the hiue (without further trauell) of their owne accord. If the Bées be alſo entred into the hollowe of a tree, then to the hole which they vſe to go in and out at (as their proper doore) ſet a prepared hiue, and beneath their hole, neare to the roote and bottome of the hollow (as you can geſſe) bore another big hole, that ye may well put in a ſmoke of brimſtone to them, which may ſo cauſe all the bées to flie out at their hole into the hiue, ſet ouer the mouth of it: for no better deuice or inuention can bee made in this matter, then by ſuch a ſmoke made. If the ſame hollow tree be ſo thin, that it may eaſily be ſawed aſunder, then with a sharpe ſaw let the hollow part be cut aſunder, both aboue and beneath, and after couering it with a cleane sheete, carry the ſwarme home, which at euening couer with a new hiue, ſprinkled with water and honie mixt together. For ſo they will tarry the willinglier, being all ſhaken forth of the bodie of the tree, and couered with the hiue. Beſides, the hearbe Mugwort (which the bées by a naturall hatred do abhorre) doeth chaſe them with the onely ſmell from place to place.

Which are the beſt and fitteſt Hiues for the Honie Bees. Chap. 16.

PAlladius writeth, that the beſt hiues be thoſe, which bee made of the barkes and light rotes of trees, becauſe they be neither to cold in the winter time, nor to hot in the Summer,

mer. And of this, those hiues which be wrought and made of the small Oster or willow tree, or of the vine stickes knit together, or canes cleft in the midst (which be of like condition to the barke) wrought close together, and stopped close about with flocks and clay tempered together with water and salt, may aptly serue if you will. But if neither of those fashioned hiues like you, then may you make the hiues of the wood of a hollow tree, or of light bords made square, and stooping somewhat afore. The worst hiues be those which be made of turfes or earth, because they be ouer hot in the Summer, and ouer cold in the winter. There be other two kinds of hiues, as the one made of drie hard cow dung, and the other of tiles. Of which the one doth Celsus rightly condemne, because the same is so lightly burned: and the other he alloweth, although he dissembleth the speciall commodity of it, because the same, if need requireth, cannot easily be remoued and caried into another place.

And among these, I suppose our forme of Hiues heere in England, are not altogether to be disallowed, although they be in like danger to bee easily burned, as the other hiues aboue taught, in that they be made with straw. But to be briefe, for a great swarme you ought to haue in a readines a great hiue, and for a small swarme a little hiue. And the hiue also ought to be a foote and a halfe, or two foot high, and in breadth aboue two foot and a halfe, or somewhat larger: hauing besides two very small and narrow holes, somewhat asunder, and so little ought the mouths to be, that neither beetle, butterflie, great moth, humblebees, Euet, nor mouse may enter in to spoile the hony combes. Some suppose, or rather affirme of experience, that the Bees are delighted with this closenes, in that they more ioy to do their works and busines in the darke then otherwise.

Of the cleanlinesse and sweetnesse of the keeper of Bees, and how Bees ought to be fenced about, and prepared within. Chap. 17.

The keper of bees, which mindeth to handle and look into hiues, ought the day before to refraine the veneriall Act,

not a perſon fearefull, nor comming to the hiue with vnwaſhed hands and face: and one that ought to refraine in a manner from all ſmelling meates, pondered meates, fried meates, and all other meats that doe ſtincke, like as the Leekes, the Onions, the Garlike, and ſuch like, which the Bees greatlie abhorre: beſides, to be then ſweet of body, cleanlie in apparell, minding to come vntotheir hiues, for in all cleanlineſſe and ſweetnes the bees are much delighted. Now thus prepared, and in a readineſſe, vpon the hiues firſt of the Bees, about the 8. or 10. day of Aprill, being then a cleare and warm day, and purge the hiues of al ſuch filth which is gathered in them all the winter before, like as Spiders webs, which ought eſpecially to be wiped away, becauſe they corrupt the combs: not with hands, but with a Ewie wing, the ſame ought to be done. After that, the hiue ought to be ſmoked with Ore or Cow dung, for in that (as it were by an affinity of the kind) doe the bees greatly delight. The little wormes alſo, which ſome name Paggots, that breed in the combes through the blowing of the butterflies, and alſo the butterflies ought to be killed and purged out of the hiue. If the combes happen to fall through infection or corruption in them, then make a ſmoke with the dry dung and marrow of an ore or cow, mixt together, that the ſauour may go vp to them, which for that time will cure the weake combes, ſtrengthen the Bees, and cauſe them to worke the luſtier afterward. And from the beginning of May, vnto the laſt of June, the hiues ought diligently to be loked vnto, that the yong ſwarms flie not away. Alſo from the tenth of June, vnto the tenth of Auguſt, the hiues ought to be opened now and then, and to bee ſmoked with ſuch like as afore is taught. Which although it be grieuous for the time to bees, yet the ſame is very profitable, and ſtrengthning them. And from the beginning of the Dogge daies, vnto the eighteenth of September, ought the bees to be carefully looked vnto, and defended from the violence of the horner bees, which often wait before the mouthes of the hiues, to ſet vpon and eate the hony bees. Now the keper in a faire Sunny day, ought to cleanſe the hiues of all manner

ner annoyances, as before is taught, and diligently to ſtoppe the chinckes and clefts about, ſaning the mouthes of the Hiues, with Oredung and clay mixed together. And this ought to be done for two or three daies before the change of the Mone, the better to defend the butterflie and others from creeping in. The hiues beſides ought to haue two big ſticks cleane ſcraped, and running a croſſe from ſide to ſide, and ſprinckled round about within with ſweete and pleaſant wine, or elſe the ſticks to be hard rubbed ouer with the green branches of Fenell, or other ſweete ſmelling hearbs, or with a little hony and leaues of the Pear-tree together, or with the branches of the herb Tyme flowring, or Sauery, or marioram, or the hearbe Balme and hony together. Some annoint the ſticks and hiue within with ſwéte Creame of new Cow milk, or with water and hony ſodden together, and that ſprinckled about within the hiue, that the Bees may be the rather and ſooner mooued to tarrie and dwell ſtill in their Hiues.

How Bees lacking hony, may be fed in that preſent need. Chap. 18.

BEcauſe the boiſterouſnes of the aire doth ſometime conſtrain the bées to abide in their hiues, and that they may not onely feede of hony, but at the riſing of the conſtellation, (named Vergiliæ) they may be fedde and cheriſhed, and the ſame done in this manner without great coſt. As firſt, if you take the number of ten figs, ſéething them in fiue pintes of faire Conduit or ſpring water, vnto a pint waſted, which after ſet on one ſide of the hiue within, laying many ſmall ſticks a croſſe ouer the liquor, that thoſe may ſerue in ſtead of bridges, the apter for them to drinke of the liquor without drowning in the ſame. Others will to ſeeth hony and water together, and the ſame to be powred into diſhes ſet at the one ſide of the hiue, in the which they will to put fine carded wool, that the bees may the better drinke now and then, and be not cloyed with too much drinking of the licor, by lighting into it. Others take figs and raiſons, beating them together, & after boiling them in the ſwéet liquor named Cuyte.

they

they powre into dishes, couering the same with oaten straws a crosse. Others also will to take a little hony, putting into the same a few oate cornes, that the bees lighting on them, may so keepe their wings from wetting in the lopor. Now all these meanes may well suffice to cherish and feed the bees in the winter time, lacking then food, being set neare vnto the mouthes of the hiues. So that if a longer hunger oppresseth them, then with the hiues fast by the entring in, set little gutters made of halfe canes, or great elder stickes cleft, into the which powre of the sweete liquors aboue taught, for by that meanes may they be well recouered and strengthened in the deepe of winter, when their food faileth them. Some will to put fresh birds cleane drawn, or the flesh of a hen finely shred into hiues, for the bees to feed and sucke vpon in the deepe of winter: and fine feathers also they will to put into the hiue, that they may giue them a warmth vnto the Bees lying in them. And others also will to put the meat of rosted chikens into their hiues to feede and sucke vpon, and not the bones withal, lest the sauour of the bones after the meate eaten off, might annoy the bees by lying still in the hiues, in that they so greatly abhorre all sowre and stincking sauors. Also these kinds of flesh ordered (as aboue said) may well serue bees in a drie Summer, when as the most flowres are then faded or quite gone away. Here note, that in the spring and Summer time, the Bee hiues ought to be looked vnto thrice in the moneth, gently smoking the Bees to cleanse the hiue of all maner of filth, and to sweepe forth the wormes. And Menecrates willeth the keeper of bees to kil the king black of colour, which by his malice disquieteth the other king, and corrupteth the hiue, in that he flieth out alone, or with a company of the bees following: so by that means (as Virgil writeth) shall the battell of bees be staied.

Palladius writeth, that the swarmes be increased in the moneth of May, and that in the outmost sides of the combes be the drone bees bred, which ought to be killed, in that those doe much disquiet the rest of the swarme. The butterflies also doe abound, which hee willeth diligently to kill, for their

their great annoyance vnto the hony Bées.

About the beginning of November ought the hiues then to bee cleared of their filth, ſo that all the winter following they may neither bee remoued or opened: And this may not bee done but in a warme Sunnie day. The combes may not be touched with hands, but with the feathers of a ſtiffe Gooſe wing, or ſuch bigge fowle. After that to ſtoppe the chinckes round about with Dre dung and clay finely laboured together, and to lay ſtraw thicke ouer the tops of the hiues, the better to defend the Bées from the colde and tempeſts.

How the dead Bees may be reſtored to life againe. Chap. 19.

The képer of Bées ought to loke-ſée and take héde, that the Bées periſh not through ouer great heate, or ouer mighty colde. If at any time by a ſuddaine ſhowre in the ſéeking for food, bées happen to be beaten down, or nipped with a ſuddaine cold (which ſeldome ſo commeth to paſſe, that the hony bees are ſo deceiued) that harmed with the drops, they lie groueling and flat vpon the earth, as dead in a manner, then gather ſuch bées together, putting them into ſome veſſell for the nonce, which after ſet in a warme Chamber or Parlour, and couer warme embers (being ſomewhat more then hot) on the Bées, which gently ſhake with the Aſhes, but in ſuch ſort that you touch them not with your hand: and ſetting the Bees in the Sunne, and neare vnto their Hiues, they will after recouer and flie againe into their cottages.

Of the battell that Bees haue ſometime amongſt themſelues. Chap. 20.

Virgil writeth, that Bées ſometimes minding to fight, do haſtily burſt out of the hiues, and (as were in ciuill batels among themſelues) do fight like ſtrangers one againſt the other, & ſmite eagerly in their fight one at another, if ſo be one hiue hath eſpecially 2. kings bred vp in the ſame, which very well may be known, when as the bées cluſtred and heaped together, do expreſſe or repreſſe (as it were) the forme of

two beards hanging downe. Now their readines to fight is knowne, when in the aire is heard a great ſound and noiſe among the bées, like to the manner of trumpets whiles they fiercely and cruelly fight together among themſelues, and in this battell they glitter with their wings, ſharpen the ſtings with their beakes, beare forth their breaſts, and about the king they gather and ſwarme: ſo that they ſhout with great noiſe, flying and daſhing together, and that in heaps & round companies mixed or ioyned together, and great is the noiſe made among them. And to be ſhort, in this ſtrong and eager battell, many of them fall headlong downe, and that thicker then haileſtones to the ground.

The kings themſelues in the meane time flying in the midle fronts, doe fight with a fierce courage within themſelues, and they are alſo ſéene to flie hither and thither among thick heaps and ſwarmes of the bées (like as valiant Captains are wont to do in the time of a battel) with their gliſtring wings and beakes, beating downe of the ſwarmes, here and there, and on each ſide of them of both parts: ſo that of themſelues not giuing ouer this eager battell, vntill the one part forced to turne the backe to the other, doe flie away with expedition.

Therefore that this doubtfull battell in the meane time may be ceaſed and quieted betwéen them, the wiſe practiſers will that the keeper of bées doe ſtay and appeaſe this broile of them, by the caſting of fine earth ouer the bées, while they be thus fighting, which (as the wiſe affirme) of experience doth forth-with pacifie the great ſtomackes and courages of both parts. But if this auaileth not, then with hony and water ſodden together, or raiſons in like order, or with any ſweete liquor ſprinkled on them, is their fury appeaſed, which doeth (as it were) with the pleaſant ſwéetnes, quiet the irefulneſſe of the warriours, and with the ſame in this controuerſie they are marueilouſly appeaſed. If neither of theſe remedies doe yet preuaile, then let the keeper marke diligently thoſe bees which fight in the front, and be moſt eager Captaines, that he may kill them with expedition, for by that meanes, and

with

with the other remedies aboue taught, may the battels and fight of the warriours be throughly ceaſed.

Now after the bées are thus quieted, and the ſwarme ſetled round on ſome grẽn bow next hand, then marke diligently whether the whole ſwarme hangeth downe like a cluſter of grapes, which ſo being, declareth there to bee either one king or two, by good agreement reconciled, which let alone on ſuch wiſe, vntill they flie backe vnto their proper home. But if the ſwarme ſhall be diuided into two or many round cluſters, then iudge that there be yet many Captains left, & that their ire is not ceaſed, and in thoſe parts where you eſpecially ſee the bées to cluſter moſt thicke and round together, there diligently ſeeke out the captains, yet annoint your hand before with the iuice of the hearbe Balme, that touching or handling the bees, they flie not hither & thither, after which put in your fingers gently, and ſeuering the Bées aſunder, ſeeke diligently among them, vntill you find out the author and procurer of the battell, which you ought likewiſe to kill. Virgil writeth, that the kings ſometimes flie forth for a vain delight, to ſport them flying in the aire, which you may eaſily ſtay and let, if that you plucke off the kings wings, that he cannot afterward flie.

How Bees may be recouered and found againe. Chap 21.

IF ſo it happeth, that your bées are flowen away, and that you be in doubt whether they be lodged neare hand, or far off, Palladius doth inſtruct and teach many goodly waies to find them againe. Firſt he teacheth to take red lead, or red oker infuſed in water, or any other colour ſtaining, and to carie the ſame with you in a little ſhallow diſh, to ſuch a ſpring or running water as the honie bees haunt, eſpecially in the moneth of Aprill, and there ſitting downe, await the comming of the bees to drinke, which after they be come, & there drinking, ſtaine in the meane time ſuch bees with a ruſh coloured red at the end, as you may well reach with the ſame, ſitting yet ſtill, and watching the comming againe of thoſe bees marked to drinke, which if they ſhortly returne, then is it an euident note and token, that their lodging and

cottages be neare hand: but if those Bées are long before they returne and come againe to the place, then may you suppose and iudge them to be far off, and the distance you may gesse according to their long tarrying and soone comming againe. That you may easily finde the place where the Bees lodge, whether the same be farre or neare hand, Palladius teacheth the same wittily in this manner:

First he willeth to take one whole ioynt of a big cane or Elder sticke, stopped at the one end, and the other end left open to annoint within with a little hony, which lay neare to that spring or running water, that the Bées daily haunt vnto. Now when the Bees resort to the same, and that certaine be entred within the quill, through the sauor thereof, then stop the hole with your thumbe, letting one of the Bees afterward to flie forth, which diligently marke, and follow that way it flieth, for it will shew you part of the way vnto their home: and after you can see the same no further, then quickly set forth another Bée, whose flight in like manner marke and follow after, for that it may also shew part of the way to their home: and so let flie the Bees by one and one vntill they bring you vnto the place of the swarme. Now if the same place be deepe in the earth, then with a smoke made either of drie Flaxe or Brimstone, driue the Bees out, and when the swarme is come forth, then ring on a Bason or shrill pan, for being by and by feared with the shrill sound of the same, the swarm either lighteth on a yong tree, or on the opener bough of a big tree, which so found out, couer ouerwith a hiue prepared for the nonce. But if the swarme be placed in the hollow of a tree, and haning boughes, or in the stock of the same tree, then with a very sharpe saw (if the meanes of the same will giue leaue) cut it asunder: and in such sort, that the part empty aboue the Bees be first cut, and the part beneath, in which it seemeth the Bees to be lodged, to be likewise cut asunder, and the stocke thus cut asunder at both the ends, couer with a faire sheete, lest any lagge clifts appeare after the cutting, which also annoint with hony, for the better staying in of the Bees, and after carry the same home

which

which place by your other hiues, making small holes in the same, for their flying in and out (as afore was taught) in the ordering of the other hiues. But it behoueth the diligent searcher, to chuse the morning times for the finding out of Bees, whereby you may haue the space and liberty of the day before you to find out their resort: For by looking late after them, it falleth out, although the Bées are neare hand, yet because they haue then done their busie and carefull labour, they flie no longer abroad to seeke food, nor yet resort to drinke: through which it so commeth to passe, that the searcher after Bées knoweth not then how neare, or farre off the swarme is from the spring or running water. Some take the iuice of the hearbe Balme in the spring time, and annoint the same round about the hiue, whereby the sauor of the iuice may cleaue and abide on the vessell, which afterward being faire within, sprinkle about with a little hony, setting the same hiue downe neare to the wood or groue of trees fast by that spring of water running by it, and after the same be filled with a swarme, carry it gently home. Yet doth not this like, but in such places where the swarmes of Bees doe abound, for that oftentimes it so happeneth, that vnlesse the hiues be daily watched, such as go by doe take them away. But to lose some hiues greatly hindereth not, so that you may in the meane whiles enioy one or two of the full.

Now hitherto hath bin sufficiently taught such remedies and helpes, as necessarily serue to the taking and recouering of Bees lost, and otherwise to finde out most strange swarmes.

That Bees sting no person comming neare their Hiues. Chap. 21.

PLinie in his 20. booke writeth, that the hearbe Sperage bruised and mixed with oyle, and one beeing annointed with the same, doth defend him from being stinged by comming nigh to their Hiues. And in his 18. booke he also writeth, that if any man happen to be stinged by a scorpion, that he shall neuer after be stinged of any bee: but yet being sting-

ed, he teacheth to drinke the iuice of hearbe grace and Rew, mixed with wine, and to lay the leaues also in plaster forme on the stinged place. In the xvi. booke he writeth, that Bees stings are by nature venemous, against the which he teacheth to take and vse the iuice of Mallowes, or the iuice of Ivy leaues, and to annoint either of the two on the stinged places, as a soueraigne remedy. And in the 23. booke he teacheth, that wine boiled with Bay leaues, ann after drunke, is a very good remedy. In the 24. booke he teacheth, to take a drop of that molten, which the hony Bees make at the entry of the hiue, to be a like remedy as the water Bezoar to bee vsed against venemous bites. Auicen in his second rule teacheth, that the decoction of the March Mallows, with vineger or wine, and the same annointed on stinged places, to be a perfect remedy: which also in his fourth rule affirmeth, that the hony Bees haue like dispositions vnto the waspe, saning that they leaue their stings behind them: wherefore for remedy of the wasps, you may vse those which we haue afore taught against the stings of Bees.

When and how the Hiues ought to be gelded. Chap. 23.

PAlladius Rutilius in his first book teacheth, that the hiues of Bees ought not to be gelded, before you well consider and see whether they be ripe, vnto the comming of the true hony, which in a manner (as he teacheth) commeth to vse in the moneth of June, or as others affirme, in the ende of August, vnto the middle of September.

Now there be certaine notes and tokens by which we try and find out the ripenes of them, which be these: First, if the hiues be ful, then do the hony Bees drive forth the idle drone Bees out of the hiues, and there is also heard within a small or shrill humming of the Bees, for that the empty cottages of the combes (as it were hollow buildings) doe receiue a sound and noise procured then bigger, so that when there is hard a big and hoarse sound of the humming of them, then is it not yet meet to geld the combes. Varro writeth, that it is then time to geld hiues, when as you see within, that the

Bees

Bees hang clustring round, and that the holes of the hony combes be couered ouer (as it were) with thin caules, for then be they full of hony. Now the day of gelding the hiues, ought to be done timely in the morning, when as the bees are astonied through the colde aire, and not done in the heate of the day, when they be procured to flie forth of the hiues, and being then very angry to sting those persons which come to the hiues. The manner of gelding of the Hiues is after this wise: First, stoppe the holes of the hiues, that the Bees passe not forth, with grasse or some other hearbe, after that put vnder fine linnen rags or straw, making a little smoke with the same, which smoke so flying vp, causeth the bees after to breake, and leaue their clustring together.

After these, with two instruments or toles of iron (made for the only purpose) of a foot and a half long, or rather somewhat longer, of which the one ought to be a long knife, and broad of either side the edge, and hauing a crooked file on the one end, the other at the beginning plaine, and very sharpe, whereby with this the combes may the readier and quicklier be cut downe, and with the other scraped cleane: and whatsoeuer filth falleth off, draw away, and throwe aside. But where the hiue of the hinder part, or part behinde, shall haue no voyde place empty, then make a smoke (as Varro commandeth) with Galbanum, and drie Ore dung, which ought to be made in an earthen fuming pan, filled with quick coles, or a pan of earth with a narrow mouth, and a handle like to it, so that the one part ought to be sharper and narrower vpward, by which the smoke may passe by the little holes, and the other part where the coles are broader, and with a large mouth of the one side of it, by which the person may blowe the coles. Now such a potte when it is set within the hiue, and the smoke stirred vp vnto the Bees, they by and by vnquieted with the sauour, flie vnto the fore-part of the hiue, and sometimes flie quite out of the hiue, whereby any may looke into the hiue (in a manner) without harme. If there happen to be two swarmes in one Hiue, then are there also two kindes or formes of honie combes: For euery

company

company of Bées in a grément together, both fashion and frame the ware as liketh them best. But all the hony combs being hollow wrought, and a little cleaning vnto the sides of the Hiue, doe hang, whereby they may not touch a floore or board, for so it causeth the swarmes to flie quite away: and the forme of their ware is such, as the condition of their cottages is. For some bées do make both square and round spaces, and some long, so that each frameth (as it were) certaine formes in the combes according to his kind, whereby the hony combes are not found alwaies alike in fashion: but these combes of what forme soeuer they be, are not to be taken all out of the Hiues. For in the beginning of Haruest, whiles the fields yet flourish, take a fift part of the combes, but after, when Winter is at hand, then leaue a third part behind.

Palladius willeth the hiues to be gelded in the moneth of October, and that a third part be left behind. Yet consider that if there be store, to make the more, if but a meane, then the halfe part of that leaue for the winter time: if the cottages appeare but halfe full, then take nothing away. Varro teacheth, that a third part of the combes may be taken away and the other part left for the winter, although the combs be full of hony: if you feare (saith he) a sharpe winter to follow, then take nothing at all. Of the same minde is the learned Virgil: but the expert practisers of our time in such matters do affirme, that the hony ought to be taken away but once in the yeare, and this in the end of the moneth of August, vnto the middle of September. But the ware being corrupt, then both before, and at any time may be taken forth of the Hiues.

Also as touching the honie which the Bees giue, whether you may take away either little or much, must be considered according to the smalnesse or plentifulnesse of that hony being in the hiue. And according to the smalnesse or greatnes also of the swarme to be nourished, so that aboue the fourth part of the combes may not be taken from any hiue, yet this order may not be vsed alike in all countries, because

a man must consider the dealing with the hiues, according to the multitude of flowres, & plentifulnes of food for the bées. If the waxie combes hanging downe, doe run into a length, then with the same iron toole, which is made like to a knife, being oftentimes dipped in water, that the waxe cleaue not vnto it, or that the combes remaining may be harmed, and the hiue holden on the one side, cut the combes away. After this, put both your armes into the hiue, gathering together, and taking forth the combes. But if the combes hang ouerthwart in the hiue, then must you vse your scraping yron, that the combes on the further side thrust together, may so be cut away. Also the olde and corrupt combes are to be taken forth, the whole and full of hony to be especially left. And if there be any yong bees in them, those keepe or preserue to increase the swarme in that hiue: after that carry all the store of the hony combes into one place, where as you minde to make your honie, and stoppe diligently the sides and edges of the hiues round about, that none of the Bées may enter in, which for the hony, and waxe taken away, doe eagerly seeke after, and finding the same, doe viterly consume the same if they may. Therefore of the former matters must a smoke be made, and that at the entrie or mouth of the hiues, that the Bées assaying to flie in, may through the smoke bee driuen to flie backe againe. Now after their hiues be geloed, and that any shall haue ouerthwart and crossed combes at the entrance of the hiue, those then shall be so conuerted, that the parts behind may be emptied and left void for another time. So that when they shall be next geloed, the old combes rather then the new to be taken forth, and the waxe renued, for that the older the waxie combes are, so much the worse they be.

If it happeneth, that the hiue bee so made that the same may not be remoued out of the place, then ought you to geld first the hinder part, and after the forepart: and this especially ought to be done afore fiue a clocke in the morning, and after nine of the clocke at night, or in the next morrow. Now the bées when they know this, al come to fil the empty place,

ſo that after they haue repaired and filled the ſame, and fulfilled all the reſt about it, then flie they to the forepart, and do worke in like order. By which we may euidently learne, that they haue filled the ſame emptie place alſo, by their abiding ſtill there. Beſides theſe, as the great plentie of honie doth cauſe ſlaggiſhnes in the Bees, euen ſo doth the much abatement, and exceeding taking away of their hony, both dull the quicknes and diligence of them, and cauſe them alſo to be ſluggiſh.

What the Hony is, and how from the hiues the ſame may be prepared to vſe. Chap. 24.

AS wee firſt gather the Honie from the combes, ſo doe we the waxe for the comfort of light, and other commodities beſides. Now what the Hony is, and how the ſame taken from hiues may bee prepared to vſe, ſhall hereafter be taught.

Firſt, the learned Iſidore writeth, the Honie to be of the dew of ſome liquid mattter, and affirmeth alſo the ſame to be found ſometimes in the leaues of great Canes. To which in a manner doth Publius Maro agree, in this verſe writing, that hitherto the heauenly gifts are of the Aereall Hony. Others teach, the Honie in India and Arabia to bee like to ſalt, gathered there on the leaues of trees: others do doubt, whether hony be a ſweat from heauen, or a certaine ſpittle of the ſtarres, or the iuice of the aire purging it ſelfe. But whatſoeuer ſubſtance the ſame is, yet is it a moſt ſweete, ſubtile, and healthfull iuice, as Pliny witneſſeth, which at the firſt gathering of it is as cleare water, but after the boiling a while and purging of it ſelfe, as new wine (after the preſſing forth) and doth from the twentieth day after, come to a perfectneſſe of hony, through the often temperings of it in hot daies, from the beginning of May, vnto the middle of June.

Now the hony is gathered in this maner: Firſt before the hony be preſſed out of the combs, muſt thoſe corrupt combs, hauing red filth, & hauing yong in them (if any ſuch be there) bee preſſed out, becauſe they both procure an euill taſte, and

with

with that iuice corrupt the hony. These combs bruised together, ought to be put into a clean presse, being yet warm, and new gathered out of the hiues the same day, which let lie there, vntill the hony by little and little be run forth, or rather for the more expedition pressed forth with a heauy waight, and the same which is then come, is very faire raw hony. After that, the hony with the wax must be boiled together, as hereafter shall be taught.

Now when the combes be thus bruised together, and the yong bees killed and cast forth, then must you make your hony in this maner: As first, in the month of September or October, take the heauier and olde hiues, which are of two or three yeares olde, and not hauing bred swarmes in the summer before: and that ouer smoke with a flame of straw, brimstone or yellow brimstone, the hiue being a little whiles holden that the Bees may so flie vp to the top of the hiue, or else such as remaine below burne their wings. After that turne downe the head of the hiue on the ground, and with a sharpe knife cut the crossed sticks asunder in the hiue, or plucke them forth with your hand for by that meanes are the combs well bruised together, and the Bees either killed with the fall of them, or else flie away. After this, put all the combes on a heape, being gathered out of the hiues here and there, into a presse, leaning somewhat on the one side: but some put the combs into a wine basket made of smal willow or oser sticks finely knit and wrought together, that being hanged vp in a darke place, the hony may runne thorow by little and little from it. After that the hony hath thus run forth into a cleane earthen pan or bowle standing vnder it, then the same after poure into an earthen pot, or pots being as yet raw Honie, but clearer and better then the other liquor of the Honie: which for certaine daies let stand open, that the sweete liquor may bee thorowly cooled, and the same in the meane whiles often skimme or purge with a spoone. Now after this, the fine pieces or crummes of the combes, which yet remaine in the bagge of wicker, or wine basket, or presse, put into an earthen pot, pan, or kettle, ouer a very soft fire, that the

ſame may heat without boyling, alwaies keepe your hand in the veſſell, to ſtirre ſtill about hither and thither the hony and ware, and to open alſo the ware by peece-meale vntil the hony, and not the ware, ſhal be thorowly molten. When the hony through the heat beginneth a little to pricke the hand, then poure all the whole maſſe or ſubſtance into a ſtrainer, and putting the ſame in a preſſe made for the onely purpoſe, wring it hard about: yet it maketh no great matter, if the ſame be not ſo earneſtly wringed or preſſed out, that none of the honie remaine yet with the ware, ſeeing that the hony and ware haue effects in ſome cauſes alike. Now this hony, which is thus run forth, is named the ſodden hony, which ought in like manner to be poured into earthen pots, and to ſtand open for certain daies, ſkimming it daily with a ſpone, vntill it be thorow cold. The noblier or worthier hony, is that which runneth out in a maner of it owne accord, before the ſecond preſſing out of the combes. And mixe not of this ſecond hony with the firſt, but keepe them diligently apart, leſt by mixing the firſt vnto the ſecond, you make the beſt (being the firſt) the worſer. After all this thus handled, the ſame that remaineth in the ſtrainer, waſh diligently with conduit or faire ſpring water, that you may ſo haue the milke or hony water, of which being ſodden, and diligently ſkimmed (as of this hereafter ſhall be further taught) is the milke made, that ſerueth to many good vſes.

Which Hony is accounted beſt. Chap. 25.

CErtaine Countries do excell in the perfect goodnes of hony, like as the famous Attica of Greece, which for the excellencie of the hony, is had in great reputation thorowout the world. Hybla alſo and Hymetus, being hils of the ſame Country, which the deceiuers apply to hony, that the ſame may both be named Hymetus and Hybleus hony. Creta, Cyprus, and Affrica, as in goodneſſe they are notable and worthy, ſo the abundant or marueilous plenty of the honie is there commended. Alſo the newnes of hony is likewiſe commended as the ancientneſſe of wines, but chiefly the ſpring and Summer hony, eſpecially if the veſſell or hiue ſtand in a

valley

valley or bottome, and doth excel in the waight of hand. But the hony gathered of bitter hearbes is counted vnprofitable, as that same hony which the bées gather in the Countrey of Pontus, where the bées onely gather their hony of the wormwood. The white in all countries is better estéemed then the blacke, but the best hony is that which is very cleare, of a golden colour, of a most pleasant and sweet taste, cleauing somewhat to the fingers in the handling, and but little stirring or waxing hard together, and that in the pouring forth, doeth strait-way breake heere and there, and spirteth or sprinkleth (suddenly as it were) sundry droppes abroad, which being on this wise, Pliny teacheth to be the triall and sure note of good and profitable hony.

Of the venemous Hony, and of the wonderfull Hony of Creta. Chap. 26.

IT so much forceth to vnderstand and know, what maner of food the same is, with the which the bées doe line, as the poysoned hony also that may be gathered by them, whether it be euill or venemous. For the hony of Heraclea in that countrey of Pontus, hath beene for certaine yeares very dangerous, especially through a certaine hearbe growing white, which also vexeth their cattell by eating thereof, named of the dwellers there, Ægellothron. But by these notes is that hony found out, and tried to be venemous: as first, that the same is not thicke at all, the colour brighter or more glittering, and hath a strong sauour, mouing forth-with often sneesing, and is also waightier. Also such persons as taste somewhat thereof, doe couet to lie or fall hastily on the earth, séeking for coldnes, and be all on a sweate, so that in such suddaine dangers, must some spéedy helpes or remedies be ministred: like as the olde Pulse of the best hony, and hearbe Grace, or other like confections, be often ministred vnto such persons. There is also another kind of venemous hony, in the border of the Country of Pontus, that for the madnesse which it engendreth, is named of the people Neonomenon: the same hony is supposed to be gathered of the flowre Rhododendros, which groweth plenty there in the woods. Pliny writeth of

a marueilous hony to bee in Creta, for that in Carina, being a hill of that Countrey, hee affirmeth a Honie to bee gathered which the flies will not touch, and supposed also to bee a singular Honie for the composition of euery medicine.

Of the miraculous worthinesse of Hony. Chap. 27.

MOst men in Italy prepare and make their medicines which they purpose to keepe long with hony, so that hony preserueth euery thing from putrifying, which you would haue in safety, and to continue for a season through his clamminesse. And of this, ancient men did enbalme the bodies of the dead, which they would haue preserued, and to continue sound without corrupting many yeres, with hony onely, and the same they also smeared within the tombs or sepulchres of the dead, for the longer keeping of the bodies. The selfe same writeth the learned Papinus, of the body of Alexander, which was likewise embalmed with hony. And not vnlike to this writeth Pliny, in the 22. Booke, and 24. chapter of his Histories of sundry dead bodies also embalmed with honie. And in another place of his Historires writeth Claudius Cæsar, that brought a monster out of Egypt into his country, which was also embalmed with hony. Ahanæus also writeth, that bodies subiect to sicknesses, may both be kept free from sicknesses, and from corrupting a long time, through the often smearing and anointing of hony of all the body. And the like writers report, that those of the Isle of Corsica, or Corse doe, which liue a long time.

The Macrobians being a people in Affricke, named also Moœrein, do liue a long time (as certaine Authors write) because with the meate of hony, which is plentifull with them, they daily be fed, & vse continually. Some affirme, that Democritus being recreated by hony, with the onely breath and sauour of the hony made hot, lined (as they write) vnto 109. yeares. Aristoxenus writeth, that the table of Pythagoras was daily furnished with only bread and hony, and yet lined vnto the foure score and ten yeares of the Philosopher Heraclides.

clides. The hony also is found to auaile against surfeits, and of this accounted amongst medicines for the putting away drunkennes. Wherefore it is no maruell, that such thorowly skilfull in Physicke, when any be ouer-cloyed or filled with wine, do counsell first to empty their stomacks by vomiting, and after, against the force of the fume euaporating of the remnant of the wine yet remaining, they giue them to eate hony spread on bread, as it were by putting backe the euill, that it may so remedy and put away the grosse fume.

How profitable the vse of Hony is in medicines. Chap. 28.

FIrst, the white hony is to be vsed in cooling medicines, but the yellow in heating medicines: also the nature and property of hony, is to cleanse and open, and to expell humours, therefore it is profitably applied in filthy vlcers, being boiled and anointed vpon. It closeth also lose and gaping flesh, through his wholnesse. And with Liquid Allome and Hony, sodden together, are Ringwormes, and cornes or swelling of the feet healed, by anointing therewith. Against the vncertaine soundings and noise of the eares, and grieuous paines of them, take the honie, ground with that salt digged out of the earth, and droppe warme into the eares: the selfe same killeth both nits and lice, by onely anointing the head therewith. Also the hony purgeth the eies dimme of sight, healeth swellings, and other defaults and griefes of the iawes, the swelling and kernels vnder the iawes neare to the throte, after the preparing to vse the same gargeled in the throte, and the mouth washed therewith. The hony eaten, cleanseth vrine, helpeth the cough (being cleane skimmed before) and the bite of a snake or adder. The hony also helpeth those which haue drunk vnwares the iuice of blacke poppy, so that against the same euill & danger they drink rosed hony warme. Also the same drunke helpeth the malice & danger of Mushromes eaten, & the bite of a mad dog, or melting in ỳ mouth, after the forme of an Eclegma. Yet all the sorts of raw hony be windy and swel the body, moning a rumbling or noise in ỳ belly, procuring ỳ cough, easily conuerted into euil humors,

stopping

ſtopping the liuer and milt, through the clammineſſe, and is hurtfull to cholericke bodies, if ſo be the hony before (as Dioſcorides writeth) be not throughly ſkimmed and cleanſed as the ſame ought to be. The hony alſo boiled, doth better nouriſh then the raw, yet leſſe moouing the belly to ſolubleneſſe, and to the ſtoole. And the hony of it ſelfe, or mixed with others, helpeth the ſore in the lungs, and all other diſeaſes of the lungs.

The hony is rightly miniſtred to ſuch as haue the impoſtume in the lungs, and the pleuriſie. And the hony in which dead bées are, is applied to the venemous hony. The hony drunke with wine, helpeth the corruptions which are engendred of the meat fiſhes: but to cold and moiſt bodies the honie is more profitable, therefore very fit for olde perſons, as Galen affirmeth. And to perſons being twentie yeres of age, and of an intemperate hotneſſe, or others hot of qualitie, the hony to them is hurtfull, becauſe it is ſoone conuerted into choler in them. Democritus was vpon a time aſked, by what meanes men might both continue in perfect health, and line vnto very olde yeares? To which he thus anſwered: if ſo be men anoint their bodies outward with Oyle, and apply their bodies inward with hony. Further, hony profiteth weake perſons, being applied: as the Pulſe water, of which ſhal after be taught in the next Chapter. To perſons of cold nature, the hony may aptly be miniſtred in pot broth: but to hot perſons, miniſtred in warme broth, the hony is not rightly giuen. The hony mixed with Camphora, and lying to ſettle three daies before, with the which anointing the face, doeth ſpéedily cleanſe the ſpots in the face, the like doeth the hony mixed with the gale of an Ore. The pure white hony cleanſeth the breaſt, ſoftneth impoſtumes, being as well without as within the body. The hony alſo mundifieth, openeth the ſtoppings of the liuer and milt, helpeth dropſie bodies, and ſtrengtheneth weake members. The Aromaticke hony much auaileth in ſundry diſeaſes, being thus prepared: as the pure red roſe leaues, finely clipped, and after boiled in pure white hony, being often and diligently ſkimmed: for

ſuch

ſuch Honie doeth comfort and mundifie, diſſolueth incleanſing the clammie ſwellings, digeſteth the flegmaticke and groſſe humours: and drunke alſo with colde water, it bindeth the belly, but miniſtred with warme water, it looſeth the belly.

Of the drinke of Hony, which is called Mulſe water, or ſweete water of the Romanes. Chap. 29.

By the anſwere of Pollio the Romane, to Auguſtus Emperour, we may euidently learne, that the Mulſe made of hony, is healthfull drinke in ſtrengthning the body. For Auguſtus on a time demanded of him by what meanes a man might liue to great yeares, and all that ſeaſon free from ſickneſſes: To whom he thus anſwered: that applying the mulſe water within, and annointing oyle without the body, doeth worke the like. The Mulſe truely is a drinke made of water and hony mixed together, which the Greekes properly name Melicrate, and ſome Hidromel, as the drinke made with wine vnlaied, or without water and hony they aptly name Oenomel. Now the Mulſe water drunke, doth eaſe the paſſage of wind or breath, ſoftneth the belly: and the long time of oldneſſe, change it into the kind of wine, is moſt agreeable and profiting to the ſtomacke, but the ſame is contrary to the ſinewes: yet it recouereth the appetite loſt, and is a defence againſt the dangerous drinke of Henbane, if it bee miniſtred with Alles milke. This drinke truly (Ægineta writing therof) is thus made: let right times ſo much water be mixed vnto your hony prepared, which boile or ſeeth ſo long, vntill no more ſome ariſeth to be ſkimmed off, then taking it from the fire, preſerue it to your vſe. But Paul Ægineta affirmeth, that the Mulſe profiteth nothing (in a manner) the cholericke, becauſe the ſame in them is lightly conuerted into choler.

Of the drinke Oenomel, which is made of pure wine and hony. Chap. 30.

The Oenomel, which is a ſweete wine made with hony, Ægineta teacheth to be good, not onely for the preſeruation of health, but alſo to expell the torment of ſickneſſes,

and that which giueth not onely ſtrength of body and courage, but the long race of yeares: alſo it expelleth an old griefe of the reines, being often drunke with parcely ſeeds. But the beſt Oenomell is that which is made of olde and tart wine, and the beſt purified hony, for the ſame doth leſſe ſwell. The ſame alſo harmeth, being drunke after meales, but before taken, doth procure an appetite. Dioſcorides teacheth the maner of making the Oenomell in this order: firſt he willeth to take one galon and a quart of wine, and mixing it with halfe a galon & a pint of the beſt hony, to prepare the ſame orderly. But ſome prepare or make the drinke ſpædilier to vſe after this manner: as boyling the hony with wine, and after pouring forth the ſame into other veſſels.

Of the ſingular water of Hony, gotten by order of diſtillation. Chap. 31.

The hony of Bées met to diſtillation, ought eſpecially to be white of colour, which before the diſtilling muſt bee mixed with pure, white, and well waſhed ſand, but not drie in any caſe, after that put the ſame either into a common roſe Limbecke of Tinne, ſetting a haire ſiue cloſe vpon it, that it may touch the hony in the diſtilling, or elſe into a body of Glaſſe ſet into a pot of fine ſifted aſhes or ſand, making at the firſt a ſoft fire vnder it, vntill the firſt water be come, which is white: and after the yellow water appeareth, then put vnder another receiuer, ſetting aſide the white: and ſo long diſtil vntil the red beginneth to ſhew, at the appearance of which, put vnder another receiuer, letting that remaine vntill no more will come. Which red water being the laſt, ſerueth for ſundry vſes, as to die womens haire yellow, by often wetting the haire with a ſponge, and drying the ſame in the hot Sun. Alſo it cauſeth faire and long haire, and ſtayeth the ſheding of haire: beſides (this third water) doeth cleanſe the foul corruption and matter being in filthy woundes and old vlcers, if they be waſhed twice a day with the ſame, cauſing alſo new fleſh to growe in thoſe places, if you daily waſh them with the ſaid water, or otherwiſe dippe linnen clouts in it, laying them aptly on the ſores. The ſelfe ſame

healeth

healeth places grieuously burned, without appearance of any scarre afterward, by often applying linnen clouts dipped in it. And the second water (being of golden colour) dropped in the eies, doth not only helpe swolne and bleared eies, but the pin and web in them, by the daily and often dropping of the same into the eyes. But as touching the white, and first water, there is no worthy matter mentioned in this place by any of the old practisers.

Another manner of distilling the hony, more at large taught. Chap. 32.

TAke a pint, or as much as you will of the pure rosed hony, which put it into a body of glasse, close couered & luted about, setting the same after into hot horse-dung, with a square stone on the head, and couering it with the horse-dung for 14. daies: after which time, take the body forth, setting it into a furnace of fine sifted ashes, well a finger breath or more about the hony, presupposing on your part, that little pèces of flint stones be put into the hony, and then distilled with a soft fire into a receiuer, well luted at the mouth, for doubt of the aire breathing forth. When the same beginneth to distil, then draw forth part of the fire (vnlesse you can otherwise gouerne your fire by the helpe of the furnace) which comming forth white, let so long distill, till there appeare yellow drops like to golde. Vpon the sight of this, set vnder another receiuer, keeping diligently this first water by it selfe, and increasing the fire, let that so long distill, till certaine white smokes appeare running into the receiuer, and that speedily take away, putting to another receiuer, which let so long distill, vntill no more will drop forth: and this last is of a ruby colour in redneſſe, so that if a woman often wetting the haire of her head with this third water, sitting then in the hotte Sun, both to dry and wet them again, wearing in the meane whiles a large strawn hat with an open crown, to spread the hairs vpon for the speedier drying of them, which ordering doth not only cause the hairs to grow longe very faire but dieth them in time so yellow as golde. Also to diuers other vses this red water serues, as more is taught in ye other chapter.

The white water (which commeth firſt) by waſhing the face orderly with it, doth cauſe it to become cleare and faire, and keepeth the ſkin from looking olde for a long time, as the ſame hath beene experienced often by the worthy Dames of Rome, Naples, and Venice. And the yellow like gold, being the ſecond water, doth eſpecially ſerue to this vſe, that if any perſon happeneth to bee infected with the plague or peſtilence, then to take two ounces of this yellowe water of Aloes Epatick, of red Myrhhe, & of the eaſt ſaffron, of ech ten grains, and a leafe of the beſt golde; all which grind into fine pouder, mixing the ſame with this water, and after that giue it vnto the ſicke to drinke, which no doubt will both helpe this and many other diſeaſes.

The manner of diſtilling a water of hony, named the Quinteſſence. Chap. 33.

TO make this ſingular & pretious water, you muſt take two pounds of the pureſt white hony, being both cleare and pleaſant in taſt, which put into a body of glaſſe, being ſo bigge, that foure or fiue parts of it may remaine empty, the ſame luted ſtrongly about, ſetting the head after on it, and a receiuer aptly to the noſe of the Still. When you haue thus done, then make a gentle fire at the firſt vnder it, but after increaſe the fire or heat more and more, vntill certaine white ſmokes appeare in the head of the glaſſe body, which you muſt workmanly coole and turne into water, by the wetting of linnen clothes in cold water, and laid on the head and noſe toward the receiuer, for that turneth into a water ſo red as blood: and being all come, put it into another glaſſe, ſtopping the mouth cloſe: which let ſtand ſo long, vntill the water bee come very cleare, and in colour to the Rubie. Now being on this wiſe, diſtill the ſame againe in Balneo Mariæ, and ſo often repeat this, vntill you haue diſtilled it fiue or ſeuen times ouer, that the colour be changed in the end to the colour of golde: which then is moſt pleaſant of fauor, and ſo ſweete, that nothing may be compared like vnto it in fragrantnes of ſmell.

The Quinteſſence doth diſſolue gold, prepareth it apt to

be

be drunke, and any Jewell put into the water, it doeth alſo diſſolue the ſame. Alſo this is named the bleſſed water, in that giuing to any two or three drams to drinke, being at the point of death, doeth ſo ſuddainly recouer the perſon againe, as doeth the Quintellence of wine. And waſhing any grieuous wound or ſtripe with the water, doth in ſhort time heale the ſame. Alſo this pretious water doth marueilouſly helpe the cough, the rheume, the diſeaſe of the Splene, and many other diſeales, which would ſcarcely be beleeued. The water alſo miniſtred daily vnto a perſon ſicke of the palſey, for the ſpace of fiue and forty daies, will by the mighty helpe of God, and this miraculous water, thoroughly heale the diſeaſe. Alſo this Quintellence doth helpe the falling ſickneſſe, and preſerueth the body from putrifying, ſo that by all theſe we may learne, that this is rather a diuine water from heauen (and ſent from God) to ſerue vnto all ages.

The manner of drawing and making waxe of the honie combes. Chap. 34.

The hony being drawne from the combs, although ſome bees hang on them dead, yet put altogether into a faire pan or cauldron into which powre ſo much water or more, as the quantitie of the combs be. This ſet ouer a ſoft fire, vntill the ſame be thoroughly heated and molten in the pan, and in the melting continually ſtir the ſame about with a big ſplatter, or ſome ſtaffe, leſt the waxe cleaue to the pannes ſides through the flame or heat of the fire, and appeare burned: after, powre the whole ſubſtance into a courſe hairen bag, preſſing it forth into a trough, or other like veſſell made for the onely purpoſe, on which powre two or three kettles ful of hot water, that no dregges hang after on the waxe, and by that meanes ſhal you haue the waxe both pure and cleane. But if you will haue it caſt into faire round cakes, and to be cleaner and purer, then melt the waxe againe, and being molten, powre it into a cleane veſſel, which waſhed likewiſe with hot water, (as aboue was taught) ſet after in the Sunne, by which meanes the cake will continue very long faire of colour.

What waxe is beſt allowed and commended. Chap. 35.

WAx, being the ſeed of light, and ſeruing vnto innumerable vſes of men, of al the kinds the ſame is beſt allowed and commended, which is both new made, meanely red of colour, ſomewhat fattie, ſmelling ſweet, hauing ſome ſauor in it of the hony, and cleare. Of the Waxe alſo of ſundrie Countries, that in the Country of Pontus is well commended, and the ſame in the Iſle of Creta: next to theſe is the waxe in the Iſle of Corſica, which is made of the Bore træ, and ſuppoſed to haue ſome good effects in it for Medicine.

Of the great commoditie and benefite of waxe in Medicines. Chap. 36.

WAxe hath a meane among heating things, both in the coling, drying, and moiſtning, as writeth Galen in the ſeuenth booke of ſimples, and 22. Chapter, which properly helpeth the roughneſſe of the breaſt, when it is ſoined or mixt with the oile of Violets, for that it both moiſteth or ſoftneth the ſinewes, and ripeneth and diſſolueth vlcers. The quantitie of a peaſe in waxe ſwallowed downe of nurſes, or ſuch women as giue ſucke, doth diſſolue the milke courded in the paps. And ten little pieces of pure new waxe, vnto the bignes of a hemp ſeed, drunke down at one time, doeth cauſe the milke not to courd in the womans ſtomacke and breaſts. If the priuy place, or thereabout, of either man or woman, happeneth to ſwell, then by applying an ointment made of white waxe, it ſhortly aſſwageth and healeth the ſame. If any alſo happeneth to be diſeaſed with the bloody flixe, by ſtuffing a yong Pigeon with new waxe, after roſting the ſame, and eating the fleſh thereof, doth in ſhort time after ſtay the ſame. Alſo, if a quince made hollow and filled with pure new waxe, be after roſted vnder hot embers vntill the ſame bee tender, & eaten faſting without drinking after it, doth in like ſort ſtay and helpe the perillous flixe, and ſcouring of blood. The wax beſides, ſerueth to al maner of plaſters, ointments, ſuppoſitories, and ſuch like.

Of

Of that which is a ſtay of the combes, and made for a defence of Bees from cold. Chap. 37.

THe ſame made of bées at the entry of the mouth of hiues, ought to be yellow of colour, and ſweet ſmelling like to Storax, and drawn into a length like to Maſtick, yea, that is rather choſen, becauſe in heating and drawing it is principalleſt. For of it ſelfe this draweth forth thornes or ſplents of wood run deep into the fleſh, by applying it plaſter wiſe on the griefe: it helpeth an old cough, by making a ſmoke therof, and holding the mouth ouer it, and applied in the forme of an ointment on ring wormes, doth ſpeedily heale them. Now this matter (as aboue was taught) is the ſtay of the Hony combs, by which bées ſtop and kéepe forth all maner of cold, and other annoyances which might endamage them, the ſame alſo being of ſo ſtrong a ſauor, that ſome vſe it in the ſtéede of Galbanum. M. Varro nameth it a refuge of Bées without their cotages, becauſe Bées make the ſame at the entry of the hiue.

How to make Waxe white. Chap. 38.

WAx is made white in this maner: Firſt that kind of wax (fit for this purpoſe) ought to be whiter & purer, and broken into little pieces, put after into a newe earthen pan, powring vpon it ſufficient ſalt or ſea water, and a little Niter bruſed, which ſeeth al together. When ỹ ſame hath boiled twice or thrice vp, remoue the pan from the fire, & the wax being thorowly colde, take forth of the pan, and ſcraping off the filth, if any ſuch hang on, put again into new ſalt water, ſeething it againe. And when the waxe hath ſo often boiled (as aboue was taught) then take off the panne from the fire, and in the bottome of a newe earthen panne, melt it with cold water, which dippe by little and little into the waxe, drowning it a little, ſo that the water be aboue the Waxe, whereby the Waxe may become very thinne, and be the ſooner cooled it ſelfe: then taking by and by out the mould or bottome, draw firſt the round Cake off, and wetting againe the bottome in colde water, dippe it into the Waxe, and the ſame ſo long do, vntill you haue drawne of all that wax into

cakes.

cakes of like ſort, which after ſtitch thorow with thred, hanging the cakes on a rope one from another, and that in the day time, often wetting them in the Sunne, but in the night time in the Mone light: and ſo long doe this, vntil the wax be white. And if any deſireth to haue wax whiter then this, then let him doe the like as aboueſaid, but boile the wax oftner. Some in ſtead of the ſalt Sea-water, take ſtrong Wine water, in which they boile the waxe in the ſame maner twice or thrice, as abone was taught. And Paulus Euerdus in his booke of Confections, teacheth the making of wax white two manner of waies.

How you may make red Waxe. Chap. 39.

That you may colour and make Waxe red, take vnto one pound of waxe, three ounces of very cleare Turpentine, if it be in ſummer, but if it be in winter, then take foure ounces: now theſe diſſolue and melt together ouer a ſoft fire, and taking it from the fire, let it coole a little, after which put in Vermillion finely ground on a Marble ſtone, and ſweet Sallet oyle, of each one ounce, mixing theſe well, ſtir all together diligently. But ſome in ſtead of Vermillion, do take red lead, which is litle commended, except there be three times ſo much of the red lead as of the Vermilion put in. And in the like ſort may you make greene waxe, if in ſtead of the Vermillion you take ſo much of green Coporas finely ground, as you did of the Vermillion.

How to draw a profitable oyle out of Waxe, for ſundry vſes. Chap. 40.

The Oyle of waxe, is miraculous and diuine in working, becauſe it ſerueth in a maner vnto all griefes. Reymond Lullo greatly commendeth this oile, approuing it rather as a celeſtiall and diuine remedy, and that this in wounds doth worke moſt miraculouſly (which for his marueilous commodity, is not ſo well allowed of the common Chirurgions) becauſe this pretious oyle healeth a wound, be the ſame neuer ſo wide and big, (being before wide ſtitched vp) in the ſpace often or twelue daies at the moſt: but thoſe which are ſmall this oyle healeth in three daies, by annointing onely on the cuts

cuts or wounds, and laying after linnen clouts, (being wet in the said oyle) vpon the wounds. For inward diseases the said oyle worketh miraculously (if that you minister or giue a dram at a time in white wine to drinke) and stayeth also the shedding of haire, either on the head or beard, by annointing the places with this oyle. Besides these, it is miraculous in the procuring of vrine, being mightily stopped, and helpeth also stitches and paine in the loynes, by drinking the like quantitie of the oyle aboue taught in white wine.

Now the making and drawing of this oyle is on this wise: First take a body of Glasse named a Retort, which strongly lute about with clay & flockes, diligently tempered together with salt water: after the body is thus fenced, and thorough drie, put in a pound or more of pure new ware, so that the said wax filleth not aboue halfe your body, and to euery pound of wax, poure in foure ounces of the ponder of red brick, finely brused, which after set into an earthen pot, filling it round about with fine sifted ashes or sand. After this, set the potte with the body in it on a fornace, making a soft fire at the first vnder it, and after encreasing a little more your fire, distill them so long, vntill all your oyle be come, which after a while will congeale in the receiuer, but it maketh no great matter although the oyle so doe, for it is neuertheleſſe in his perfection: because that if you should distill it so often ouer, vntil it will congeale or stiffen no more in the receiuer, then shal you make it ouer hot, and so quicke in the mouth that it is not possible by any meanes to drinke it downe. But being once distilled, you may either giue it in Wine to drinke, or annoint with the oyle vpon any place of the body where you will, which will alwaies doe good, and hurt in no manner.

And in consideration of these aboue taught, you may euidently learne and perceiue, that this miraculous Oyle ought to bee had in great estimation of the common sort.

Another excellent way to drawe oyle of waxe, that greatly helpeth the colde Gout, the Sciatica, the ſwelling of the legs, and all other griefes proceeding of colde. Chap. 41.

TAke of pure new waxe, ſo much as you liſt, which put into a pan ouer the fire to melt, and being molten, haue by you in a readineſſe another pan wel glaſed, & cleane within, filled with good and perfect wine, into which poure your molten waxe, letting it ſoke and drinke in well, and waſh it often in the ſaid wine: after this, take the waxe forth, melting it againe on the fire, and being molten, waſh the ſame againe in pure wine, ſo that euery time melting the waxe, poure it into freſh wine, waſhing and ſoking it in the ſame diligently, and after wring it well with your hands: being vſed thus, melt and waſh againe in the aboue ſaid manner eight times together: then ſet the ſame forth (being a cleare ſeaſon & aire) all the night, after which put the waxe into a Retorte, with a little Mumia and oyle of Yperidon, or Saint Iohns wort, and a little old oyle: although without theſe it may do good, yet mixed with theſe, it worketh far better then vſed alone.

Now to returne to the former matter: This croked body or Retorte, ſet in fine ſifted aſhes, & a gentle fire made vnder it vntill all the oyle do run forth, and in this comming forth of the oyle ſhall appeare all the foure Elements, the aire, the water, earth and fire, which wil orderly appeare in the receiuer, right marueilous to ſee. And the oyle being thus fully drawne, worketh miraculouſly in all diſeaſes which proceede of a cold cauſe.

The concluſion to the Reader.

THus gentle Reader I haue (I truſt) fully ſatisfied thy deſire in as many things as are needfull to be knowne: wherefore I commit this my little Booke to thy gentle iudgement. If thou maiſt receiue any profit or commoditie thereby, I ſhalbe glad of it: and if not, yet fauourably let it paſſe from thee to others, whoſe knowledge and experience is leſſe then thine herein, that they may gather ſuch things as to them are ſtrange, though to thee well knowne before.

And thus briefly I commit you to Almightie

GOD.

Certaine

Certaine Husbandly Coniectures of dearth and plentie for euer.

Chap. I.

First consider and marke, that how the weather is a day before, the day present, and the day after the Suns entrance into the signe Aries, and such like shall the weather be (for the most part) in these three moneths, September, October, and Nouember.

And loke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into the signe of Leo, as the day before, and the day after, and such commonly shalbe in December, January, & February, for if the winde shal then blow out of the North or East, and those daies drie, then shall follow a very cold season in those three moneths: but if the winde blowe out of the South or West, and that it raineth in those three dayes, then ice to follow in those three moneths. And if the weather in those three daies shall be neither wholly drie nor wholly moist, then shal follow an vnstedfast winter.

And like as the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into the signe Libra, as at the day of the entrance, the day before and the day after, such (for the most part) shall bee the spring in March, Aprill, and May.

And loke how the weather shall be at the Suns entrance into Aquarius, at the day of the entrance, the day before and the day after, such (for the most part shall the weather be in June, July, and August.

And many ancient men affirme, that like as the weather shalbe whiles the Sunne is running by the signe Libra, and vnto the 20. degree of Scorpio, which time is from that day (named the exaltation of the crosse) vnto the day of al Saints, such for the most part shall the yeare following be, as in dividing that foresaid time into twelue moneths, and that foure daies do answere to each moneth, of the which foure daies,

that each one of the foure doth declare the condition of the quarter following: and beginning also to reckon November as the first moneth of the yeare.

And the generall signes of dearth & plenty after the minds of the ancient husband men be these: as the ouer-much coldnes drying, the ouermuch moisture softning, the ouermuch heat greatly burning, and the ouermuch drinesse putrifying and working into dust: For when any of these qualities shall exceed in the proper time, but especially in that time which to the corne and fruits doe not agree, then shall dearth and scarsity both of fruits and corne ensue.

As for example, when the month of March shall be ouer moist and wet, which rather ought to be drie, and that the month of Aprill shall be drie, which then ought to be moist, both after pronounce the penury of the fruits of the earth.

And if that part also of Summer shalbe wet, in which the corne doth then fal vnto ripenes, that rather ought to be dry, doth after signifie the scarsity both of corne and other fruits of the earth.

And the like may be said of the other constitutions, for which when the Elementall qualities shalbe in such a condition as doe best agree, then doe they promise both fruitfulnesse and plentifulnesse.

And if in the spring be signes of cold and drought, and that in the end of the spring neere the ful mone be frosts, then shal follow very small yelde of the fruits of the earth, and little wine that yeare following.

And if the spring be drie, then few shall the fruits of the trees be, yet good: and scarsity of corne shall be that yeare.

And if the spring shalbe cold, the fruits of the earth shalbe late ripe.

And if the spring and Summer shalbe ouer wet or misty or cold, with cloudy weather for many dayes together, whiles all the trees haue borne their blossomes, and the fieldes their flowres, and begin to shed their flowre, then shall follow the scarsity of fruits of the earth in that yeare, or else a verie great rot of them, and many sicknesses in that yeare.

And

And if the Summer be drier then cuſtomably, then ſhal follow the ſcarſity of corne, yet the Summer fruits ſhall that yeare be ſound, the fiſhes then die, and moſt ſharpe ſickneſſes ſhall raigne that yeare.

And if the Summer ſhalbe hotter then cuſtomably, then ſhall follow many ſickneſſes or diſeaſes, yet great plenty of the Summer fruits that yeare.

And if the Summer ſhalbe colder then cuſtomably, then ſhall follow a healthfull yeare, but the fruits of the earth ſhall late ripe that yeere.

And here further note of the ſpring, that if in the ſame ſeaſon of the ſpring, there ſhall bee a more plenty of all flowres and fruites toward then cuſtomably, doeth after ſignifie a ſcarſity of corne that yeare, vnleſſe the heat of Summer doth otherwiſe reforme the ſame.

And the wiſe and ancient huſbandmen haue obſerued, that when the winter ſhal ſend downe ſtore of raine on the earth, ſo that the ſame exceede not or bee too much, and that the March following be drie, and the Aprill wette by often ſhowres, and that the ſame parte alſo of Summer bee drie in which the corne falleth to ripeneſſe, then doeth the ſame promiſe a plentifull yeare.

And when that part of the haruеſt ſhalbe faire and drie in which the wheate is ſowen, and the part of ſummer in which corne falleth to ripeneſſe ſhalbe faire and drie, the ſpring alſo meanly warme, doth then not onely promiſe fruitfulneſſe, but a plentifull yeare of corne.

And now the Haruеſt moiſter then cuſtomably, doth putrifie the grapes, and cauſeth a ſmal yeld of wines that yeare with the ſcarſity of other fruits.

And alſo if in the latter pa[illegible]f haruеſt it be moiſter, then in the yeare following ſhall [illegible]ue ſcarſity of corne.

And if the Haruеſt be drier in the firſt part, then in the yeare following, ſhal Rie, and that ſmall graine named Pil, and ſuch like, be deare.

And if the haruеſt be hotter then cuſtomably, then ſhal follow a diſeaſed yeare, and that dangerous.

And if the Haruest be colder then coſtomably, then ſhall follow the loſſe of the Haruest fruits, both in the ſtore and tast of them.

And the winter cold and drie, is of all husbandmen commended, but extreame cold doth then slea the tree, especially thoſe which ioy in a warme aire, as the Pomegranate tree, the Oliue tree, the Lemmon tree, the Figge tree, the Peach tree, and ſuch like.

And if the winter exceed in the extremity of coldnes, then doth it ſignifie harme, both to the Vine and Oliue tree, the Cherry-tree, and the yellow Quince tree.

And if the Winter be hot and moiſt, then the ſame doeth pronounce an vnhealthfull yeare, and danger to ſeedes and fruits of the earth.

And the exceſſe quality, and deſtemperature of any of the foure quarters, is euill and dangerous to the fruites of the earth.

And the plenty of ſnow falling in due ſeaſon of the yeare, doeth fatten the earth, (and if the others doe helpe) then doth it ſignifie the plenty of corne and other fruites of the earth.

And if any waſheth their hands with ſnow, it doeth then make them ſtudy, in that the ſnow is ingendred of a vapour ſomewhat drie and earthly.

And the ſnow nouriſheth ſheep and other beaſts, in that the ſnow is ingendred of moiſt aire, in which life conſiſteth.

And the ſnowe increaſeth the corne and other growing things on earth, in that by his coldneſſe it ſo doeth ſhut the pores of the earth, that the heat with the which the ſeedes of the earth be cheriſhed, cannot then breake forth.

And the Snow heateth and cheriſheth the earth by the thicke couering of it, and defendeth the greene wheat and other ſeeds ſown, from the ſharpe & vehement cold of the aire.

And the ſnow may be kept all the yeare vnder the earth, couered with ſtraw, and profitable it is to mixe with wine in an hot Summer, and neceſſary alſo to cole the aire about ſicke perſons.

And

And the vnprofitable falling of the dew, mists, or fogs (especially when all crescent things doe bud forth, and shewe their flowre) as in the month of Aprill and May, as well on the trees, corne, and grasse, which beasts then feeding on bee greatly harmed through the dew fallen, and all other things also much harmed by the same, as hath bin often obserued by the ancient and wise husbandmen.

And in the ouermuch falling of raine, frosts, or haile, especially in the spring time, and in the winter time, whilest the corne is yet as grasse, the excesse of raine also doth then threaten the scarsity of victuals to ensue that yeare.

And the great plenty of beanes, after the opinion of the common husbandmen, through much raine fallen, doth foreshew the scarsity of Corne, and especially of Wheat that yeare.

And a like iudgement may be giuen of the Oake and Holly tree, which if they beare plentifully, then a fruitfull yeare followeth, and contrariwise bearing but few, then a deere yeare of corne doth ensue.

And the great plenty of Grashoppers, wormes, and Caterpillers, appearing in their proper time more then customably, do not only declare harme to vines and seedes sowen, but to all fruits that yeare.

And the greater store of winds, not onely cause litle fruits, but scarsity of corne to ensue that yeare.

And a Rainbow in a manner throughout the yeare, doth declare a likelihood of the plague to ensue shortly after.

And the ancient Hippocrates writeth, that when in the summer the North wind long continueth, and in the harueſt the South wind, with store then of raine, it doth after threaten in the Winter the head-ache, hoarsenesse of voice, the cough, consumptions or impostumes to ensue.

And if after a drie Summer (as write the ancient Physitions) the North winde doeth long continue in the Haruest, then the bodies of Women, and such diseased with a moyst sicknesse, do then in that season the rather recouer health, in that the drinesse of the seasons and winds is contrary to the excesse

exceſſe and the rottenneſſe of the humours by which the ſickneſſes were cauſed.

And if the Winter ſhall be hot and moiſt, and the ſpring cold and drie, then doth the ſame threaten ſickneſſe to men in the ſummer, and that women with child ſhall haue vntimely birthes of a light occaſion.

And Hippocrates writeth, that when in the winter be longer Northerly windes, and in the ſpring longer Southerly windes, and that rainie and wet in the Summer following, then doth follow agues, and the diſeaſes of the eies.

And when after a cold Winter, there be South windes and rainie in the ſpring, and that the Summer be drie, then in the Haruеſt following do agues enſue, paines alſo of the bowels, through the great ſcouring of the body, and ſickneſſes, with the which old men, diſeaſed perſons, and children be then more pained.

And when the South-weſt winde doth long blow about the end of haruеſt, then thoſe perſons diſeaſed with a long ſickneſſe, doe ſhortly after die.

And a further knowledge of dearth and plenty of victuals, and of ſicknes, may be had on this wiſe:

Firſt in the end of Haruеſt, cut open two or three Dake-apples, loking whether there be in them either flies, worms, or ſpiders: and if in the Dake-apple be found wormes or magots, then they ſignifie (after the opinion of ancient husbandmen) both dearth and ſcarſity in that yeare.

And if in the Dake-apple cut open, be found like to flies, it doth after threaten battell to enſue that yeare.

And if in the Dake-apple be found like to ſpiders, then do they foreſhew the plague or peſtilence to enſue in that yeare.

And to conclude, the only proofe of the former taught, ſhall moue the Reader better to credite theſe.

An euerlasting Prognostication of the state and condition of euery yeare, by the onely Kalends of Ianuarie: written by that ancient learned *Leopoldus Austriacus*, and others, for the commoditie of the wise husbandmen.

CHAP. II.

When the first day of January shall happen on the Sunday, then the winter shall be temperate and good, yet windy, the spring wet, the summer dry, and the harueſt hurtful through winds. So that victuals shall be reasonable good cheape, plenty of wines, the good health and increase of sheepe and other cattell, and the indifferent plenty of hony, and the like plenty also of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and the hearbs and fruits of the gardens. Also yong men shall die that yeare, and a discord to be feared betweene kings, or else some manifest perils to happen vnto kings and great Prelats in authoritie, and that diuers robberies shall be attempted that yeare. And if controuersies happen betweene Princes, then a conclusion of peace to be looked for in that yeare.

And if the first day of January shall happen on the Sunday, then shall the winter be warme, the spring very colde, with snow and frostes that season, the Summer boisterous through windes, and haile oftentimes, and land floods shall be somewhere, and the harueſt very drie. So that sicknesses shall ensue, through which many of the simple sort shall then die, & diuers also shall die through suddaine plague then hap-

ning: Also the likelihood of great alteration to ensue, and the ancient women to mourne, Kings to die, and a great slaughter to be feared by the sword: Also small store of wines, the death of Beas, and little hony that yeare.

And if the first beginning of January shall be on tuesday, then the winter shall bee long, and much snow in that season, and the likelihood of land floods, through much raine then falling: the Spring windy, the Summer very wette, and the Harueſt abounding in grosse and rotten humours (so that a most grieuous plague is to be feared, and especially of women) and the likelihood of many shipwracks, and very great cares and troubles to happen vnto Princes, with the scarsity of the fruits of trees: and corne shall be deare, and a suddaine death of cattell to be feared that yeare.

Also wood that yeare shall be deare, and the likelihode of fearefull fires, and that the plague to be grieuous that yeare. And yet there shall be plenty of Peason, Beanes, Vetches, and store of herbes and flowres. And there shall be plenty of hony, oyle, and wines that yeare.

And when the first of January beginneth on the wednesday, then shall the winter be warme and calme, the spring wette, and disposed to sicknesses, the Summer hotte, and the Harueſt vnprofitable, so that long sicknesses are to be feared, and the quarten Ague with them. Also yong men shall then be sicke and in ieopardie of death, and women the like, and in sundry places shall happen a famine, with a great bruite of strange newes. And there is also to bee feared the grieuous passions of the heart, the idlenes of minde, or rather distraught, and the diseases of the matrice in women: and yet the plenty of oyle and wines, but the scarsity of corne to be doubted that yeare.

And if the beginning of January be on thursday, then shal the winter be calme and temperate, the Spring windie, the Summer vnseasonable, and the Harueſt drie, so that corne and victuals shall then be deare, yet store of oyle and wines that yeare. And there is a likelihood of light sicknesses to happen vnto the common people, but more dangerous sickne-

ses

ſes vnto the richer ſort. And the bleardneſſe of the eyes is alſo to be feared, and that yong children ſhall then die, battels procured, and the ſedition of ſouldiers, and an earthquake to be doubted that yeare.

Alſo great talke of newes ſhall be in Kings and Princes houſes, and great perils alſo to be doubted to happen vnto Princes in that yeare.

And if the firſt day of January happen on Friday, then ſhall the winter be very colde and drie, the Spring boiſterous and wette, the Summer temperate, the Harueſt more wette then drie: ſo that bleardnes and other diſeaſes, with the filthineſſe of matter running in the eyes, is to be feared, and the pin and web is likewiſe to be doubted to happen that yeare. And yong children ſhall then die: and a likelihood that yong women ſhall be allured vnto wanton loue, through the flattery and great perſwaſions of men. Alſo a ſuſpition of battels to enſue in that yeare, and the plague and robberies then to happen. Alſo plenty of fruits is then promiſed, although much haile fall that yeare.

And if the beginning of January happen on Saterday, then the winter ſhall be windie and vnſtable, the ſpring windie and vnconſtant of weather, the Summer vnſtable with many tempeſts, and the Harueſt drie: ſo that victuals ſhall be deare, ſmall ſtore of corne, and little fruit that yeare. Alſo ſheepe ſhall not well proſper in that yeare, and a likelihoode then of the death of ſwine, and that wood ſhall be deare.

Alſo there ſhalbe many tertian agues, and diuers other diſeaſes reigning among men, ſo that olde men ſhall then die, and a likelihood of the death of many men by the plague. Alſo many fires ſhall be heard of, little ſtore of wines, oyle and hony, yet plenty of hay that yeare.

And if newyeares night (being the firſt night of January) ſhalbe calme and cleare, without winde and raine, then doth the ſame promiſe a proſperous yeare following.

And if in the ſame night the winde happen to blowe out of the Eaſt, then doth the ſame ſignifie the death of cattell to enſue that yeare.

And if the ſame night the wind happen to blow out of the Weſt, then a likelihode of the death of Kings and Princes to enſue that yeare.

And if in the ſame night the winde happen to blow out of the South, then doth the ſame ſignifie the death of many perſons to enſue that yeare.

And if in the ſame night the winde happen to blow out of the North, then doth the ſame ſignifie the ſmall yelde of all fruits of the earth that yeare.

How to foreknow the ſtate of the yeare, by the onely riſing of the dogge ſtarre, out of the husbandry of Diophanes. Chap. 3.

AND about the knowledge of this there is to be conſidered and noted, in what ſigne the Moone ſhall then be, at firſt appearance of the dogge ſtarre aboue the earth in our Realme of England, which generally be reckoned is about the ſeuenth day of July.

And now if the Moone runne then in the ſigne of Aries at the firſt appearance of the dog ſtar, it doth after declare the death of cattell and much raine. So that ſmall yeld of corne, yet plenty of oyle ſhall be that yeare.

And if the Moone run then in the ſigne Taurus at the firſt appearance of the dog ſtar, then it doth ſignifie much raine, fogs, and miſts, that ſhall harme much that yeare.

And if the Moone run then in the ſigne Gemini at the firſt appearance of the dog ſtarre, it doth after promiſe plenty of corne and wine, and all other fruits of the earth, yet a diſeaſed yeare, and to be doubted that a King ſhall then die, and that rebellion alſo ſhall be moued that yeare.

And if the Moone runne then in the ſigne Cancer at the firſt appearance of the dog ſtar aboue the earth, it doeth after threaten drought, with great ſcarſity of corne to enſue in that yeare.

And if the Moone runne then in the ſigne Leo at the firſt ſight of the dogge ſtarre, it after promiſeth plentie both of

wines

wines and oyle, and good cheape of corne and other victuals that yeare: and yet to be feared the commotions of the common people, and slaughter the same to ensue, with an earthquake and land floods to happen in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Virgo at the first appearance of the dog star, it after signifieth plenty of showers and the great store of fruits of the earth, and the cheapenesse also of cattell: and yet to be feared that women shall be deliuered before their time in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Virgo at the first appearance of the dog starre, it after declareth the stirring vp of a king, and a commotion of the common people: and yet the plenty of fruits of the trees, although there be a likelihood of the scarsity of corne and oyle in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Scorpio at the first appearance of the dog starre, it after declareth the commotion of Princes, the destruction of Bees, and an infectious aire to ensue that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Sagitarius at the first sight of the dogge starre above the earth, it after signifieth a rainie yeare, yet fruitfull, and the plenty of corne, and ioy among men: and yet is to be feared the death of cattell, and the multitude of fowles in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Capricornus at the first appearance of the dogge starre above the earth, it after declareth the commotion of soldiers, and great store of raine, and yet plenty of corne, wines, and oyle, and all other things good cheape in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Aquarius at the first appearance of the dogge starre above the earth, it after signifieth the death of some king or Prince, the scarsitie of corne, and the plenty of such flies with long hinder legs that burne corne by the touching of it: and yet little raine and the plague to ensue in that yeare.

And if the Mone runne then in the signe Pisces at the first appearance of the dog starre above the earth, it after declareth much raine, and the death of birds: and yet doeth it

promiſe a ſufficient ſtore, and laudable plentifulneſſe, both of Wines, Oyle, and Corne, but many perſons ſhall be diſeaſed in that yeare.

Other profitable inſtructions, right neceſſary for husbandmen to know. Chap. 4.

And firſt, if the horne of the Ramme (neare his eare) be bored, the ſame doth tame his fiercenes. And if his right genitour be trulled vp before he goe to couer the Ewe, then doth he beget an Ewe lambe. And if the left be thus ſtrait trulled vp, and the right hanging downe, then doth he beget a hee lambe.

And if in the time of the South winde blowing, the Ram doth then couer the Ewe, he doth after beget a shee lambe.

And if when the North wind bloweth, the Ram doth then couer the Ewe, doth after beget a hee lambe. And of what colour alſo the veines ſhalbe vnder the tongue of the Ewe, ſuch ſhall the colour of the ſkin of the lambe be: for if ſhe hath black veines vnder the tongue, then the lambe ſhalbe of black ſkin, and if whits veines vnder the tongue, then ſhall ſhe haue a white lambe: and if of diuers colours, then the lambe ſhall be of diuers colours on the ſkin. And that ancient Iſaac writeth, that Rams in their yong yeares be of leſſer moiſture & clammineſſe, then be the ſucking lambs, and this is through their age and qualitie then ruling.

And therefore the fleſh of yong weathers is better, and ingenders better blood than the ſucking lambes.

And this is here ſpoken of ſuch Rammes as be gelded, in that their moiſture and hotneſſe is then temperate.

And the Weathers ouer-olde are to be refuſed in eating, that they be then colde and drie without moiſture, and they ſmally nouriſh, and hardly digeſt.

Alſo beefe and other fleſh of beaſts being olde, be euill to eate, through the coldnes and drines, and through the lack of the moiſture and hotneſſe. And when the old Rams in their time to couer the Ewe, be ſooner mooued therto then the yong Rams, it doth then ſignifie a good and profitable ſeaſon to enſue in that yeare, and a good ſeaſon and proſperous alſo for

ſheepe.

ſhæpe. But if in the proper time to couer the Ewe, the yong Rams be ſooner prouoked thereto then the olde Rams, then doth follow the great rot or murraine of ſhæpe in that yeare.

Alſo Ewes by drinking of water conceiue the ſooner with lambe, and for this the ſhepheards giue them ſalt to eate, wherby in more drinking of water, they may ſo conceiue with yong, & they are alſo by that meanes preſerued the healthfuller. And in the harueſt alſo ſome ſhepheards giue them to eate gourds ſeaſoned with ſalt, to increaſe their milke, for by that meanes doth the milk more plentifully flow doth of their teats, and the Ewes do ſooner conceiue. Alſo in Summer is the colde Northerly water good for them, and in the Harueſt the warme Southerly water good for them.

Alſo to let ſhæpe feede in the end of the day, is greatly commended: and if they alſo ſtirre but little abroad, the ſame is thought very profitable, in that the much iourneying, and laboring of them hither and thither, doth cauſe them to become leane. Alſo the skilfull ſhepheards know which ſhæpe will well indure the ſharpe winter, and which not, in that vpon ſome of the ſhæpes backs (as they affirme) ice may be found, and vpon other ſame none at all. So that by this may be learned, that ſuch ſhæpe which be in take, a man can hardly pluck off the ice from their backes. And further learne, that thoſe ſhæpe which haue long tailes, may hardlier abide the ſharpe cold water, then thoſe hauing broad tailes: and the ſhæpe alſo curled of haire (doe in like ſort) hardlier indure the bitter winter: and beſides theſe, the thunder greatly harmeth ſhæp, eſpecially if any Ewe being with yong happeneth to be alone at that inſtant, for that ſhe then being with lambe, doth of the fearful noiſe of the thunder, deliuer her lamb before the time: and for a ſpeciall remedy to ſaue that vntimely caſting of lambes at ſuch times, the skilfull ſhepheards haue found out that the onely driuing of many Ewes together is a ſure ſafegard to them to auoyd this occaſion. Beſides, if you will remoue the rot of ſhæp, that they die no more: then take the belly of a Ram, and ſeeth the ſame in wine and water together, which after mixe with water, & giue the ſame generally to al

the

the ſhepe to drinke, for by that meanes ſhall they againe be recouered of their diſeaſe. And here learne, that the fleſh of ſhepe, and other foure foted beaſts, which commonly feed in moiſt ground, is euill to feed vpon, for the hard digeſtion of the ſame. Alſo learne, that the young ſhepe are knowen by their age, as being neither too old, nor yet as lambs, and by the ſame alſo they are knowen, if ſo be you find them large of body.

And they beſides haue much and ſoft Wooll, and both thicke and long haire, eſpecially on the rumpe, and about the necke, and the like haire on the belly. And both the health and ſickneſſe of ſhepe may be knowen, if ſo be any open their eies, and finde the veſſies within to be red and ſmall, it doeth vndoubtedly declare them to be ſound and good: but if thoſe veines ſhall appeare white, or red and big, then thoſe ſhepe are diſeaſed and vnlike. And if the ſhepe goe luſtily and boldly by the way, it is a ſure token that they be ſound: but ſadly and hanging downe the head, then be they diſeaſed. Theſe hitherto of the yeare-ly coniectures, and other rules, onely meete for husbandmen to vnderſtand and knowe.

An

A moſt profitable rule for the preſeruation of mans health, thorowout the twelue moneths of the yeare, after the minde of diuers learned men of the Vniuerſitie of Padua.

Chap. v.

Ianuary.

And firſt, in the moneth of January drawe no blood out of any veine, vnleſſe a great neceſſity conſtraineth thereto, that you cannot otherwiſe chuſe. But if you bleede by veine, beware of taking any cold in this moneth, ſo nigh as you can, and walke not abroade in the night time: and vſe to eate then the beſt confections, and to drinke often white wine in this moneth, for that flegme doth then increaſe. And to faſt long in this moneth, is hurtfull to the body: but to eat ſalets well prepared with oyle and ſpices, is well commended. And waſh not thy head in this moneth, but to bath your body, or to take a vomit, you may ſafely doe in this moneth.

Alſo take euery morning once (thorowout this moneth) for three houres before dinner, a little quantity of roſed hony, for that the ſame doth comfort the ſtomacke, and cleanſe the body both of choler and flegme. And drinke alſo theſe ſpices either in wine or ale, as Graines, Ginger, Nutmegs, Cloues and ſuch like, for thoſe be greatly commended in this month.

February.

In the moneth of Februarie, vſe to eate confections canded with hony, for that they purge the body. And to eate Ap-

ples in this moneth is commended: but to eate often fresh Bæke, or other meates that bee moist, or to eate any potte herbes, except Parcely or Smallech, is thought hurtfull. And rather eat oftner sodden meat then roasted in this moneth, for that the same doth kæpe the body soluble. Also to bathe in this Moneth is not hurtfull, nor to take a potion or to blæde in that veine vnder the thumb, and you may safely take pils in this Moneth, to purge the heade, for that a man feeleth himselfe more grieued with a heauinesse in the head in this Moneth, then in any other Moneth.

And to eate Hony with bread in this Moneth is commended, for that the same doth purge the brest and bladder.

March.

In the Moneth of March vse to eate pleasant and wel spiced meats, but sharpe meates refraine in this Moneth, and to drinke pleasant and strong wine is now commended. And eate often Læke pottage: and to bath often in that Moneth, is greatly commended. But beware of taking any potion, to purge or blæde by veine in this Moneth. And vse to eate often of the herbe Penroyall, for that the same doeth heate the stomacke, and causeth then the better digestion. And in your salets also eate of the herbe Betonie, for that the same doeth clære and helpe the sight, and much amendeth the head. Also Graines, Ginger, Nutmegs, Galingale, Pepper, and such like spices, be profitable to drinke in this Moneth.

Aprill.

In this Moneth of Aprill doth blod increase, wherfore to eate pleasant meats, and riuer fish, and salets often, is now commended. And to blæde by veine in any part of the body, except the vein of the lungs, is now thought profitable, for by opening the veine is dangerous, but to open at the middle veine is greatly commended, and likewise bathing often in this Moneth. And to purge the stomacke with a potion, or otherwise, is very good; but eat no kind of rots in this moneth. And to eat al kind of flesh, except pigs, is thought good in this

moneth:

moneth: and you may now enter into Physick for any griefe of the body, (but drinke moderately) and you may also safely bleede for the scabs in this Moneth: and vse to eate Betonie and Mints prepared in Hony, and drink first in the morning without eating of any thing, and to drinke also the herbe Grace in wine is now profitable: but beware of eating any kind of salt fish in this Moneth, for that the same doeth engender both the itch and the scab on the body.

Maie.

In the month of May, wash often thy face with faire running water: But vse not to eate of such meats as be hot of quality: and bleed in any part of the body where need shall be, but it is most profitable to bleede in the ferte, for that the blood then hath his course downe to the fert: and beware also of eating any stale fish, or tainted flesh that sore smelleth: and eate your meales now in due season, and drinke but little wine in this moneth. And to bathe in any condition in this moneth is not unprofitable: and to drinke clarified whey simply, or drawne with cold herbes, is now very healthfull unto hotte stomacks. And pure wine also mixed with goats milke, and with that to annoint both the head and brest, is greatly commended: and to drinke sharpe drinkes in this moneth, is thought good, and to take Physick if need requireth. But eate no head or foote of any beast in this moneth, because of the moisture of the herbes and grasse which the beasts doe eate in the same. And to drinke wormwood wine is thought very profitable in this moneth, and to eate Fenell rots tenderly sodden. And to take gentle Lares to purge the blood and body is now thought good, and to sleepe after dinner. And also some thinke, that to bleed on the head veine, or liuer veine, is profitable in this moneth.

Iune.

In the Moneth of June, abstaine from all such meates as doe engender flegme, but drinke of the pleasantest Wine, and sometimes in the morning fasting a cuppe of white wine, for that the same doth now purge choler in man.

And to eat ſalets of Letuce prepared with vineger, is thought profitable, for that they be good againſt the humours which do deſcend vnto the kidneis: and vſe to eat ſuch meats as be light of digeſtion, and ariſe alwaies (this moneth thorow) from the table ſomewhat hungry, and ariſe alſo timely in the morning, and exerciſe your body with ſome long walke. And any may ſafely bleed that needeth in this month: but beware of eating milke, vnleſſe the ſame be well ſodden, and likewiſe take hed both of the eating of cheeſe and apples in this moneth. And a man may bathe himſelfe in this moneth, ſo that he tarry not long therein. And to waſh the feet often in colde water, is likewiſe commended.

Iulie.

In the moneth of July, it is not good to eate ſtrong meats, nor thoſe which do greatly nouriſh, or pleaſant ſpiced meats, for the hotneſſe of the ſeaſon, for that the Dog daies be entred in. And therefore beware of bleeding by veine, or of taking any medicine to purge the body: and yet may a man bleed a little by cupping in the bath. And in this month, and in the other month following, a man may drinke but little wine, for that the ſame doth drie the ſtomacke and liuer, and increaſeth choler: and the ſmalleſt and weakeſt drinks are now to be vſed faſting againſt choler: and in this moneth refraine your ſelfe from the veneriall act as nigh as you can: and vſe to eat every morning faſting a litle Sage and herbe-Grace, with a bit of bread: and beware of eating any muddy fiſh in this moneth (taken with the net) leſt thorough the eating of them you catch ſome ſickneſſe, and die therof: and vſe to eat Verjuice in all your meats, for that the ſame doth coole and refreſh the body, but refraine the eating of fruits in this moneth: and very healthfull it is vnto the body to annoint the necke and breſt with the iuyce of herbe Grace, Iſope, and Smalleche mixed with Hony, and enter into a bathe faſting, yet bathe but moderatly all the moneth thorow, for that otherwiſe to bathe is very dangerous in this moneth: and beware of either eating Beets, or Lettuce, in this moneth, for that they haue nowe a kinde of poyſon in them,

which

which now be right perilous : and yet profitable it is vnto Husbandmen to eate both Garlike, Sage, and fatte Bacon.

August.

In the moneth of August doeth choler with melancholy encreaſe, ſo that now do happen agues, with colde and burning, and other grieuous ſickneſſes hardly cured. Wherefore a man muſt now refraine the venerial act, and order himſelfe in a moderate condition, as ſleeping but little in the day time all this moneth, and to beware of taking any colde, or to bleed by veine, or to vomite, or otherwiſe to take any medicine to purge the body: and refraine from eating any pottehearbes all this moneth thorow: and refraine from eating any Cabbages, for that they engender melancholy, and cauſe the ague in men: and vſe to eate Sage in all your meate, for that the ſame is profitable vnto the body, and Mellons the like, yet leſſer in quantitie at your meales: and drinke both good and pleaſant wine, and eate both pullets and veale, for that ſuch comfort the body: and vſe to eate often Cinnamon in your meats. And an ointment thus prepared, doth helpe many diſeaſes of the body: take Peniroyall, hearbe-Grace, Fenel, Smallech, the ſeeds of Iſope, Bay-berries, and Alom, vnto which adde Oyle Oliue, tempering all together with hony, and after annointing the body therewith: and to eat alſo Lettuce, and all other things that be cold of quality, is now commended.

September.

In the moneth of September eate all manner of meates you liſt, for that in the ſame moneth all things bee in their proper vertue. And for ſo much as the harueſt is well entred, therefore it is now good to take a gentle purgation, like as is the flowre of Caſſia new drawne, that gently purgeth the body, and comforteth nature: wherefore this likewiſe ought to bee done, to the end to preſerue the body in health vnto the next ſpring, & alſo to vſe cordiall powders in your broths, vnto the ſpring. Alſo in this moneth may ſimples be well applied in any ſickneſs, for that the roots, the fruits, and ſeeds, do

abound now, and be also thorow ripe. And what could not aptly bee ministred in the Moneth of May with simples, may in this Moneth be done with them. And to eate Pomegranates and Goates milke, is well commended in this Moneth, for that they both increase blood, and cause a good colour.

October.

In the Moneth of October doe your bodies ware drie and the braine moist, and greater bones, and therefore it behoueth to eate rosted meates often in this Moneth, and to drink pleasant wine. Also drinke newe wines, and eate pleasant meat often, as Goats milke fasting, for that the same doeth now purifie the blood and cleanse the lungs: and eat often apple-tarts, prepared with comfortable spices and Sugar, in that they comfort greatly the stomacke: but wash not the head in all this Moneth. And you may let blood in this Moneth, or giue a potion to purge, like as the necessitie of the sickneſſe or disease shall so require: and beware of eating too much of new fruits: but the eating of the Radish roote is yet profitable, and to eat mustard also with all meats is likewise commended: also all wilde fowles eaten now, bee thought good, and Cloues with Cinamon, are profitable in this Moneth.

Nouember.

In the moneth of Nouember is melancholy encreased, and blood decreased, and for this it is profitable to eate both egs and hony, and to vomite also sundry times, and salt powdered meats is now commended: and bath not in this moneth, or but little if neede so requireth, for that it is thought to bee the most perilous moneth of the yeare to bathe in: and besides, the blood is now restrained within the arteries of the body, which by sweating in the hot bath should so cause the stirring vp of humours, and a stilling from the head, with vncurable paines of the head, and darknes of sight, and paines otherwise of the eies. And in this moneth you may (if neede so require) either purge the body, or bleede by veine: also the eating now of Hony, Ginger, Pulse, and Goates milke, is

profitable

profitable to the body, for that they increase blood, and cause a good colour to man: and Cinamon and Ginger drunke often in this moneth is greatly commended, for that they giue health. And in this moneth goe not timely forth, because of the stinking mistes and fogges which then be that greatly harme the head, and therefore let the Sun be of some height before your going forth of the doores.

December.

In the moneth of December doth melancholy and flegme encrease, which be both heauie and cold: and therefore a man must now keepe the body and head very well from cold, and to eate such things as be of hot quality: also to eate pottage made of Colewoorts and Cabages, and to eat rosted Onions prepared in salets, and either rosted apples or peares after meals, be greatly commended: and eat the flesh of weathers, Rammes, and Goats, also Capons, and all manner of land fowles, but no water fowles: and bleed but a little in this moneth, and that in the head veine, for that in no moneth of the yeare man hath lesse store of blood then in this: and goe not forth of your house in the night time, except you bee otherwise constrained, for that the moist aire of the night doeth much harme the body: and eat now Parcely roots tenderly sodden, for that they much comfort the stomache: and eate Rape roots also rosted vnder the embers (all this moneth thorow) for the health of the body. And eate not in this moneth neither of crowes nor swines flesh, for that they be now ouer moist, and also vnprofitable vnto the body: and drinke often wine in this month: and eat meats dressed with Honey, and Cinamon, Mace, Nutmegs, Ginger, Graines, Cloues, Galingale, and such like: and the same in drinke this moneth, doe cherish the blood, the heart, and all the body.

Of the falling sicke in any of the weeke daies, out of that ancient Physition Hippocrates.

Chapter 6.

And now if any first falleth sicke on the sunday, & amendeth not of that sicknes at the fift day after, he doth die in the ninth day following: but if he recouer and come to better

health

healthy about the eight or ninth day after, then doth he recouer perfect health about the fiftenth day following.

And if any first falleth sicke on the Sunday, then he shall recouer health at the ninteh day following: but if that sicknes continue to the twelfth day, the patient shall then die in the fourtenth day after.

And if any shall fall sicke on the Tuesday, he shall then amend at the third day after: but if the sicknes yet continueth, then death to be looked for without doubt, at the first or eight day after.

And if any first falleth sicke on the Wednesday, and that at the seuenth day falleth to good rest, and sleepeth, hee shall amend of that sicknes: but if the sicknes indureth to the twelfth day, and increasing vnto the first or seuenth day, he dieth then without doubt.

And if any first falleth sick on the Thursday, then he amendeth at the ninth day following: but if the sicknes longer continue, yet amendment vnto health at the fiftenth day following.

And if any beginneth to fall sicke on the Friday, he shal after amend at the seuenth or eight day following: but if that sicknesse longer indureth, then death to bee feared at the fiftenth day after. And if that sicknes shall somewhat abate at the eight or ninth day after, then the patient shall recouer to health at the fiftenth day following.

And if any falleth sicke on the Saturday, and that the same sicknesse doth continue to the first day, then the person dieth at the eight day following: but if that person commeth vnto health at the seuenth day after, and sleepeth quietly that night without paine of the sicknesse, hee shall after recouer perfect health at the fourtenth day following. And further note, that all men in health haue their vrine or water in the morning white, before dinner againe redde, after dinner clearer and whiter, and at the euening before supper hot.

Of

Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes which declare raine to follow. Cap. 7.

FIrſt a redneſſe of the aire about the Sun being new riſen, doth declare a token of raine to enſue.

And a like redneſs of the aire about the Sun at the euening doth foreſhew faire weather the next day following. And when about the Sun (after he is riſen, or beginneth to ſet) ſhall appeare blacke or gréne clouds, or blacke cloudes mixed with gréneneſſe, and a circle at that time likewiſe appearing about the Sun, or elſe ſhal aſcend with blacke or gréne cloudes, or appearing néere vnto a gréennes, or elſe that the Sun ſhall haue large clouds both aboue & beneath him, doth declare raine and ſoule weather to enſue, either the ſame day or night following. And the like notes in the riſing of the Sun, declare raine the ſame day, and the like at the euening, then raine to enſue that night following.

And the Sun appearing hollow or ſpottie, or elſe ariſing or ſetting vnder a cloud, doth declare raine to follow.

And when the Sun ariſeth or ſetteth bigger then cuſtomably it is ſéene, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing leſſer in the ariſing then cuſtomably, or at the ſetting ſheweth it ſelfe diuided into a blackiſh cloud, and that néere to the earth, doth declare raine to follow ſhortly after.

And when a blacke, long, and thicke cloud ſhall appeare aboue the Sunne, at the ſetting in the weſt, it doth declare raine to enſue.

And a miſt about the Sun, when the ſame doth long tarie, or not quickly ſpent, doth declare raine to follow, in that the ſame is cauſed through the dewie and raynie vapours, caried betwéene the Sunne and our ſight.

And when the Sun after his riſing, ſheweth through a thicke cloud broken open, and ſhooting out beames darkly, or elſe the Sun appearing diuided, doth declare raine to follow.

And the Sun appearing the greater parte of the day through thin clouds, or a miſtie aire the moſt part of the day,

ſo that the Sunne ſheweth thorow it like to a round hole doth declare raine to follow. And when the Sun after the ariſing or the ſetting, eſpecially in the ſpring and harueſt, giueth forth mightie heate in a miſtie aire, doth either declare wind or raine to enſue.

And when a thicke and blacke cloud appeareth aboue the Sun in the riſing, and that by and by after the Sun is hid vnder that cloude, then doth it declare raine to enſue. But if the Sun be not hid of that cloude, then doth follow faire weather.

And the ouer-timely riſing and appearing of the Sun aboue the earth, doth declare raine to enſue.

And when in the third night after the chang of the moone the hornes appeare blunter and bigger then cuſtomably, it doth declare raine to follow in that month.

And the Moone hauing blacke ſpots in the toppes of her hornes, doth then ſignifie ſhowers in her firſt wekes, and if ſuch ſpots at the full of the Moone appeare in the middle, then doth the ſame declare faire weather to enſue.

And if the third night after the Moone change, the ſouth wind bloweth, then in the fourth day following it ſhall either raine more or leſſe.

And if the Moone be not ſéene before the fourth night, and that the ſouth wind then bloweth, it doth declare raine to follow moſt parte of that month. And the Moone in her firſt appearing, ſhewing blacker of body then cuſtomably and hauing blacker hornes, doth declare foule and raynie weather before the end of that month.

And the Moones beames at the blowing then of the ſouth wind, ſhewing darker, bigger and ſhorter downward toward the earth, doth declare raine to follow.

And this is a great token of raine to follow, when as the Sun in the day time, and the Moone in the night, doe appeare pale or blackiſh of colour.

And when the night is faire and cleare, and the Element appearing fuller of Starres then accuſtomably, doth then declare raine to follow ſhortly after.

And

And another note of raine to ensue, is when fewer starrs appeare in the night then customably, for that our sight then is hindred through the vapoures running in the aire.

And the appearance of blacke cloudes in the aire, and ascending of a mist or fogge vpward, in that the vapours then be thicked together, doe declare raine to ensue.

And when the clouds in the aire be in a manner of all one colour round about, do then declare raine shortly after.

And cloudes appearing in the ayre like to flockes of wool, doe sometime signifie raine with colde, but no great raine, for that those flockes appearing, do declare the grossenesse of the vapours.

And white clouds appearing in the Sommer time, doe declare haile to ensue: but white clouds appearing in the aire in the winter time, doe declare snow to follow.

And when a mist or thinne Cloud doth happen in a drie season, and that the same ascendeth vpward, and is turned into a thicke cloude, doth then declare raine to ensue, but the same falling downward whiles the raine indureth, or shortlie vpon the raine, doth then declare faire weather to ensue.

And if many white clouds appeare neere the earth in the euening, for two or three daies together in the winter time, they doe then declare both cold and snow to ensue.

And the clouds in the winter time appearing whiter then customable, doe declare Snowe to follow, especially when after such appearance, the aire is then felt somewhat warme, through the heat which is then sent out of the cloud.

And the often changing of the wind, which is especially knowne by the course of the clouds, doth declare raine to follow, in that the cloudes be driuen with the winds, and the vapours also gathered together, which through the thicking together, doth cause the raine to fall.

And the blowing of the South-winds doth declare vndoubtedly raine to follow, in that those winds be hot and moist, and thereof doe so easily resolue the vapours from the

bodies aboue, which causeth the raine to fall. Also a gentle south wind doth euermore send downe raine, when as the same beginneth to cease and wax still.

And the dewe not falne in the accustomed season, and beginning then to fall, is a sure token of raine to ensue, in that the dewe falleth not in the accustomed season, which perfectly declareth that the vapours which be in the matter of dew be then caried vp with others, and so thickned together into a rainie cloude.

And when the Rain-bow appeareth in the morning, before the middle of the day in the west, and the like at afternoone toward the euening in the East, doth vndoubtedly declare long raine to follow.

And the Rain-bow appearing in a faire day, doth declare raine to follow, but appearing after foule weather, doth declare faire weather to ensue.

And the Rain-bow appearing in the south, declareth much raine to follow, and appearing in the west, declareth thunder and a small raine to follow, and appearing about the euening in the east, doth promise faire weather.

And the greener the Raine-bow shall appeare, so much the longer raine doth follow. But the redder the Rain-bow doth appeare, euen so much the bigger also doth the wind ensue.

And if the same appeareth in faire weather, then doth it declare both raine and wind to ensue.

And the like a Rain-bow appearing about the Mone or about the light of a candle, declareth raine to follow.

And two Rain-bowes appearing at one time, as the one hanging downward from the south, & the other Rain-bow from the North, doe declare raine to follow.

And when the clouds and winds driue one way, or into one quarter together, declareth rain to folow without dout.

And now these few Celestiall tokens here rehearsed, are both manifest & true, which any person of small knowledge may lightly conceiue and truely prognosticate vpon.

And further, the earthly signes be these: as first when that

vapours

vapours breath out of the earth, as the like is manifestly felt by entring into any deepe vault or cellour vnder the earth, being especially within a citie or great towne, and that the privy gineth forth a mightie stinke, that then raine doeth shortly after follow.

And another note also of the earth is, when timely in the morning before day light a mist ariseth, which sheweth low on the earth, and that the Mone then shining, causeth the mist to shew in forme of a sea, and that after the Sun is risen, the same maketh the aire very darke, and blacke clouds also appearing in the aire, which together declareth a mighty raine to follow, and long enduring.

And when the dust is more raised vp then customably, and that trées also much more moued in the groues and woods, it doth declare raine without doubt, in that there is then a mighty breaking forth, both of many and grosse vapours.

And when riuers and wels be shallower of water then customably, it then declareth raine to follow, in that the same matter and water falleth from the clouds, and of this when those impressions be diminished, then be those moistures drawen vp, which so ingender the raine.

And the drines of hands, and the clefts and roughnesse of the lips do declare raine to follow, in that the attractiue vertue of the moisture is then both mighty & strong, which so drieth the body, and maketh the lips rough. And of this the earthly bodies be altered according to the altering of the celestiall bodies aboue.

And when small birds in the beginning of winter, do gather & flie many in a company together, seeking their meat in such companies in the fielde, it after declareth colde and frosts to ensue, and stormy weather.

And al birds when they make a greater noise in the flying then customably, and by trimming their feathers with their bils, both declare raine to follow.

And all riuer fowles playing and beating themselues in the water, & washing themselues in that water, doe declare raine to ensue. And the like doe the riuer fowles by leaning

the water, and coueting the Pedowe, ſignifie raine to follow.

And the Geeſe making a loud noiſe together, and flying, doe ſignifie a tempeſt to enſue.

And the Bées ſeeking their hony neerer home than cuſtomably, doe declare a tempeſt, and rainie weather to enſue.

And when the ſheepe toward the euening, at their driuing vnto fold, do feed more earneſtly in their going, and take no care of the ſhepherds calling and crying vnto them, and that ſcarcely with ſtrokes to be driuen forward, do after ſignifie raine to follow.

And the bird named the Pie, chattering more then cuſtomably, doeth after declare raine to enſue. And the ſwine drawing forth, tearing and hiding handfuls of hay, doe declare raine to follow.

And the Frogs making a greater noiſe then cuſtomably, do declare raine to enſue: and if the dew appeare not in the morning, ſo that the ſame be not hindred through the wind, after ſignifieth raine or froſt to enſue, and this according vnto the time of the yeare.

And the Oxen licking the hoſes of the hinder feet, and againſt the haire, and lying all alike on the right ſide, do declare raine to follow.

And beginning to raine, if the Oxen feede greedilier, doe then declare the longer continuance of raine. And the Oxe beating with the fore foot, doth either declare raine or tempeſt to follow.

And the doues comming later vnto the doue-houſe then cuſtomably, doth declare raine to follow. And the ſound of bels or clockes heard further off then cuſtomably, doth declare raine to follow, except the ſame be cauſed of wind.

Of thoſe manifeſt ſignes which declare faire and drie weather to follow. Chap. 8.

And firſt, when either the Sun riſeth, or ſetteth cleare, ſo that he be not couered of any clouds, doth then ſignifie faire weather that day following: if in the Sunne riſing, any

any circle appeareth about him of diuers colours, or that declineth vnto a fiery rednes, or that the Sun beames paſſing thorow the clouds, ſhalbe red and long (ſo that the beames ſeeme like ſhots) and red ſcattered without the circle, doth then promiſe mightie winds to follow.

And the Sun ſetting red, declareth raine to follow, and if after the Suns ſetting in the Weſt, red fiery clouds ſhall appeare, it declareth aſſuredly wind to follow.

And if the Sun ſhew red, or vnto an Orenge colour before his ſetting, eſpecially for a great ſeaſon before his ſetting, or in a maner thorowout the whole day, and that in the weſt, he appeare of a great bignes, it doeth vndoubtedlie ſignifie wind to follow.

And the Sunne riſing hot, and not twinckling, declareth winde to follow: & if the Sun in the riſing appeare hollow, declareth either wind or raine to follow: and if the Sun be felt hot many daies together, doeth after ſignifie drought and windes long continuing.

And if the Sun in the winter time toward his ſetting ſhal ſhew clearer and redder then cuſtomably, and that the north wind, or ſome other cold wind ſhall then blow, it doth ſignifie froſt that night following.

And this declareth clearing of the weather in the time of raine, when as a brightneſſe and clearing appeareth in the North-part, and that in the South-part appeareth ſwelled clouds heaped together.

And when after the Sun ſetting, the element appeareth blew, and few ſtarres appeare, and that the dew be ſmall, it doth declare faire weather the day following.

And if in the morning a miſt appeare, which after the Sunne is riſen, falleth downward, and riſeth not vpward any more to be ſeene of any, it declareth a faire day following.

And when many white clouds appeare, eſpecially in the Weſt (neere vnto the earth) and in the euening, and this for two or three daies together in the winter time, it declareth both cold and ſnow to enſue.

And

And a troubling of the aire vnto raine, & that the clouds be then whiter then customably, declareth snow to ensue, especially when after such an appearance of the clouds, the aire be felt somewhat hot, through the heat which is then sent forth out of the clouds.

And when the clouds driue one way, and the wind another, and right against the going of the clouds, doth declare faire weather to follow. And the reason of this is, for that the wind bloweth contrary vnto the going of the clouds, which driueth them in such sort that they cannot raine downe.

And the stars seene to run or shot, declare wind to arise out of that quarter, and if they shot on euery side, then they declare wind to follow out of all the quarters.

And if the starres in the winter time appeare brighter then customably, declareth a great colde to ensue. And the starres twinckling in the winter, doth declare a great colde and big frost to follow.

And if the stars be seene greater, both in light and bignes then customably, doth then declare wind to follow.

And if the Bats do flie about timelier in the euening, and more of them then customably, doth then declare faire and hot weather the next day following.

And if the Mone after the third day of her change, appeareth in the West, with cleare and faire hornes, and hath no mist about her, declareth faire weather to followe all that quarter.

And if the Mone appeare smal and red, and that also the same part of the mone, which then hath no light of the sun, appeareth cleare, and with a certaine driuing (as it seemeth vnto the eie) doth declare wind to follow out of that quarter from which the colours come, and about the Mone depart.

And if there appeare one cleare circle about the Mone, which mone vanisheth away, doth then declare raine to follow.

And where the Rain-bow appeareth but of two colours, as redde and yellow, and of no other colours, declareth faire

weather

weather to follow. And lightning ſéene in the euening, without thunder and clouds, and that often together, and néere the earth, declareth a faire day following.

And clouds ſéene like vnto fléeces of woll, ſcattered in the aire, and the Sunne be them of a good height, declareth faire weather to enſue.

And the Northwind ſtrongly blowing, although it cauſeth many clouds, doth neuertheles cauſe faire weather to enſue for the more part.

And the noiſe of woods, and much moouing of the leaues, doth declare winde and a tempeſt to enſue.

And the Kites playing & wauering about in the aire, and that the one followeth the other in their flying, declare a hot and faire day to follow.

And if little flies, somewhat before the Sunnes ſetting, do gather round on a heape before the Sunne, and play vp and downe, declare a faire and hot ſeaſon the next day following.

And if a white ſmoke be riſen before the riſing of the Sun, and after the Sun ſetting, vpon the waters, marſhes, and medowes, it doth ſignifie hot and faire weather the next day following: and if the ſame appeareth in the morning, then faire weather that day: and if at night, then faire weather the next day following.

And the Hedgehog, where he lieth maketh two holes, the one opening toward the north, & the other toward the ſouth, and which of them he ſtoppeth, from the ſame part the winde ariſeth: & if both at once, then great ſtore of winde to follow.

And the Crow timely calling in the morning, declareth faire weather to follow: but crowing ſoftly in the euening, declareth a tempeſt to enſue.

And the Crowes calling haſtily twice or thrice together, declareth a tempeſt to follow.

And the dogge wallowing on the earth, declareth a great winde to follow: and lying on his right ſide, doth ſignifie a tempeſt to enſue.

And Oxen alſo lying on the right ſide, declare a tempeſt to enſue: but the Oxe lying on the left ſide, declareth faire wea-

ther to follow. And the Rauen standing gaping against the Sunne, declareth a hot weather to ensue.

And the Rams skipping oftner then customably, if they but together with their heads, declare a tempest to follow.

And many long webs (which some call the spittle of the Sunne) driuing in the aire, declare winde or tempest to follow.

And the Ramme not changing his voice in faire weather, declareth the longer continuance of the same, as some ancient men write.

And a darknes of the aire after raine, declareth faire weather to ensue (as most authors write.)

And when many shotes of fire (drawing the taile after them) appeare in the aire, like vnto the shoting of the stars, which by fiery vapors, running & shining like vnto the light of the stars, drawing after them a taile, doth declare wind to follow.

And if such vapours shote out of many quarters of the aire, they declare sundry winds to arise, and doth thunder and lightning out of those parts.

And the drinesse of things by a suddain manor in the winter time, and no rainie weather, like as of paper, the Marble stone, and such like, declare frost and cold weather to ensue.

And when Cranes flie in straight order, and not bending or turning again, it declareth faire weather to ensue, for that they flie not in such order before they se the weather cleere.

And the clouds also in the cleere aire caried vpward, out of what quarter of the Element the same be, doeth signifie the wind to arise out of that quarter.

And if the clouds heaped together, by drawing neere the Sunne be scattered, and this caused from the north, declareth wind to ensue.

And snow falling in the beginning of frost, if the same fall very small, declareth the mightier colde to followe: but if the snow fall bigge, then a suddaine thawe of the frost to ensue.

And

And the haile falling in the ſpring and harueſt, declareth a faire ſeaſon, and ſomewhat warme the ſame day: and this according to the time of the yeare.

And if any dreameth to ſee birds, it declareth wind to follow the next day, as hath beene experienced.

And windes in the winter blow about the morning, but in the Summer about the euening, and in the winter out of the Eaſt, and alſo in the Summer out of the Weſt. And if wind continue long North, and the harueſt windie, declare a ſtill winter: but if the harueſt be ſtill, then a windie winter.

The Booke of the Art or craft of Planting and Graffing.

To graffe fruite that ſhall haue no core.

TAke a graffe and bow both ends combing, and cut both ends graff-wiſe, and ſo faſten them into the ſtocke. And if it grow ſo with the tree, cut away the great end, and let the ſmaller end grow, and this fruit ſhall haue no core.

To make Apples red.

If you will make Apples red, take a graffe of an Apple tree, and graffe it in a ſtocke of Elme or Elder, and it ſhall beare red Apples. Alſo you may bore a hole in an apple-tree to the pith, and temper it with water of what colour ye will, and then put it in the hole, and ſtop it with a pin, & the apple ſhalbe of the ſame colour that you put in the tree.

It is to be noted, that euery tree that is planted vpon S. Lamberts day in the earth, ſhall not periſh, but prowe and come to profite.

To make the Pear-tree beare much fruit.

If you will haue a Pear-tree full of fruit, or elſe aſmuch as it hath bin wont to beare, temper Scamony with water, and put it into a hole that is pierced to the pith of the tree, and ſtop the hole with a pin of that ſame tree, or of another, and it ſhal beare as it was wont, and much more plentifull.

And if thou wilt haue them to ſmel like ſpices, or as muſk, or balme, or other ſpices: make an hole in like ſort in the tree, and ſtop it againe, and the fruit ſhall ſmel and ſauor after the ſpices.

To reuiue an old tree that is decayed.

If an old tree begin to ware drie, doe in this wiſe quicken him againe, ſo that the eares that are about the rootes be done away, and cleaue two or three of the greateſt rootes with an axe, and put a wedge into the cleauing, and couer the roots againe with the ſame earth.

Note alſo.

Pierce the tree thorow with a piercer croſſe twice, or with a wimble, and the ſtrength of the tree ſhal begin to wax yong.

How to make a ſoure fruit tree bring forth ſweete fruite.

If you will haue a fruite tree that is ſoure, to bee made ſweete fruit, deue the tree round about, & dung the roots with pigges dung, and ſo ſhall the fruit be made ſweete: alſo make an hole in the ſoure tree with a piercer to the pith, & into the hole put water tempered with hony, and ſtop the hole againe with a pinne of the ſame tree.

The ordering of an Almond-tree, Wal-nut-tree, Cherry-tree, and Peach-tree.

Put the kernels of which of theſe yee will in water foure daies, and then put many kernels together into the earth or ſeuerally: and when they ſpring and be growen out, and haue ſtood ſo a whole yeare, then take them out of the ground, and ſet them then where you will. And it is to be noted, that of euerie tree the branches muſt be cut in ſetting time, ſaue the Peach-tree, which muſt haue his drie branches cut onely.

How to nouriſh the Peach-tree, if it begin to wither.

If the Peach-tree begin to wither, let him be well moiſtened at the roote with dregs of wine, and the ſame moiſtning ſhall keepe him from ſhedding of his fruite: and ſome ſay, that if the rootes bee moyſtened with water of the decoction of beanes, it ſhall quicken the tree greatly: and if hee caſt his fruite ere they bee ripe, make holes with a wimble in the rootes,

rotes, & make pins of willow, and smite them fast in, and the fruite shall abide on fast enough.

How to water plants when they waxe drie.

It shall be good to water them when the time is drie in the first yeare: then when they haue put forth new cyons, leaue no more growing but the cyon which is the principall & fairest, vpon euery stocke one, all the other cut off hard by the stocke: & euer as they doe grow small twigs about the stocke, ye shall (in the moneth of March and Aprill) cut them all off hard by the stocke. And if you then stick by euery plant a prettie wand, and so binde them with willow barke, brier, or osiers, it shall profite them much in their growth. Then after fiue or six yeares growth, when they be so big as your finger, or thereabouts, ye may then remoue any of them, whereas you will haue them grow and remaine.

The ordering of the Apple-tree.

If an Apple-tree begin to rotte, or any of the apples begin to waxe rustie, then the barke of him is sicke: then cut it with a knife, let it be opened, and when the humor thereof is somewhat flowen ouer, see that you dung him well, and stop diligently his wound with clay.

The ordering of the Quince-tree.

The Quince-tree all the time that he is able to be translated, he would be remoued euery fourth yere, and that shall make him beare great plenty of fruit afterward.

The ordering of the Cherry-tree.

The Cherry-tree loueth cold aire and moist ground, but some Cherry-trees like well in hilly places. The best setting of Cherry-trees is in the month of November, and if needs be in the latter end of January. And if the Cherry tree rot, in any wise make a hole with a piercer vnder the rote, that the water that causeth the rotting may haue issue out. It is supposed that this medicine is good for all manner of trees that begin to rot. Also it is good for all manner of trees, when a bough is cut away, that the place that is cut be couered with clay, or some other defensible plaster, for the defence of the raine, that it make not the tree to rot.

At what time Prunes ought to be planted.

The planting of Prunes in colde and moiſtie places, is beſt in Februarie and March, and the ſtones muſt be ſet a hand breadth in the earth, & when they haue ſtood ſo a whole yeare, take vp the ſprings of them, and ſet them deeper in the ground, and the ſtones muſt lie in water three daies ere they be ſet.

How the Medler ſhould be planted.

The Medler will beare well if he be planted, but graffe him in a white thorne called an Haw-thorne, and they will beare more plenteouſly.

The ſowing of Roſes in a garden.

If you will haue any Roſes in your garden, you muſt take the hard pepins of the ſame Roſes that be full ripe, and ſowe them in the earth in Februarie or in March, and when they ſpring, temper them with water, & after the ſpace of a yeare, you muſt tranſlate them, and depart them farther from other in what other place you will.

How to plant white Grapes.

If you will that a vine beare on one ſide white Grapes, and on the other ſide red, prouide that a white Vine and a red be ſet neere together. And when they be rooted meaſurably both like much, of either pare away halfe endlong vpon the pith, and twine them together, and binde them ſo, that either lap meete without diſioining, and wrap it vp together with a ſupple linnen cloth, and euery third day moiſt it with water till it grow. And after that they be growne together, thou muſt cut away the one roote, and the other may beare it: and that Vine ſhall beare both red Grapes and white, notwithſtanding the one roote be done away: and ſo thou maiſt doe with two Pear-trees, or two Apple tree branches.

How to ſet Vine plants two and two together.

You ought to plant and ſet your Vines two and two together, the one to haue a part of the olde tree, and the other may be all of the laſt cyon: but when yee plant with him a part of the old tree, he ſhall commonly take roote ſooner then the

the new eyon. You muſt weede them euery moneth, and let not the earth be to cloſe about their rotes at the firſt, but now and then looſe it with a ſpade as ye ſhal ſee a raine paſt, for then they ſhall enlarge, and put forth better.

To make Grapes grow on a Plum-tree, or Cherry-tree.

And if you will haue Grapes grow on a Plum-tré, or a Cherry-tré, ſet a Vine vnder one of thoſe two trées, which you will: and when the Vine beginneth to grow, bore the other tré thorow with a piercer, according to the greatnes of the Vine: then draw the vine thorow the tré, and pare away the vpper end of the ſame Vine, as farre as it ſhalbe in the hole, and ſo ſuffer it to grow: and when both be ioyned together, cut away the rote ende of the Vine by the tré, and couer that place wel with good earth of that cutting and drawing of the Vine thorow the hole, and the cutting away of the rote of the Vine, and that muſt be done in March: and ſome men will ſay it muſt be done ere the knots beginne to burgen, that for the ſtrait drawing in, the burgens bee not hurt. And thus maiſt thou doe with diuers trées, and diuers fruites, and make one tré to beare diuers fruites of ſundrie colours. Alſo ye muſt ſee that at the vine be good earth, and ſpred it ſelfe of many ſcourges, it is good to cut that off with a knife, and if it lacke yet ouermuch, delue the ſtocke about, and fill the pit full of grauell of a flood, medled with aſhes. And ſome men ſay, doe into the pit a good quantitie of ſmall ſtones, and that is good therefore.

The beſt times to Plant and Graffe in.

It is to be noted, that when the Moone is in Taurus, it is a good time to plant trées of Graines and Pepins: and when ſhe is in Cancer, Leo, or Libra, it is good working of trées that be new ſprung: and when the Moone is in Virgo, it is good time to ſowe all manner of things. And from the middeſt of September, vnto the middeſt of December, is open time of planting: and right ſo from the middeſt of Januarie, to the middeſt of March, but yet in theſe times it is good to thoſe when the Moone is 5, 6, 7, 8, or 10. daies

before

before the full. And after the full Mone, when she is 20, 22, 23, 24, or 25. daies old, for this quarter of the Mone is most temperate.

Note also.

Every planting is to be disposed so, that the Sun beames may come to the rote, or to the earth, from the houre of three vnto none, and be planted in the best manner. And the trees that be bearing and of great height, that part that stood toward the North, must be set against the North wind, and the Northwest winde: for the high North wind, and the Northwest winde, by kinde doeth kill and drie too much the trees that be new set for their vnmeasurable greatnes: the earth also must be ordered so, that it be neither too fat nor grauelly, but proportionably.

How to set all manner of pepins, kernels, and graines in the earth.

All maner of pepins, kernels, and graines, must be set in the earth, in depnes of foure or fiue fingers broad, that each be from other halfe a foote: alwaies keping this special rule, that the end or graine of the pepin that stands next the roote be Northeast in the setting, and that other end vpward toward heauen. And that you moist them twice or thrice in the day, not rotting, but dewing or sprinkling. This is a priuity among cunning men, that in the spring is most conuentiable time for sedes, graines, and pepins: and Autumn for springs and plants.

Of the manner and changing of the fruit of the Pepin-tree.

Whensoeuer you doe replant, or change your pepin-trees from place to place, in so remouing often the stocke, the fruite thereof shall also change, but the fruite which doeth come of grafting, doth alwaies kepe the forme and nature of the tree whereof he is taken: for as often I haue said, so often as the pepin-trees be remoued to a better ground, the fruite thereof shall be so much amended.

How

How you may make an Orchard in few yeares.

Some doe take yong straight slips, which doe grow from the rootes, or of the sides of the Apple trées, about Michaelmas, and so plant and set them with oates in good ground, whereas they shall not be remoued, and so graffe being well rooted theron. Other some do take and set them in the spring time after Christmas in likewise, and do graffe theron when they be well rooted: and both waies doe spring well. And this manner of way is counted to haue an Orchard the sooneſt. But theſe trées will not endure paſt twentie or thirtie yeares.

How you ought to set the Pine-tree.

For to set the Pine-trée, ye muſt set or plant them of nuts in March, or about the shote of the sap, not lightly after: ye muſt alſo set them where they may not be remoued after, in holes well digged and well dunged, not to be trans-planted or remoued againe: for very hardly they will shew forth cyons being remoued, specially if ye hurt the maſter root therof.

To set Damſons or Plum-trees.

In setting Damſons or Plum-trées, which fruit ye would haue like to the trées they come of: if the said trees bee not graft before, ye shall take onely the cyons that grow from the root of the old stocke, which groweth with small twigs, and plant or set them, and their fruit shall be like vnto the trees they were taken of.

How to remoue a Setling.

When you will take a Setling that springeth out of another trée root, make and delue thereabout after the quantitie thereof, and so deepe till you come to the great roote that the spring groweth out of, and thou maiſt cut it off, and holding the edge of the knife toward the trée ground: and cut it so with slope draught, and leaue as much of the earth about the roote, and stocke of the setting as you may, and set it in a good

ground ordained therefore, and in a conuenient time, as it is before laid, & if any spring so groweth out of any tree, chuse that which groweth right out, that is not ouer-long, but euen, without any smal branches, holding the knife in cutting alway toward the tree.

How to remoue a great tree.

And if you will remoone a tree that is great or bearing fruit, chuse the full Mone, from the middest of October to the middest of December, hauing vp the rotes as whole as you may, with the same manner and order as ye doe with setting of small trees: and in the setting, it forceth not though the Mone be not euen in the full, so she be in the second or third quarter. The gouerning of these plants, is double of bearing of fruite.

How to keepe late set plants.

Also if you will kepe late set plants, kepe them from euening raines, and from winds, namely, in Haruest, for it is no great difficultie in the Spring. Against the comming of winter, set or sticke about the setting many boughes, that the Northern winde, or greatnesse of other winds destroy it not: also put dunge mingled with straw about the stocke toward the rote, of a good thickues, that frost and snow congeale not on the rote: and make a depe valley about the roote, the space of fiue or seuen fote, that the water abide not and fresse about the rote in haruest, that is, betwen summer and winter, that when winter commeth, it may be filled with dung, and so let it stand all the winter: and in the spring, put vnder the dung new earth, and cut away all the vnprofitable branches, and make it cleane about the stocke and the rotes, from wormes, scurfes, and molles, and from euill wedes going about the branches: all the close of thine Orchard wholly beset about with other high trees that beare no fruit, that the floures might be kept safe from windes. And beware that no fruite bee gathered of any tree before the time, for that is a right great, and priuie harming to the tree.

How

How you may keepe Cherries good a yeare.

If you would kæp Cherries gwd a yere, ye ſhal cut off the ſtalkes, and then lay them in a well leaded pot, and fill the ſaid pot with Cherries: then put vnto them of gwd thin honie, and fill the pot alſo therwith. Which done, ſtoppe it with clay that no aire enter in, then ſet it in ſome faire cellar, and put ſand vnder and all about it, and couer the pot withal, and ſo let it ſtand or remaine: thus ye may kæpe them a yere, as freſh as though they came from the trẽ. And after this ſort ye may kæpe peares or other fruit.

How you may ſet Cheſnuts.

The Cheſnut trẽ men do vſe to plant like vnto the figge trẽ. They may be both planted and graffed well, they ware wel in freſh and fat earth, for in ſand they like not. If ye will ſet the kernels, ye ſhall lay them in water vntil they do ſinke, and thoſe that doe ſinke to the bottome of the water be beſt to ſet, which ye ſhal ſet in the moneths of November and December, foure fingers dæpe, and a foote one from another: for when they be in thoſe two moneths ſet or planted, they will endure long, and beare alſo gwd fruit. Yet ſome there be that plant or ſet them firſt in dung, like beanes, which wilbe ſwæter then the other ſort, but thoſe which be ſet in the two moneths aforeſaid ſhall firſt beare their fruit: men may proue which is beſt, experience doth teach. This is another way to proue and know which Cheſnuts be beſt to plant or ſet, that is, yee ſhall take a quantitie of Nuts, then lay them in ſand the ſpace of thirty dates, then take and waſh them in water faire and cleane, and throw them into water again, and thoſe that doe ſinke to the bottome, are gwd to plant or ſet, and the other that ſwim are naught: thus may ye do with all other kernels or nuts.

The order how to plant or ſet trees at large.

This ought to be conſidered of all graffers & planters, that ye muſt giue a competent ſpace from one trẽ vnto another,

when as yee make the holes to set them in, not too high nor that one tree touch another. For a good tree planted or sette well at large, profiteth oftentimes more of fruit, then three or foure trees set too nigh together. The most greatest and largest trées commonly are Wal-nuts and Chest-nuts. If ye plant them severally in ranke, as they doe commonly growe vpon high waies, beside hedges in fields, they must be sette fiue and thirtie foote asunder one from another, or thereabouts: but if ye will plant many rankes in one place together, ye must set them the space of xlv. foote one from another, or thereabouts: and so farre ye must set your rankes one from another. For the Pear-trées and Apple-trées, and other sorts of trees, which may be set of this largenesse one from the other: if ye doe plant onely in rankes by hedges, in the fields, or otherwise, it shalbe sufficient of xx. foot one from another: but if you will set two rankes vpon the sides of your allies in gardens, which be of x. or xii. foote broad, it shall then bee best to giue them more space the one from the other in each ranke, as about fiue and twentie foote: also ye must not set your trees right one against the other, but entermedling or betweene euery space, as they may best growe at large, that if neede be, ye may plant of other small trées betweene, but see that ye set them not too thicke. If you list to sette or plant all your trees of one bignes, as of yong trees like rods, being Pear-trées or Apple-trées, they must be set a good space one from another, as of xxv. or xxx. foote in square, as to say, from one ranke to another. For to plant or set smaller trees, as Plum-trées or Apple-trées of the like bignes, it shall be sufficient for them xiiii. or xv. foote space in quarters. But if you will plant or set two rankes in your allies in gardens, you must deuise for to proportion it after the largenesse of your said allies. For to plant or set eager or sower Cherry-trees, this space shall be sufficient enough the one from the other, that is, of x. or xii. foote: and therefore if you make great or large allies in your garden, as of x. foote wide, or thereabouts, they shall come well to passe, and shall be sufficient to plant your trees of nine or ten foote space: and for the other

lesser

leſſer ſorts of trees, as of Quince-trees, Nut-trees, and ſuch like, they be not commonly planted, but in one ranke together.

The beſt way to cleanſe and proine, or dreſſe the rootes of trees.

And for the better cleanſing and proining trees beneath, doe thus: ye ſhall take away all the weeds and graſſe about the roots, then ſhal ye dig them ſo round about, as you would ſeeme to plucke them vp, and ſhal make them halfe bare, then ſhall ye enlarge the earth about the rootes, and where as ye ſhall ſee them grow faire and long, place or couch them in the ſaid hole and earth againe: then ſhal ye put the cut end of the tree, where he is graft, ſomewhat more lower then his roots were, whereby his eyons ſo graft, ſhall ſpring ſo much the better.

The manner of Graffing.

The great ſtocke muſt be choſen in good ground, and it muſt be ſmooth and euen, and cutte it without the earth the length of a foote or more, if it be as great as the thumb, if it be greater, looke that the cutting be euen ouerthwart the ſtocke and aſide, and it muſt be clouen aboue in the midſt of the pith the length of two fingers breath, & in the cliſt ſet the graffe, which muſt be choſen of the beſt tree. The ſtocke is of the chiefe graffe that ſtandeth right vpward, that hath a knot of the former yeare. And an inch beneath the ſaid knot, cut thy graffe, and thwite it on both ſides, euen in a manner of a wedge, as far as it ſhall goe into the cliſt of the ſtocke, it muſt be ſo euen thwiten, that the aire may not come betweene the cliſt and the graft, and then cloſe it with good tempered earth about the graffe, for defence of rains and weather.

How to graft diuers fruits on one ſtocke.

If thou wilt graft diuers fruits vpon one ſtocke, that hath as many branches as thou wilt haue graffes on, in euery branch ſet a graffe, in manner and forme as it is ſaid before, and euermore chuſe the graffe on the Sunne ſide of the tree that beareth it, and next the top if you may, and then muſt thou

thou graffe diuers fruits in one clift, but none of them may be thicker then other, as your reaſon will tell you in the working.

The way to graffe all ſorts of trees.

Firſt of all it is to be noted, that all ſorts of frank trees, as alſo wild trees of nature, may be graft with graffes, and in the ſcutchin, and both do wel take, but eſpecially thoſe trees which be of like nature, therefore it is better ſo to graffe: howbeit they may well grow and take of other ſorts of Trees, but certaine trees be not ſo good, nor will proſper ſo well in the end.

How to graffe Apple-trees, Quince-trees, Pear-trees, and Medlar-trees.

They graffe the peare graffe on other peare ſtocks & apple ſtocks, crab or wilding ſtocks: the Quince and Medlar vpon the white thorne. But moſt commonly they vſe to graffe one apple vpon another, and both peares and quinces they graffe on hawthorne and crab ſtocke. Another kinde of fruit called in French Saulſay, they vſed to graffe on the willow ſtocke, the manner thereof is hard to do, which I haue not ſeene, and therefore I will let it paſſe at this preſent.

How to chuſe your trees for graffes.

When the trees wheras you intend to gather your graffes be ſmall & yong, as of fiue or ſixe yeares growth, doe not take the higheſt graff therof, nor the greateſt, except it be of a ſmall tree of two or three yeres, the which commonly hath too much of toppe or wood: otherwiſe not, for you ſhall but marre your graffing.

How you may keepe graffes a long time.

Ye may keep graffs a long time good, as from Alhallowtide (ſo that the leaues be fallen) vnto the time of graffing, if that they be wel couered in the earth, halfe a foote deep therein, and ſo that none of them doe appeare without the earth.

After what manner ye ought to begin to graffe.

Ye may wel begin to graffe (in leauing the ſtock) at Chriſtmas, or before, according to the coldnes of the time, & principally the bealme or great cherry, peares, wardens, or forward

ward fruit of apples and for medlars, it is good to tarry vnto the end of January and February, vntil March, or vntil such time as ye shall see the trees begin to bud or spring.

To haue fruit without cores.

To haue fruit without cores, loke yee haue a sufficient graffe-stock, and therewith (as I said before) chuse a graffe of good Perle tree, and cut it on this manner: The ende of the graffe that is vpward next the firmament, must be thwited like the nether end of a comming graffe, & the nether end turned vpward: and this is to be done warily. This rule is true in all trees that haue stones and kernels, but a vine it behoueth to cut that is downeward next the earth, with great cunning and sleight.

How to trim your graffes.

¶ Ye may graft your graffes ful as long as 2. or 3. trunchions or cut graffes, which ye may likewise graffe withall very wel, and be as good as those which do come of old wood, and oftentimes better, as to graffe a bough: for often it so happeneth a man shall find of oylets or eies hard by the old slender wood, yet better it were to cut them off with the old wood, and chuse a better & a faire place, at some other eye aforesaid, and cut your graffes in making the incision on the one side narrow, & on the other side broad, as the inner side thin, and the outside thicke, because the outside of your graffe must ioyne within the cleft, with the sappe or barke of the winde stocke that it shall be set in: see also that ye cut it smooth, as your clifts are in the stock, in ioining at euery place both euen and close, and especially the ioints or corners of the graffs on the head of the stocke, which must be well and cleane pared before, and then set fast thereon.

How to graffe vines on Cherry-trees.

¶ If thou wilt haue a vine grow on a Cherry-tree, and haue the taste of cherries, set a vine by a cherry-tree till it grow, & in the beginning of Feuerell what time it be, make a hole thorow the Cherry-tree in what place thou wilt, and as often as thou wilt, and draw thorow the hole a branch of the vine,

vine, so that it fill the hole, and shaue away the old barke of that vine, asmuch as shall be in the hole, and put it in, so that the shauen place of the branch stop ful the hole of the Cherri-tree, and then cut away the roote ende of the vine, and wrap it well about with good earth, and binde it well with a little cloth, and keepe it wel in all things, as an other graffings: but some men leaue the roote end vncut a peare, till it be sowred with the Cherry-tree, and then cut it away: and this is a good manner and a sure, and so it may be done with diuers trees of diuers fruits, and the grape and the vine shall haue sauor of them: and so in euery tree may be grafted another, and it is a meruelious grafting.

To make a tree beare diuers fruits.

If you will haue a tree beare diuers fruites, and of diuers colours, and diuers sauors: in the first yeare graffe in diuers branches of a Cherry-tree diuers Apples to thy liking, and leaue some of the branches vngrafted: the second yeare make holes thorow the Cherry-tree, and draw thorow those holes, vine branches, the vtter end shauen off, as is before said: and in the same manner thorow another hole red Rose, and doe therewith as before is said of the vine: and this diuersity yee may vse after your owne liking.

FINIS.

C 13497 SL
20684

REPRODUCED FROM THE ORIGINAL
IN THE HENRY E. HUNTINGTON
LIBRARY AND ART GALLERY.
FOR REFERENCE ONLY.
PERMISSION NECESSARY FOR
REPRODUCTION.

vine, ſo that it fill the hole, and ſhaue away the old barke of that vine, aſmuch as ſhall be in the hole, and put it in, ſo that the ſhauen place of the branch ſtop ful the hole of the Cherri-tree, and then cut away the roote ende of the vine, and wrap it well about with good earth, and binde it well with a little cloth, and kepe it wel in all things, as in other graffings: but ſome men leaue the roote end vncut a yeare, till it be ſowred with the Cherry-tree, and then cut it away: and this is a good manner and a lure, and ſo it may be done with diuers trees of diuers fruits, and the grape and the vine ſhall haue ſauor of them: and ſo in euery tree may be grafted another, and it is a meruelous grafting.

To make a tree beare diuers fruits.

If you will haue a tree beare diuers fruites, and of diuers coleurs, and diuers ſauors: in the firſt yeare graffe in diuers branches of a Cherry-tree diuers Apples to thy liking, and leaue ſome of the branches vngrafted: the ſecond yeare make holes thorow the Cherry-tree, and draw thorow thoſe holes, vine branches, the vtter end ſhauen off, as is before ſaid: and in the ſame manner thorow another hole red Roſe, and doe therewith as before is ſaid of the vine: and this diuerſity yee may vſe after your owne liking.

FINIS.

C 17497 SL
50684

REPRODUCED FROM THE ORIGINAL
IN THE HENRY E. HUNTINGTON
LIBRARY AND ART GALLERY.
FOR REFERENCE ONLY.
PERMISSION NECESSARY FOR
REPRODUCTION.